

UC-NRLF



B 3 287 575



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

The Three Kings' Sons

edited by

F. J. Furnivall

Part I

(all published)

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

Extra Series, 67

1895

KRAUS REPRINT CO.
Millwood, New York
1973



*Unaltered Reprint produced with the permission of the
Early English Text Society*

KRAUS REPRINT CO.
A U.S. Division of Kraus-Thomson Organization Limited

Printed in Germany

The Three Kings' Sons.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVII.

1895.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Three Kings' Sons.

(ENGLISHT FROM THE FRENCH.)



PART I, THE TEXT.

EDITED FROM ITS UNIQUE MS, HARLEIAN 326. ABOUT 1500 A.D.

BY

F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A.,

TRINITY HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL., BERLIN.

LONDON:

PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1895.

Extra Series, LXVII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

PR
1119
A2
SER. 2
NO. 67
MAIN

FOREWORDS.

WHAT a blessing it was, in old Days of Romance, for a Christian King, beset by Turks, to have a beautiful daughter ! Of course all the young Princes and knights of Christendom pictured to themselves the lovely girl in distress, about to be sacrificed to a Heathen brute, and they at once resolv'd to go and fight for her father, and marry her. They thus kild two —nay, three—birds with one stone : first, they fought for the Faith, and saved their souls ; next, they got a chance of the girl ; and last, of her father's Kingdom. War, Love, and Sovereignty,—what could a man want more ?

Here, surely, was a good subject for a story ; and so thought the Frenchman—David Aubert, or some one else¹—who wrote the original of the englisch romance (Harl. 326, ab. 1500 A.D.) told in the following pages. It is not a stirring narrative, for it's after the time when men really cared for fighting. In all the battles, no one is split in two ; no one has his head clean cut off at one swipe ; no one's back is broken ; no one's arm or leg even is chopt right off. All the old details of a combat are smotherd up in generalities. Folks' feelings and apprehensions are dwelt upon ; and the repetitions are as frequent and as tedious as in Tory speeches against Home Rule. Still, the story is readable, and this it is in brief :—

King Alfour of Sicily is invaded and half-conquerd by the Turks. He has a lovely daughter Iolante. To help them, Prince Philip of France steals away incognito from Paris, and falls ill in Toledo. When well, he proceeds to Sicily with one of King Alfour's generals, Ferant, whom he rescues from

¹ "Several copies of this Romance are in the Bibliothèque Nationale, one of which (No. 6766) is described by Paulin Paris in *Les Manuscrits François*, tome i. (1836), pp. 106—108. This French MS was transcribed at Hesdin in 1463 by David Aubert, librarian to Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy. For an account of Aubert, see the description of vol. i. of Perceforest in Royal MS. 15. E. V. (under *British and English Traditions*), in the authorship of which romance he there (at f. 3) claims (p. 2) a share. It seems that he makes a similar claim in the MS of the 'Conquestes du noble empereur Charlemaine' (see J. Marchal's *Catalogue des MSS. . . de Bourgogne*, Brussels, tome ii. p. 291); and it is conjectured by Gaston Paris (*Histoire poétique de Charlemagne*, 1865, p. 96) that the whole authorship of the present Romance may not improbably be ascribed to David Aubert."—H. Ward's *Catalog.* i. 782-3.

the Turks, when taken in his first battle, and also captures King Ferabras of Persia. On seeing Princess Iolante, Philip falls violently in love with her.

Also to aid King Alfour, a joint expedition of French, Scotch and English troops, led by Prince David of Scotland, sails for Sicily, but is repulst. Afterwards a storm wrecks the allied fleet, and Prince David is saved from his Turkish foes, only by the mercy of Orcays, the Sultan's son, who soon sets him free, and sends him to Ferant and Prince Philip. They fight often with the Turks, and win, as Philip and David hearten the downcast Sicilian troops. Prince David falls in love with Iolante too.

Meantime, the third King's son, Prince Humphrey of England, steals away from England, also to help King Alfour. His ship is driven ashore at a Turkish town, and he is thrown into a dungeon. From this, he is freed by K. Ferabras of Persia, who has been temporarily releast by the Sicilians, and has promist to liberate Christian prisoners. By him, Prince Humphrey is enabled to join Prince Philip of France and Prince David of Scotland, and all three incognito,¹ are servants of Ferant, and attend on Princess Iolante, whom they all, of course, love. The Turkish prince, Orcays, who is taken prisoner, is also desperately in love with her.

In one battle, Prince Philip is taken, and beaten till he bleeds, by the Sultan, but is rescued. At last the Sultan is slain. King Alfour—by the help of the Three Princes—recovers all his cities, drives out the Turks, and is made Emperor of Germany.

War being over, the Three Princes go home, but return the next May as Kings—of France, England, and Scotland,—their fathers having died. They come back for the grand three-days' Tourney for the hand of Princess Iolante. King Philip of France wins her; and as the other kings have to be provided with wives, King Humphrey of England gives one of his beautiful sisters to King David of Scotland, and the other to the Sultan of Turkey; while he himself weds the Sultan's lovely sister, who has followd her brother's example, and turnd Christian. There are grand wedding festivities; and the Emperor and Kings visit one another. King Philip gets Sicily after the Emperor's death. He and Kings Humphrey and David live happy with their wives, and have lots of fine children; but Sultan Orcays dies soon, childless; and his English widow comes back to England.

For language, the text has not much interest—to me, at least. *Finance*² for ‘ransom’ (p. 20/39, 93/13, &c.); ‘yngoodly’ for excellent (p. 174/23),

¹ Prince Philip's incognito is ‘Le Despurveu’ till Iolante changes it to ‘Le Surnome.’ Prince David is ‘Athis,’ and Prince Humphrey ‘Ector.’

² This word is also used thus in the Romance of *Partenay*, l. 1853.

‘amegred’ = emaciated, Fr. *amaigrir* (p. 9/36); ‘chapelet,’ metaphorically (p. 25/1); ‘ensured’ = trained (p. 10/18), and a few other words are noteworthy: see Mr. Thomas Austin’s Glossary, where some interesting information, glossing Thueydides (IV. 135), will be found on p. 123 3. But Dr. Leon Kellner will deal with the Vocabulary, Syntax, sources, &c. in his Introduction. He was to have edited the Text,—of which his Wife made an excellent copy for the Society,—but he was prevented by his revision of Dr. R. Morris’s *Historical English Accidence*. I therefore had to take up *The Three Kings’ Sons*, and here is Part I. Dr. Kellner has collated the English text with its French original in Paris, and hopes to give us Part II next year. Our knowledge of the existence of the English version is due to Mr. Henry Ward’s admirable *Catalogue of the Romances in the British Museum*, one of the best bits of work that any member of the Museum staff has ever turnd out.

F. J. FURNIVALL.

*3, St. George’s Square, London, N.W.,
Saturday midnight, 9 Sept. 1893.*

The Three Kings' Sons.

[*Harley 326, leaf 8. The slight tags to final f and g are not printed.*]

4 Aftir the crucifyng of oure lord Ihesu crist, and that the ^{After Christ's death,} holy cristen feith was magnified and augmented in alle
the Reanmes that at this day be christened / and that
were founde in oure holy feith by the Apostells, and
aftir by the holy doctoures / that same feith of oure
lord Ihesu crist was so moche honoured and kepte that
alle cristen Reanmes were in so good tranquillite and pees, that
8 there was no warre a-monges them. ¶ And in this tyme reigned a ^{and when all Christian lands are at peace,} kynge in ffraunce, of right excellent and grete recommendacion,
whos name was Charles, and had weddid a right faire lady, ^{Charles, the King of France, wife}
daughter to the kyng of Nauerne, whiche for hir vertues was so ^{a princess of Naverne.}
12 moche biloued and honoured of alle maner people thorughout the Reaume, that more might no princesse be / The kynge and the Quene gouerned the Reaume in suche lone, pees, and concord, that the laude & praise therof sounded and spred ouer alle the worlde,
16 for neuer thei did nor suffred, to their power, no creature to hane wrong nor violence ; and if any gentilman were disherite bi mys- ^{They help all men in trouble,}
fortune or euil gouernaunce of his fadir, or were in any maner mysery or trouble, thei wolde helpe and comfort hym, & do their
20 deuoir to recouer hym ^{¶ leaf 8, bk.]} his right, and suche honour as he was born vnto. And in like wise, if ther were any poure gentilwoman frendles / thei wold helpe to mary hir / and so did they by Mar- ^{and poor girls to marry.}
chauntes that were fallen in-to pouerte by Infortune : thei wold
24 relene them / and so wele thei did, þat by their merites the grace of god so largely abounded in them that thei had a sone / wherof thei were so ioifull / that more they might not be ; and good cause had thei to be glad / for long it was or they had any / and at laste
28 god sent them suche one as was bettir than any man can write of, aswele towardes god as to the world / and god had formed hym of ^{the best possible.} suche beante, witte, trouthe and worthynes / and of alle condicions

that to a kynges sone perteyne to haue, not only for to gouerne that Reaume / but for to haue had al that part of the world vndir his gouernaunce. Now may ye thynke wele / that at his birthe the kyng & the Quene, and alle the Reaume, were gretly rejoised / and 4 gave thankinges and preisynge to god, with general processions, doyng thorough alle the Reaume as belongeth to such eas / and moche more were thei comfortid / that the Reaume shold be succeeded by hym that came of that noble lyne / than of any oþer cristen 8 prince that they myght haue aftir the deth of their kyng. ¶ It is to thinke¹ that childe was cristen as to a kynges sone bilongeth / and he was named Philip. ¶ Of his norture & of his kepyng in his childhode / it is to thynke¹ also that he was diligently kepte / 12 and whan he was paste viij. yere age / he was putte in the handes of notable knyghtes / whiche were chosen by the kyng and his counseil for the most noble of the Reaume, bycause that by them he shulde be induced in alle good maners & condicions ; for at that tyme / the 16 sones of kynges and of grete princes aftir that age were put in the handes of the moost notable knyghtes and worthi men / that the kynges or princes had in their lond / for bicause that the condicions of princes may many tymes auiale and helpe to the comon 20 wele / and that princes wele condicioned may make and restore a desolat Reaume / and the contrary may put the moost noble and myngti Reaume in captuyyte & wrecchidnes. ¶ Wherfore it befyl that this yonge Philip, the kynges sone, was so wele & honorably 24 norisshed to god-ward and to the worlde / that alle thei of the Reaume, grete and litle, loued hym as moche as fadir myght loue the childe / and with aff this was ²he the moost faire creature that any hert coude deuise / and the moost amiyable persone to beholde / 28 that they that beheld hym, consideryng the maner & condicions werwith he was enewred / coude never be satisfied in beholding hym, so moche thei desired it / and more and more multiplied and grewe in hym witte, trouth and curtesie / so long til he came to the 32 age of xix. yere, in such perfecion as I haue tolde you / so moche biloued and so moche honoured / that vnnethe was there any withyn the Reaume that coude be wele content without they had seyn hym sumtyme of the yere. ¶ Now shal I leue of a while to speke of 36 hym til tyme shal be / and shal speke of the kyng of Syzile, whiche was at that tyme the next Reaume vnto the mysbileuers and enemyes of the feith / the whiche suffrid for the feith of Ihesu crist

All the realm
thank God.

The Prince
is christend
Philip,

is well
brought-up,

[2 leaf 9]

and grows
wiser and
better till he
is 19.

Now I turn
to the King
of Sicily.

¹ Bear in mind, remeber.

moche peyne and duresse / he and alle tho of his Reaume / yn-so-moche that they were brought to the vttermost poynt of there destruccion / sauf that god sent them socours / like as ye may here

4 ferther yn this present Boke.

[Illumination: a Wedding.]

Now seith the tale / that than was there a kyng yn that King Alfour
Reaume named Alfour, a valaunt knight, and gretely
loued & dred god / and kepte his commaundementes as-
8 moche as any prince might, and so shewed it wele ; for to
sustene the feith / put he his body many ¹tymes in aventure / and [^{1 leaf 9, bk.}] shedde his blode in diuise batailles. ¶ This kyng was to mary /
and,—for to haue comfort and helpe ayenst the miserauntes / that
12 night and day made him warre, aswele the Turke as othir / holding
the dampnable feith of Machoumete,—had counself of his princes
and Barons to aske to wif the daughter of the kyng of Spayne, named
Sybille / And the kyng of Spayne was called Albors, and had to
16 wif the daughter of the kyng of Portyngale / and it was concluded
by the hole counself of the Reaume / that in asmoeche as the kynge
of ffraunce had no daughter / that this was the moost myghty place
for the kynge of Sizile to be alied with / to haue helpe and comfort
20 for to sustene his warres. ¶ Now then were notable messangers
sent forth / and thei labored so that, by the kynge of Spayne, his
daughter was agreed & yeuen to the kynge of Sizile ; wherof aH his
Reaume was right iofull, and trusted by the seide kynge of Spayne
24 to be gretely socoured and holpen. ¶ Now was this lady deluyerd
to the Ambassatours, whiche brought hir in-to the Reaume of Sizile,
wher-as she was resceyued with fulle grete honour / the kynge
28 maried hir with right grete ioie / and withyn litle while she was ^{and weds her.}
with Childe / wherof the Reaume was gretly rejoised / abidyng the
grace of god til it came to the tyme of .ix. monethes ende / that she
was deliuerd / and had a doughter whiche was cristened and named
32 Iolante. whiche was in hir daies the fairest lady of the world / best
condicioned and the best biloned ; & not without cause / for in hir
were all the noble vertues that might or ought to be comprised in
so high a pryncesse / and to reherce ferthir .I. passe ouir / for I haue
neithir witte nor tonge that suffiseth therto / ffor in hir tyme she
36 passed in beaute and vertu aH that part of the worlde / for aH-
though the kyng hir ffadir were so good a prince & so valiaunt a
knyght / yit was the Reaume more susteyned and aided by a hundird
part for hir sake than for his, for the pite that eueri body had of
40 the destruccion of such one as she was / And whan she came to

She has a
lovely girl,
Iolante,

the most
beautiful in
that part of
the world,

4 King Alfour afterwards seeks help, and gets it for Iolante's sake.

the age of .xiiij. yere / hir renone was so grete that it spredde
thorugh the worlde. And yif the kynge hir ffadir wold haue yeuen
hir to the grete Turke for his eldest sone, he might haue had peas
for hym and al hys Reaume ; but he wold in no wise be agreeable 4
thereto, for he was so verry parfit goddys knyght, that he had leuer

and is then so
ward against
[1 leaf 10]

a diede / And thus eueri day encreasid his warres / and his losse
grewe more and more ; but vigorously, and ¹as a valiaunt knyght,

he diffendid his Reaume so long, til his tresour was nygh dispendid / 8
and his Reaume at the poyn特 of perdiccion, his noble men amen-
yssht be the warres, in-so-moche that he was fayn to sende to alle
cristen kynges, to asserteyne hem what cas he was yn / requiryng
hem in the name of oure lorde Ihesu criste / that, forto mayntene his 12
holy feith / they wold socoure hym & helpe hym. ¶ Now trewe it
was that many notable knyghtes, that had no warres in the cristien
Reaumes, dispoited them thorugh diuerse Reaumes / wherof many
passid by the Reaume of Sizile / and whan thei vndirstode the 16
warres that were there / some of them contynued stille there / and
some retourned in-to their contrees / to abile them self for the warres
whiche were dispuruaide there / wherof there were diuerse knyghtes

of ffrance / aswele as of othir contrees / that were come out of the 20
Reaume of Sizile / & euerich exorted gretly their kyng or prince,
vndir whos obeisaunce thei were, to entreprynse the viage, & shewed
them the grete pite that was of the Reaume, & of that faire & good
lady the kynges daughter / of whom eueri man seide more wele than 24
othir / and for the pite & loue that many had of hir / thei abode ful
long in the kynges seruice at their owne charge, for he was not of
power to sowde them / the Reaume was so gretely empouerysht /

Thus for hir loue had he the seruice of many a noble knyght. 28
Hies tidynges were opende & knownen thorugh al cristendome
to alle kynges and prynces / yn so moche / that there was
daily grete speche therof yn euery Court, Seyng that the reaume of
Sizile was nygh lost without any socours, whiche was to grete a 32
pite that so valiaunt a prince / and so noble a Reaume, & so grete,
so faire & so good a lady, shold so be destroied by the myscreauntes,
which was to grete a shame to al cristien Reaumes, seeng the litle
seruice they did to god, wherþorugh they dred that god wold 36
vttirly be displesid / All thies thinges were often deuised in eueri
Court / but for al that / was noon that adressed hem, neither to go
nor to sende any socours. ¶ ye haue herde here-to-fore the maner
& condicions of Philip the sone of the kyng of ffrance / that was 40

K. Alborns
will not wed
Iolante to a
Turk,

and is then so
ward against

[1 leaf 10]

that he has
to ask help
from all
Christian
kings.

French and
other knyghts
also beg for
aid for Sicily,

and the mat-
ter is talkt
about at every
Court.

the yong man of the worlde that moost loned & dred god. This
viage of Sizile herd he often spoken of, and many tymes wolde he
speke to his fadur, and meue him as ferre as he durst, to sende som
4 socours to this poure kynge of Sizile / and besought hym to be ware
of goddes displeasir, remembryng the grete wele / god had yeven
hym / the Reaume, & the grete possession that he helde / the tran-
quillite and peas that was in his Reaume / and he to do no thyng
8 in the seruice of hym that had yeven him alſt that / and though
there were noon oþir thinge but pite / that aught to meue eueri
prince to the socours of so honorable a kynge and so faire a lady.
Thus many tymes & ofte the right noble sone of the kynge of
12 fraunce amonested his fadur, & so long þat þe kynge was con-
streyned to awnswere him, seyng thiese wordes / "my sone, I
knowe wele / that in this that ye exorte me to do socours to the
kynge of Sizile, cometh of an high and a noble corage, wherof I am
16 right glad & wele content / but y must remembre agein the charge But K.
of this Reaume, the Payne and trauaile that I haue had, and hane, Charles
to kepe & mayntene it in good peas / for many grete prynces &
lordes holde of me / that somtyme by envy and presumpcion makes ex-
20 wold rebelle and reise werre / wherby the Reaume shold gretly cuses:
be empeired / but by grete iustise that y haue alwey kepte, & euer
shal to my power. wherfore it never yit bifelle so, ne never shaſt,
yif god be pleasid. And be sure I haue remembred this matier ful
24 ofte, and fayn wold do suche seruice as might be to god agreeable /
but I wote not how, for yif I shold sende any of my blode / the
remenaunt that be of estate wold hane envy ther-ate / and oþir stir up envy
kynges and princes that wold go vndir me wold not go vndir them / among his nobles,

28 & thus the seruice that y shol[d] do to god might litil profit or
nought / And yif y shold go in myn oune persone / the Reaume that
god hath yeven me to kepe shold be without a gouernour / for ye be
but yonge yet / and thus at my comyng ageyn / yif euer it pleased
32 god I shold retourne, I might lightly fynde my Reaume empeired
and divided in such maner that it might be grete damage to vs
bothe, & to the comon wele / wherof we sholde come to late to
repentaunce. And yif y sholde sende you forth / take hede hou
36 other kynges and princes wold be content to go vndir you & in
your company / but rathir might growe envy / wherof might falie to
you such mysauenture / that y had leuer god sende me the dethe / risk the
ye knowe wele that in you is al my trust / and the only comfort of Prince's life;

40 this Reaume, and for this y wol that ye haue no lenger hope nor

Prince Philip
urges his
father, K.
Charles,
to help the
poor king of
Sicily.
[1 ff. 10, bk.]

But K.
Charles
makes ex-
cuses:

it wold in-
jure France,

stir up envy
among his
nobles,

risk the
Prince's life;

6 *King Charles will not help the King of Sicily. No one else does.*

desire to go, nor entreprynse this viage / for and I knewe any man
withyn my Reaume, were he neuer so gret, that wold yeue you any
counse^H or ¹comfort theryn, he sholde dye for it, as he that wele
had deserued it, for he shold take out of this Reaume the grace 4
that god hath yeuen vs / that is, to haue an heire male aftir my
daies, whiche is ynough to the pleasir of all the Reaume / By whos
losses this Reaume sholde be more desolate / then that of Sizile; not
by the ennemyes of the feithe, but be enuy & warre of grete 8
princes marchers vnto this Reaume, whiche thinge may lightly by-
falle for lakke of Iustice and good gouernaunce. But y trust yn
god that, of his grace, aftir my daies ye sha^H guyde this Reaume as
wele as y haue don, & better / if it please hym to yeue you lif, 12
whiche is the thyng in the worlde that y moost desire / therfore,
yif ye haue had any desire a-fore this to take on you that viage,
lete it passe out of your mynde / for my hert can neuer be agreeable
thereto / ye se also othir cristen princes, in especia^H the kynge of 16
Spayne, whos daughter the kynge of Sizile hath maried, in trust to
haue helpe & comfort of hym / yit y can not vndirstonde that he is
any thyng comforted by hym. Beholde o that othir side, The
kyng of Ingland hath a sone, right wele condicioned as men say / 20
and of age to entreprynse suche auentures / & he hath .ij. faire
doughters, wherby he is comforted that the Reaume shall not out
of the lyne / & he knoweth thies tidynges aswele as y do / yit can
y here no worde that he any thyng paruaith to the socours of the 24
kyng of Sizile / Beholde / ferther, the kyng of Scottes, that hath
.ij. sones, wherof / one is in the age of Armes, wele norisshed &
condicioned, as y vndirstonde / & wele may ye wite that he hath
thies tidynges aswele as othir / and he doth nothyng ther-to, and 28
yet is he the kyng that hath leste excuse, sith he hath .ij. sones,
as it is saide / and yif he wold sende forth one of them / and sende
vnto the kyng of Inglonde and to me / y wote wele that for to do
seruice vnto god / ther is noon of vs two but wolde aide thereto 32
vnto oure power. Se ferther, also the Emperour, that sholde be
the verry trewe defence of the Churche, & sustenaunce / and the
right arme that aught to be defender / and y can here no thyng
that he doth to the socours, helpe or comfort of the kyng of Sizile. 36
Then I, that am ferre from the marches, & of noon acquey[n]taunce
nor alliaunce, shold be the first premeuer or exorter to enterprynse
the viage, it accordeth not. Beholde thorugh all almayne, where as
so many grete princes be, whiche of theym presenteth hem forward / 40

[leaf 11]
and if he was
kild, France
would be
more desolate
than Sicily.

The King of
Spain does
not help his
son-in-law;

nor does the
King of Eng-
land

or the King
of Scotland,

or the Em-
peror,

or any Ger-
man prince.

whan I fynde any that ¹this Viage wol take vpon theym, & they [¶ ff. 11, bk.]
 sende to me, seurely y shal do seruice to god to my power; but tyl
 that tyme I wol not entremete me ther-with." ¶ This yonge
 4 Philippe, vndirstondyng the wordes of his ffadir, consideryng
 that they were resonable, dredyng his displeasir, answerd hym
 litil, seyng al sobrely / " My lord, y know wel your causes be
 good & resonable / but and eueri Prynce be of that opinion / the
 8 socours ys like to come to late to the good kynge of Sizile. Where
 nedith to be sought a gretter prynce or a better gouernour than he
 is / yif it pleased your grace to sende him of youre folkys. and <sup>Prince Philip
answers his
father's ob-
jections,</sup>
 yif ye thinke ther sholde growe any enuy to sende them in the
 12 conduyt of a grete lorde / put hem then in the gouernaunce of
 knyghtes, suche as be notable, & preued wise and worthy ; and
 yeeue them in charge to do what the kynge wil commaunde them /
 and thus shal thei be sure of a good Capteyne / And than shal
 16 there be no cristen prynce but that may and aught to make of you
 his mirrour & example to do as ye haue dōn, to þe wele of al
 cristendome, wherof the honour shold be doubled in you, yn-
 asmoche as ye were the first meuer & begynner therof."

20 **T**He kynge, consideryng the wordes of his sone, thought hem <sup>K. Charles
puts his son
off:</sup>
 trewe & right honorable / al-though he had no wille therto /
 yit answerd hym thus : " my sone, youre seyng is good and
 laudable, & I wol remembre it / and take auyse vpō your exhorta- <sup>says he'll
think about</sup>
 24 cion." The right noble sone of the kynge was wise, and knewe it.
 anoon / that this was but a meane to be delyuerd of hym, & that
 he had no wille to entendre to this matter ; & thus moornyng, pensif <sup>Prince Philip
goes, griev-
ing,</sup>
 and right soroufult, he departed fro hym / & went to his chambre,
 28 where-as were many noble folkes ; and he withdrew hym in-to ^{to his room,}
 an Inner chambre with suche as pleasd hym / and made one rede
 holy stories and lynes of Seyntes, seruauntes to the cristen feith /
 wher-by he sawe the paynes and trauailes that the holy Apostells
 32 and Martirs had sofred to gete the perdurable glorie. Sone aftir he
 went ayen in-to his Chambre, where-as he founde many yonge
 lordes, sonys to the grete princees and grete lordes of the Reaume /
 that had be brought vp of childhode with hym, whiche caused
 36 bitwene him and them a verry naturel loue ; and they exorted hym <sup>where his
young friends
urge the
Sicilian enter-
prise on him.</sup>
 to speke to the kynge for this Viage of Sizile, whiche they knewe
 for trouthe that ouir alle thyng he desired ; & gladly eueri man
 meueth his maister of suche matiers as moost may please hym /

40 Also echē of ²theym was of the age to bere Armes / and ouir al [¶ leaf 12]

thyng desired to be at that viage / and often saide to their maister /
 “yif ye myghte haue this viage, ye shold haue al the sute of the
 world / for eueri man wold be ioifuſt to put hym vndir you. Ector
 of Troie nor Alisaundre had neuer the renome that ye shold haue 4
 aftir your dethe” / This yong philippe, heryng dayly thies wordes,
 knowyng the kynges pleasir contrary, answerd lesse than he was
 wont to do, wherof they that spake to hym of þe matier were
 abasshed, & thought in hem self that he was not so hote ther-yn as 8
 he had ben bifore / but for trouthe he was more ardaunt in his
 mynde than euir he was. Thus euerichon departid, for it was tyme
 to go to slepe. This yong prince beyng in his bedde, contynuelly
 thinkyng on the wordes that he had hadde with his ffadir / aftir 12
 came him to remembraunce the stories he hadde herd redde a little
 bifore his going to bedde / callyng to mynde also / the paynes that
 be in this world / hou myghti a kyng someuer he be, here hath he
 no surete in noon erthly thyng / but only of the kyngdom of 16
 heuen, that neuer hath fyne / thus he debated in him self, seyng
 thies wordes / “A, verray god ! y may do the no seruice / I haue
 the wille, but I haue not the power / I remembre the paynes /
 the seyntes of whom I rede to day endured to come to thy Reaume. 20
 Alas ! y had neuer payn for the / but aſt wele and glorie / hou may
 y thanacheu that crowne without ende / I am of thy grace
 abidyng on that is erthly / whiche right sone y may leſe / for
 dethe shal make the departyng ; & than shall I haue no more 24
 possessioune nor part yn erthe than the porest in this Reaume ;
 wele cured were I, yif y myght make a chaunge of that crowne that
 is morteſt, for that whiche ys ymmortel. So y pray the, very god,

He desires to be employed in God's service, þat of thy grace thou wilt helpe me, though y may not nowe / that 28
here-aftir this Reaume and I may be employed in thy seruice.”

After, he torned hym in his bedde, and said in this wise : “what
 seruice may y do / y haue no power but of myn only body, that
 neuer sawe no thyng, ne wote not what it is of Armies / ner neuer 32
 sawe company assembled. y am yong & but a childe ; what seruycē
 may I. than do to god ?” / than seide he ageyn, “A, good lord /
 tho that y redde of to-day, that sought the Reaume of heuen / ne
 did it not in grete company, but only with their owne propre 36
 bodies. It were they that sought the very parfit glorie, and god
 [¶ lf. 12, bk.] was suffised with the deserthes of their owne bodies / wherfore alle
He resolves to give up his heirship to the Crown, thynges ¹considered, y shaſt put forth my body / and renounce alſt
 the successioun þat in this world may befalle me, and for his sake 40

Prince
Philip says
little,

but in bed

reflects on the
vanity of
earthly glory.

and to work,
like the
Saints, alone.

¶ lf. 12, bk.
He resolves
to give up
his heirship
to the Crown,

promyse with good hert to go vnto the seruice of the kyng of
 Sizile / and neuer to departe til the warres be ended / or ellis y ^{and fight for}
 shal dye yn the defence of his reaume" / and thus vttrly con-
 4 cludid Phelip to departe, & to abandoume the Reaume and al his
 frendes / thynkyng yn hym self / hou to conduyte this matier
 that no lyving creature shold haue knowlage therof / ffor wele
 wist he that there was noman in alle the Reaume, and he knewe it /
 8 that durst concele it fro the kynge; for he was sure / and they did
 othirwise / they shold die; and therfore determinyd he yn alle
 poyntes to entreprise this viage without discoueryng of his entent
 to any lyving creature / considering wele that he had not ben
 12 accostomed to be alone / and that it shold be to hym right straunge /
 neuirthelles, for the loue of oure lord, he determinyd to suffre &
 bere paciently all paynes and troubles that he wolde sende hym.
 In this determinacion & purpose contynued Phelip the space of a
 16 Moneth and more / thinkyng on that besinesse / and did so that he ^{he collects}
 puruaide hym of money y-nough to fynde hym .v. or vj. yere /
 trustyng withyn that terme to fynde some good aventure / So it
 befel that on a Monday at night, the mone shone faire and clere,
 20 and he departid out of Paris; and this was the xxijth day of febyr / ^{leaves Paris}
 And his age was than xxv. yere / and at his departyng, he verrily
 promysed in his mynde neuer to be knownen what he was, til the
 warres were ffynysshed / and bettir for to coner hym self / he
 24 chaunged his name / & concludid to calle hym self "le despurieu" / ^{on Monday,}
 and passed so forth / & thought wele that whan his goyng was
 knownen, that our al the marches men sholde seke hym, and in
 especiahl vpone the marches of Sizile, for this that many folkes
 28 had knownen his desire thiderward; & therfore he avised hym
 not to go that way, but rather drewe hym to the Reaume of
 Spayne; for he thought / yn-asmoche as the kynge of Sizile had
 maryed þe kynge of Spaynes doughtir, there he sholde here more
 32 certeyn tidynges þan in any oþir Reaume / So rode he forth the ^{He rides fast}
 streight way towarde Spayne / yn so grete haste that he rode more
 in one day / than any of the best ryders the kynge his ffadir had /
 did in two / and rode so forth, al-wey vnknowen, so long tyme til
 36 he came to Spayne / so sore chaunged & amegred that vnnethe any
 man myght him knowe / for he had not the lif / he had ben
 accostomed to / where-thorugh, yif god of his grace had not ^[1 leaf 13]the
 better comforþed & holpen him / he had neuer departed out of
 40 Spayne alyne / alweis, what Payne and trauaile so euer he had, he

^{he is 25,}
<sup>'Le Despar-
veu.'</sup>

^{and changes}
^{his name to}
<sup>'Le Despar-
veu.'</sup>

^{to Spain,}
^[1 leaf 13]

and reaches
Toledo,
where k. Al-
bors is.

He lodges
with a bur-
gess,

and calls
himself 'Le
Despurreu.'

He falls very
ill,

and is in bed
for 6 months.

toke it in pacience, for the loue of god. So fortuned hym to come to a Cite was named Towlette / where-as the kynge was / And for-asmoche as he thought there were folkes a-boute the kynge of alle nacion, as wele of ffraunce as of othir / and perauenture suche 4 as might lyghtly knowe hym / it thought hym good to fynde some secrete loggyng where-as he shold not be often seyen / and so, by the meane of a gentilman that he mette by the way / he was loggid in the hous of a noble Burgeis, one of the moost riche of the 8 Towne / whiche had weddid the Aunt of that same gentilman / at whos request they loggid hym right wele, and made hym right good chere / which felle wele for le Despurreu; for thei were good and notable folkes, & had a sone & a daughter of right grete and 12 notable recommendacion, faire personnes of good condicions, & wele and honorably norisshed / & withyn litle while that the Despurreu had ben there, the loued hym as their owne sone / & the sone & the daughter loued hym as their brother. And to the sone of the 16 hous taught he such thynges of honour, that folkes meruailed to se hym so wele ensured / And the daughter taught he to syng / to harpe, & to play at the chesse, and all such goodly th[y]nges as bilonge to a gentilwoman of honour. ¶ Now felle it so / that 20 while he was in this reste aftir his grete trauaile, whiche he was not accustomed to / bifelle hym a grete sikenesse, that alle tho that sawe him iuged in hym no thyng but dethe / and durid in hym more than half a yere / so that he might neuer rise of his bedde, 24 whereby he was so moche empeired / that, & he had ben in the presence of his ffadir / he coude not know hym / and moche more greued hym his sekenesse / for it taried hym fro the seruice of god / than for any Payne that he endured / but our lorde, in whos 28 kepyng he had put hym, whiche wold not refuse his seruice / made hym to hauie that sikenes / for othir wise myght he neuer accompliss his desire vnownen / there was so grete serche for hym yn eueri cristen Reaume / for so grete sorowe was neuer seyn in no 32 contre as was for his departyng, thorughout alle ffraunce. [Illum. 18, bk.]

The Tuesday
morning after
Prince Philip
leaves Paris,

THe tuysday in the mornyng, aftir the departyng of the kynges sone, came lordes, knyghtes and squyers, as they were accustomed to be at the risyng of their maister, & 36 founde not yit opyn þe chamber dore; for on the nyght afore had he made alle the folkes to avoide, as wele his chambrelayn as othir, seyng that he wold be that nyght alone / whereby they supposed that he had som lady or Lentilwoman there / that he wolde 40

not haue knownen. Thus they alle retourned ageyn in the mornyng to his Chambre dore, and there awated right longe, & durst make no noyse, for displeasir, t^H it was the houre of noone / meruailynge 4 grettly that he was not stiryng, for he was not accustomed to be in his bedde at that tyme. So concluded they that the Chambrelayn shold^t knokke at the dore / whiche he did all ferefully / but noon ^{the Chamber-}
^{lain knocks}
^{at his door;} answerd hym, wherof they meruailed gretly / and bode ther so 8 long / that it passed two of the clokke / then wordo came to the kynge therof, whiche meruailed gretly, and forthwith went in-to the grete chambre of his sones / and founde there many lordes, knyghtes and Squyers, that awaited on hym / of whom he axed "what may 12 this be" / and they tolde hym the trouthe / wherof he was gretly abasshed, for neuer bifore had he founde his sone of suche demeanyng. So he went to the dore, and knokked so loude as tough he ^{so does King Charles.} sholde haue brokyn vp ^[1 leaf 14] the dore / but no body answerd hym / 16 whereof he toke grete displeasir, and made the dore to be broken ^{They break it open,}
^{and find the room empty,} vp / and fonde the Chambre al redy, and the bedde made / and no body theryn ; wherof the kynge was sore ameruailed / & made to seche hym ouir all / but noon coude here of hym ; than sent he to 20 the stabells, & sond that the best smal^t hors that he had was goon / that was the kynge plainly assured that he was not in the toune. And wele knewe he that his sone was not departed in this maner to come sone ageyn / wherfore he toke suche sorowe that he felle in 24 a sowne / and at last, whan he was releued ageyn / he made the moost pitous regrettes that any man might make / "Alas," quoth he, "my dere sone / what haue I forfete vnto you? / ye haue put me to deth without desert / for y haue loued you more than my self / 28 ye were my ioie, my recomfort, and myn esperauance / Alas / al^t this haue ye taken fro me / þat am your ffadir, & by this meane shal abregge my lif / I was he þat more gladly wolde haue died to haue lengthid youre lif, than to haue lyued by youre deth ; my 32 trust was, that god had geue you vnto me for my grete ioie / but y se wele ye are come in-to this world for to abregge my daies / wold god y had agreed to youre request / touchinge the viage of Sizile / yn-to whiche place I thinke wele ye be gon / but ye be so dis- 36 puruaide / that y thinke ye shal neuer perfourme half way, seyng your softe & tendre norisshyng / Alas, my frendes! helpe to comfort a discomfortid / that calleth hym self at this day the moost wrecchid kynge that leuyth. Alas, my wif! whan yo shal 40 knowe thies tidyngis, .I. haue grete drede hou ye shal bere the

^{but the best}
^{mug is out of}
^{the stable.}

K. Charles
 regrets that
 he refused to
 let Philip go
 to Sicily.

grete paynes that youre hert shaſſ suffre / Now y requyre you,
my frendes, enquere ouir aſſ, yif any lyuyng creature be gon
with hym / for than shold my soroufuſ hert be in the lesse
dispeire” /

4

The Queen of France grieves for the loss of her son.

[¹ lf. 14, bk.]

VE may thiuke that whan the tidinges came to the Quene, she had as moche sorowe / as the hert of any modre sholde haue that had lost suche a sone / for there was no lyuyng body that might recomfort hir / Hir sorow & hir compleint was more 8 than y can deuise you. The kinge, and she, that gladly and by naturall reson shold comforthe eche one oþhir / they might vnnethes opyn their mowthes, but as folkes ded & transitory. In like wise was the sorow so grete of alle suche as were there / for they entendid 12 neither the kynge, neither ¹the Quene, but rente their here, & made vnmesurable sorow, as folkes vþterly dispeired / The tidinges spred ouir aſſ the Cite of Parys: there might ye here brayng & cryyng in al þe cite of aſſ maner of folkes, grete & smale / there is 16 no man that can recorde the sorow that the Cite made / for they might no more make, though thei had lost on o day alle the frendes thei had / In like wise felle it thorough aſſ the Reaume of ffraunce / for ther was neuer noon earthly man more biloued than was this 20 yonge Phelip, the kynges sone / not only in the Reaume of ffraunce, but in alle oþhir Reaumes that marched ther-to / whiche, whan thei herd the losse of this childe, thei made merualous sorow / And wite for trouthe, that in the Reaume of ffraunce was lost at 24 that hour aſſ ioie, whiche dured as longe as his sorowfuſ ffadir lyued / for neuer aftir sawe he the thinge in the worlde that he moost loued / that was, his right dere sone, whiche was grete cause of shortnyng of his lif / ffor aftir his sones departynge, coude he 28 neuer here tidynges of hym / for no serche he coude make. ¶ Now

The King is never aller glad.

While Prince Philip is sick in Toledo, his host's children, Florentine and John, tell him how he is lost from France.

He recovers.

seith the tale / that while Phelip lay thus seke in his bed at Towlette / ffaire fflorentyne, the daughter of his hoste, & hir brothir Ioñ, oftentymes wolde visite hym, and telle him the tidynges of 32 the Reaume of ffraunce, how the kynges sone was lost / the renome that was of hym / the sorow that was for his lone. but, fynally, he neuer made semblaunt / that it touched him in any thyng. ¶ So long contynued this terme, that it was passed half a yere sith he 36 departed out of ffraunce, in somoch that the speche was alle lefte / and put yn forgetyng, of the losse of the kynges sone / at whiche tyme he was in recoueryng, by the helpe of his good hoste and hostesse and their childre / and by *that* tyme was he al-most oute 40

of the drede of knowlage, by length of tyme and his grete sikenes.

¶ Now aþt this tyme contynued the warres of Sizile; for the grete Turk and K. Ferabras of Persia subdue half Sicily.

4 enforced them to conquere the Reaume, whiche was by that tyme more than half conquered / whereby the kynge of Sizile was constreyned to sende to alle cristen princes for socours, takyng god to witnesse that, and that Reaume were towrned to the mysbeleue / it 8 was for lak of pite & helpe of theym, for without socours it was not yn his power to kepe it lenger / than such a day as he apointed by his writyng. ¶ Thus sent he notable knyghtes, bothe to the Pope [leaf 15] and to alle other Reaumes / among which he sent vnto the kynge

12 of Spayne one of the moost notable knyghtes of his Reaume / whiche was named fferant / and was his Senesshaft. and he had a Brother, right a valiaunt man / whiche had in gouernance part of the frontiers ayenst the ennemyes of the feith / and right honourably

16 demeaned hym there. ¶ Now fferant departed out of Sizile yn-to Spayn, and sped so wele his iourneis that he came to Towlette, where-as he founde the kynge, whiche resceyued hym with right grete honour, & loggid there as the Despurueu was, that by than 20 was wele recouerd. & whan he knewe the cause of fferantes comyng / it reioised hym more than aþt the goold in Spayne coude haue done / trustyng to become his seruant / and to go with hym in-to Sizile / than felle he in acqueytaunce with his folkes / whiche had so grete

24 loue vnto hym, for the grete weles that they sawe in hym / that they brought hym in acqueyntance with their maister, whiche was right glad of his company. ffor so wele demeaned hym, le Despurueu, to

fferant / and alle his men / that he was gretly desired of them alle to go 28 in-to Sizile with them / But ouir alle othir, fferant desired hym moost / wherof le Despurueu was as glad as any man might be / for it was the thyng yn the erthe that he moost desired. Thus is the Despurueu be-lefte with fferant / thinkyng verrily to vse part of his youth yn

32 the warres for the loue of god. ¶ Now seith the tale, that fferant bode at the Cite of Towlette til that he sawe wele his abidyng there might litil profit his maister / for he sped in substanciall nothing that he came for / wherfore he toke his leue of the kynge, & retournd in-

36 to Sizile / and le Despurueu, his newe seruaunt, with hym / for whos departyng / his hoste & his hostesse toke as moche sorow as, and he had be their sone / and cursed the houre that the knyght of Sizile came into that contre / thus departed fferant the Senesshaft, right sorowfull 40 of that he hath no better speddle, & emploiede his iourney / til that

The Great
Turk and K.
Ferabras of
Persia subdue
half Sicily.

K. Alfour
sends Ferant
to ask help
from K. Al-
bors of Spain.

Prince Philip
gets to know
Ferant,

and leaves
Toledo with
him, as his
servant.

he approached the Reaume of Sizile, anisyng alwey his newe seruaunt / consideryng withyn hym self / his persone, his beaute / his maner, his humbles / wherof he was moche ameruailed / for he wende not that yn the body of any one man might haue ben so many vertues to-gedir / So thought he wele / that if he had as moche worthynesse and prowes as he had persone & maner, he shold be the moost perfit thinge that euer god made sith tyme of his

[1 ff. 15, bk.]

passioñ. ¶ And yit aþ¹were it that he were not valiaunt yn 8 armes, yit were he worthy to serue any kynge, for it is litle seen that alle vertues be complete in one man. Thus rode they forth so longe til he entred in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and logged hym the

Ferant and
Prince Philip
reach Taprey
in Sicily.

first night in a Towne called Taprey, of the whiche, Olyuer, brother 12

to fferant, was Captayne / and for the moost part was abidyng ther /

fferabrace, brother to the Soudan, was yn an other Towne but .iiij.

leeges thens / that was named / ffoundey, whiche he had conquered

vpoñ the kyng of Sizile / fferant was traualied & wery, & purposed 16

to rest hym ther with his brother a seuenight or a fournight / And

sone after he was come / the tidynges were knownen to fferabrace,

kyng of Perce / whiche seide to his folkes, “ It were il don of vs yif

we went not to se fferant that is retourned fro Spayn / and he is with 20

his brother, oure neighbore / & so, if we might take any prisoner, we

shold knowe of alle their tidynges / fferant is a valiant knyght, y

doute not / if he reste longe vnsought of vs, with-oute he haue the

gretter besinesse he wþl come bifore vs / wherfore it shalbe good for 24

vs to go thidir to-morow. To this counseile, accorde alle they that

were with hym / for the ceason was faire & plesaunt / It was than

and marches,
with 2000
men, to Ta-
prey.

yn the entre of Aprile / thus as they concluded, they did / for full

erly in the morne they departed from that place with a ij. Mt. 28

feighters, holdyng their wey streight to the place where as fferant

and his brother were / and whan thei were nygh there / they

departed in two: yn the tain part / was kyng fferabrace / and the

tothir was a nigh kynnesman of his / when the warte espied the 32

fforeriders, he blewe a Trompet / and fferaunt rose vp / & went to

the yate, where as he fouude his brother aþ redi, to whom he seide /

“ Brothir, this course is made for me / and for to take som of oure

Ferant will
not attack
them.

folkes to knewe of my tidynges ; but, y pray you, lete no man go 36

oute / for y knowe for trouthe that he hath moche people / and ye

haue not in this Towne passed v. or vj. hundred feigthyngmen /

and therfore lete them be, for the entreprise of enemyes is euer

vnprofitable” / Olyuer, that was a full good man of warre, seide to 40

his brother / "ye sey trouthe," and made to shitte the yates fast / wherof many were right sory / and ouir alle othir Le Despuruuen,^{Prince Philip is sorry,}
 that hath herde the wordes a foresaide, and was redy armēd, and
 4 on horsbak, desiryng to haue seyn som dedes of Armes / wherof he
 had never no thinge seyn / ^[1 leaf 16]whan he sawe this conclusion / he set vp his hors / and went vp to the walles and sawe the fforeriders,^{but goes up on the walls,}
 whiche was but right a fewe people / wherof he had grete meruaile
 8 that so litle compaignie durst come so nere where so many a good
 man was / Aftir this, that so long tyme curroars had be bifore
 the place, & sawe that ther wold no man come oute / they sente
 the kynge worde therof, desiryng to knowe his pleasir / The kynge,
 12 heryng thies tidinges, concluded to come bifore the place to shewe
 his puissaunce / than brake he oute with bothe thembusshementes,
 and came yn ordenaunce bifore the place / Le Despuruuen, seeng
 this compaignie, thought wele that he was with a notable & a wise
 16 maister / & that he had grete fore-sight yn suche ease / ffor he sawe
 where thembusshementes departed yn dyners compaignies / and
 enviroinid the towne as they wolde haue bisiegēd it / fferant and
 his brother, seeng the Turques thus disseuerd in diuerse com-
 20 paignies, purposed to gyue them a scarmyssh at one of the yates /
 where-as the leest compaignie was, thinkynge wele that the moost
 parte of the kynges people wolde drawe thiderward / and whan it
 were so, he wold issue out and set vpon the kynge, there his baner
 24 was / thus as y haue deuised was doñ. they began to scarmyssh /
 and the erie aroos, & eueri man drewe thiderward, so that the kynge
 was but with fewe accompanied. And than fferant & his Brothir
 made open the yate / and came alle on a frussē out of the Towne
 28 so egrely and with suchē force that, wold the kynge or not / he
 was fayne to lese his place & to withdrawe hym shamefully / and
 had at the same encountre of his men slayn moo then vj.^{xx}, at
 whiche iourney auaunced hym self le Despuruuen a fore alle othir / and
 32 did so wele in armes that alle that euer sy hym & knewe him of
 his parte, were gretly encoraged therby / and blessed them for the
 meruailes that thei sy him do yn his armes ; and his enemyes were
 as moche abasshed & confused by his prowesse. the mooste parte of
 36 the folkes knewe hym not / but only they that he was come in
 compaignie with, out of the Reaume of Spayne / many went to
 fferant to telle him the grete meruailes that his seruaunt Le Des-
 paruen did / wherof he was ioifull, and praied alle theym that tolde
 40 thies tidinges / that they wold drawe toward hym / and do him
^{and sees the full force of Turks and Persians.}
^{With them the Christians skirmish, and K. Ferra-bras is left with few troops.}
^{He is driven back.}
^{and Prince Philip fights gallantly,}
^{to Feraunt's joy.}

helpe & socours, yf nede were. The erie & the noise aroos on alle
 parties so moche / that the Turques withdrew ¹theym alle to the
 kynge to socoure hym / and whan they were assembled to-gedre /
 thei were a right grete puissaunce / as yn regarde of theym of the **4**
 Towne / the tuo Brethre sawe welle it was tyme to withdrawe /

[l. 16, bk.]
The Turks
rally,
and the Chris-
tian trumpets
sound a re-
treat.

and made a trumpet to blowe retreet on alle parties, & made their
 people to withdrawe. But le Despurueu, that neuer had be yn cure
 with suche thinges, made no semblaunt to withdrawe hym / but **8**

But Prince
Philip fights
on.

defeudid hym & assailed his enemyes alwey stille so long, that
 fferaunt hym self was constreyned to fecche hym / and put hym
 forth a-fcre hym / and bade hym aH angrily / to withdrawe hym /
 and fferant had taried so longe for the seching of his seruaunt, that **12**

Ferant, in
helping him,
is taken
prisoner by
the Turks.

his enemyes presed so fast / that almoost they had enterd the
 barers, and had closed yn fferant aH a-boute. Le Despurueu, seyng
 this / knowing wele that this auenture was falle to his maister by
 hym, had leuer hane diede than faile his maister, & retourned his **16**
 hors, and smote in-to the thikkest of the prees with suche ire and
 force / that he that mette with his fuH stroke ouirthrew / & did so
 wele that he came to theym that had taken his maister / and smote
 yn amonges them / and by his grete worthynesse deliuernd the place **20**
 saue of the kynge to whom men had deliuernd his maister / whiche
 in no wise wold lette him go / yit at the last he might not chese /
 for Olyuer, that sawe his brother taken, & the grete armes that le
 Despurueu did, assembled his folkes ageyn, and retourned aH at ones **24**
 in suche wise & with suche vigour, that, wolde the Turques or not /
 thei lost grounde / Le Despurueu, seyng that the cristen men wan

Prince Philip
rescues Fe-
rant,

captures K.
Ferabrus,

place and approched nere / and that he rescowed his maister / knewe
 wele the kynge that was nere, and toke his hors by the bridle / & **28**
 gate his hede vndir his arme / and by might drewe the kynge forth,
 whedir he wolde or no / and delyuerd hym t> his maister / that
 forthwith sent hym yn-to the Towne / and commaunded that eueri
 man sholde withdrawe / And toke his seruaunt by the bridle, & **32**
 ledde hym forth with hym. The kynges folkes, seyng the losse of
 their maister, & the grete vigour of the cristen men / were so abused
 that they made but litle prese / And thus retourned the cristen in-to
 the Towne aH at their ease. It is to thinke,² that Le Despurueu was **36**
 not the first that entird / for it annoied hym moche that it dured no
 lenger / for it semed hym the moost grete pleasir that euir he was at
 yn aH hys ³lif / hou-be-it / that by his harneis and hys body it

and they
all re-enter
Tabrey.

[3 leaf 17]

² bear in mind.

shewed wele that he had not ben idle / nor also right amyably delte with, for in many places the blode ranne out of such hurtes as he had / Anon as they were entirld in to the Towne, the brigge was 4 drawen / and folkes ordeigned on the walles to kepe theym / Le Despuruen, when he had conveid his maister to his loggyng / he went to his Inne / and vnarmed him / and leide hym downe on a bedde. ¶ The Turques seeng their kynge prisoner, & many of their folkes ded and taken / it semed them that bifore that Towne thei might little profit / But many thought it was better to abide til they knewe the pleasir of the Soudan / to whom they sent the trouthe of thies tidynge, & thought it was nede for them to take good kepe aboute 8 the Towne / that the kynge were not had a-way ; for yf the Soudan wolde hastily come & set a sege ther / he might lyghtly haue ageyn his brother / thus as they concluded, they did / and loggid them bifore the Towne / abidyng an awnswere of þe Soudan. ¶ Now 12 retourne we to fferant þat was at his logging vnarmed / right ioifult of the good auenture that was bifallen hym / and than went he to the kynge / that be than was also vnarmed / & made as good chere as he coude after the auenture that was fallen, for wele trusted he 16 sone to be socoured / Ouir alþ the Towne was ther no knyght, Squyer, lady, nor Lentilwoman, riche ne pore / but that spake of le Despuruen ; of his grete noblesse, of his persone, and of his maner ; & alþ guue hym the preise & loos aboue alt oþir / seyng that it 20 came hym of grete corage / whan he sawe his maister taken / that he allone so mightyly a-mong so moche people rescowed his maister / and ar any man came at hym / so valiauntly toke the kynge 24 prisoner / there was never noon sawe yn one man more worthy- 28 nesse shewed in a day / his enemyes fled his strokes, & they on his part had ioie and recomfort / and the leest hardly became valiaunt / & were encoraged by his prowesse. ¶ Suche wordes and semblable were spoken of hym though alþ the Towne, of grete / meane & litil. 32 ¶ Now is fferant with his prisoner, and welcomed hym, and did hym alþ the honour and pleasir that any man coude do his prisoner, comfortyng hym, seyng that by hym / and by his good meanes, a pees sholde be made bitwene his brother and the kynge of Sizile, & 36 ¹he trusted that for that cause god had ordeyned hym to haue hym prisoner / for without grace of god ne might it haue ben / for this he knewe for trouthe / that he that had taken hym / had never sene swerde drawen bifore in bataile / and yit was ther no leuyng 40 man / that moost had vsed the warres coude more haue done / wher- THREE KINGS' SONS.

Prince Philip unarms and goes to bed.

The Turks wait for the Sultan's order before raising the siege.

All the townsfolk praise Prince Philip's courage in rescuing his Master, and taking King Ferabras prisoner.

Ferant treats Ferabras well.

¶ ff. 17, bk.]

by al men might knowe / that it was verily goddes werke.
 wherfore he prайд the kynge, his prisoner, that he wold put hym
 in deuoir to make the pees betwene his brothir and the kynge of
 Sizile his maister / and in so doyng / he shold wynne grete loos 4
 and renome, & gete hym self out of the daunger he was yn now.
 fferabrace, kynge of Perce, seeng hym prisoner / heryng the wordes
 of his maister, answerd hym in this maner / “yif it pleasid Mahun
 that y myght do any thyng touchyng the pees of this tuo kynges, y 8
 wolde right gladly emploie me, though y were not prisoner / for y
 was neuer of contrary wille / But the debate is betwene them
 for sustenaunce of the feith that he holdeth ayenst oure bileue /
 whiche, by the feith y owe to that god that y honoure, y had leuer dy 12
 than be a treter in any mater contrary to oure bilene / yif youre
 kynge were content to holde oure lawe, the peas were sone made /
 but othirwise y se no remedy” / “Be my feith,” seid fferant, “than
 shaſt we neuer haue pees” / than lefte they of thies wordes, and the 16
 kynge required fferant that he might se hym that had taken him /
 for ouer al thing he desired it / fferant knewe wele that he was
 right wery of the Payne & trauail that he had þat day, wherfore
 he had no wille to sende for hym / hou be it / that he had more 20
 desire to se hym than kynge fferabrace had / for he loued hym as
 moche as any man myght loue his lady / and grete cause had he /
 for that day had he rescowed hym from the dethe / for, and he had
 be brought to the Soudan, al the golde on erthe ne might haue 24
 bought his lif / and so Answerd he to kynge fferabrace, “sir, y
 suppose that he be at reste, but to-morowe, and god be pleased, y
 shall sende hym vnto you” / the kynge answerd, “at your pleasir
 be it / but y shall neuer be at hertes ease til y se hym / for I desire 28
 as moche to se him, as seke man doth his hele” / fferant sawe the
 kynges desire moche ; and to accomplissh it, wist not what to do /
 for he dred that his seruaunt were sore hurt, wherfore he durst not
 sende for hym / so wist not he what to ¹answer, but prайд the 32
 kynge to haue pacience til on the morowe, whiche answerd hym /
 “so most y / for my wille may not be accomplisht. I am a prisoner ;
 but y sey you for trouthe, and y were at my liberte, y wolde se
 hym or y slepte, what trauail so euer y toke on me / wherfor, and 36
 he be any thyng hurt, and ye wold do me that grace to brynge me
 ther he is, ye shold do me grete comfort and pleasir” / fferant,
 heryng thies wordes, toke conclusion in hym self / that he wold go
 se Le Despurreu his seruaunt, and seide to the kynge, that yif his 40

Ferab
ras
asks
Ferab
ras to
make peace
between the
Sultan and
the King of
Sicily.

Ferab
ras asks
to see
Prince
Philip.

[¹ leaf 18]
 Ferab
ras begs
him to wait
till next day.

seruaunt might come to hym, he wolde bryngē hym to hym that
 night / and yif he might not go / he wolde biseche hym of his
 goodnesse to come se hym / thus departed he from the kynge,
 4 whiche praidē him right specially that he might se him assone as it
 coude be / for he coude not bilene that it were any mortal man / but
 som spirituel thinge sent from heuen to punyssh hym for his
 trespasses ; for he thought "it was not possible to be in one man that
 8 y haue seyn hym do this day" / fferant began to laugh, and seide /
 "sir, whan ye se hym ye shalt not fynde him dispurwaide of moche
 more" / thus departed fferant fro the kynge / and came to the place
 where Le Despurneu was loggid / and was leide on a bedde full euel
 12 ordeyned for / and little remembred of any man. and so he entird
 in-to the chambre of le Despurneu, whiche, whan he sawe hym, was
 all abasshid / & woldē haue risen ayenst hym / but he might
 vnnethe remewe. whan his maister sawe him in that plite, he
 16 ranne to hym, and caught hym in his armes, wepyng for pite that
 he had of hym, and in his mynde leide grete blame vnto him self /
 that he had noon erste visited hym / seyng, "alas, my frende, ye
 are porely awaited on after the high dedes that ye haue doſt to day.
 20 I pray you foryeue it me / y knowe wele that hym that gae me
 ioie & honour, y haue put yn foryetyng, take the honour to me,
 whiche cometh of your bounte, that y haue so symply remembred
 it ; but pardon me, my frende / for the remenaunt of my lif y shall
 24 better remembre you / ye aught nomore to thanke me than of
 your dethē for lakke of helpe, yef ye had hadde any mortall wounde,
 and all othir wise haue ye deserued vnto me / seeing the grete peyne
 & trauaile that ye haue endured this day to saue my lif & myn
 28 honour ; and y, as a wrech full of vnyndenes, haue put you all in [¶ lf. 18, bk.]
 foryeting, whiche reschewed me this day from dethē / and I. not who saved
 comforte you with one onely visitacion." Le Despurneu, heryng
 his maisters wordes, was so ashamed that he coude vnnethe loke vp /
 32 doing him all the honour that he might after the hurtes þat he
 had on him, reputyng him-self ful vnworthy to haue any suchē
 honour. "seeing / my lorde, I never deserued such honour as ye put
 me to / god yene me graee to do you seruice that may please you / &
 36 therwith all wold haue drawen him bak as all shamefast / but his
 maister wold not suffre hym / & fourthwith sende for the best He sends for
 Surieoun withyn the Towne / and meñ to serche his woundes afore the
 40 hym ; & though he were right sore hurt / ther was no peril of dethē
 yn hym / so that he were wele loked to / then was he ordeigned for

Ferant goes
to Prince
Philip's
lodging,

and is
ashamed to
find it so
poor.

He apologizes
for his neg-
lect of Philip,

who saved
his life.

He sends for
the best
Surgeon to
attend
Philip.

Ferant has
Prince
Philip's
room done
up,

and lets K.
Ferabrus
come to see
him.

Ferabrus
praises
Prince Philip
very highly.

[¹ leaf 19]

Philip asks
him to make
peace be-
tween his
brother, the
Sultan, and
the King of
Sicily.

in the best maner. Than sent kyng fferbrace to fferant, prayng him that he might se his maister. fferant made the chambre right wele to be apointed, and made torches to be brought yn / and sent priuelie to the kynge, that yif it pleasid him he might come / whiche 4 came with right a ioifuH herte / and for the grete desire þat he had to se Le Despurueu, he fel noon of alþ the peyne & trauail that he had endured that day. So came he in to the Chambre, and flounde fferant talkyng with le Despurueu, whiche was leide on a couche / 8 and whan fferant espied the kynge, he kneled downe & toke hym by the hande, and shewed hym hym that hadde taken hym / whiche knewe nothinge of his comyng / but assone as he perceyued hym / he knelid vp as wele as he myght / the kyng toke hym yn his armes, 12 & made hym to arise, seyng / "my right swete frende, yif ye had be somtyme to-day as humble vnto me / and lowly as ye be nowe / y had not ben here / Although your maner were ffeers & vigours yu the felde / it is here humble & amyable, wherby your dedes be the 16 more to be preised. and now y se yowē / Notwithstondyng the grete peyne & trauail that ye haue endured to-day, me thinketh your persone resembleth your werkes, for yn worthynesse non may compare with you. In like wise, in persone, beaute & maner, y knowe 20 noon comparable / & it pleased god, y wolde y might contynue the remenaunt of my lif / youre felawe / with that / that we were parteners in alþ that y haue or euer shalt haue, so that y might observe & kepe myn owne feith." / Le Despurueu, ¹that seeth hym self thus 24 honoured and preised at the first dede of Armes that euer he was at in his lif, was so abashid that he wist not what to Answere, saue only that he seid / "sir, ye do your honoure to praise so moche, so pore a Lentilman as y am / the recommendacion is more youres than 28 myn / for to theym that sey wele, the honoure aught to tourne. I wote not what to sey you / for forsothe it was the first auenture that euer y was at / But it semed me, yif alle youre folkes had resembled you, my lord / My maister that here is had not hadde 32 you nowe in his handes / albe it þat he put grete peyne ther-to / And yif it were thus, that god by his grace wold consent / that by youre goode meane the pees might be made bitwene your brother & the kynge of Sizile / ynne good houre for youre self were ye prisoner / 36 for your grete renome sholde multiplie & double / and y billeue verily that my lorde, my maister that here is, wold in that case haue of you noo fynaunce, but holde for your raunsoun your peyne and labour right wele emploied. and as for me, y wolde right 40

humbly biseche you theryn / if so simple a persone might make a request in so hy a matier" / The kynge answerd hym, "my right dere frende and felawe, if it were in my power & at my wile, y⁴ certifie you, þat to youre request y wolde emploie me / albeit þat .I. bilene neuuer shal y haue that power / seeng the matier as it is /" with suche wordes they droue forth the tyme tilt fferant thought it

tyme for the kynge to departe / seyng vnto hym, "sir, ye be

8 trauailed / & so is your maister that toke you / if it pleased you, it

were tyme to go to reste, and for hym also" / After thies wordes

On a hint
from Ferant,
K. Ferabras
leaves Prince
Philip.

departed the kynge from le Despuren. And fferant conueide him

to his loggyng / and came ageyn to le Despuren / and puruaile

12 that no thing failed him / & folkes to waite abonte him / chargyng

theym to gif hym as grete attendaunce as they wold to hym self /

than toke he leue of hym, & went to his loggyng / where as he made

a letter vnto the kynge of Sizile, in such fourme, aftir the commen-

16 dacion & maner of writyng: "Sir, I am aryued in this your Towne /

Ferant writes
to the King
of Sicily,

at my retourne out of the Reaume of Spayne / the xxvij day of

marche / and for this, that I and my horses & alþ my folkes were so

trauailed and wery, y most of necessite tary with my brother a

20 while; and the ¹meane ceason of myn abidyng, Kynge fferabrace, [¶ ff. 10, 15.]

brother and liestenaunt to the Soudan, was at fflounde, but iiij. or v.

little myle hens, & knewe of my comyng / and for that he desired,

as y haue vndirstande, to haue some of my folkes to enquire the

24 tidynges of Spayne, & howe y haue spedde / concludid to ren bifore

this youre Towne, & had in his company .ij. thousand feighters and

moo, & made .ij. embusshementes, and sent his curours a-fore this

touñ / but for that my brother and I supposed somewhat their

28 entent / we wolde no body to issu out / & whan the kynge vndir-

stode by his folkes that ther wolde noon of vs come out / he came

bifore the Towne him-self with alþ his puissaunce, & ported theym

in diuerse parties, environyng the Towne rounde aboute / then

32 ordeyned we a right grete scarmyssh to be made ouer the yate that

was ferthist fro the kynge / by the whiche crye & scarmyssh the

moost part of the kynges folkes drew to that side, & than we,

seeing the kyng but with litle company, issned out on hym / at the

36 whiche tyme were many grete armes done on bothe parties, and

the kyng taken, and brought by strength to this your Towne /

how they took
K. Ferabras

where-as he is stille / and whan his folkes sawgh the takyng of prisoner.

their lordes, they made, and make yet, a maner of abidyng bifore this

40 towne / & trust, as we ymagyne, to haue hasty remedie by the

Ferant
praises
Prince Philip
to the King
of Sicily;

Soudan. wherfore y dar not departe hens / nor sende vnto you the kynge / whos taking was by miraicle doon / by a very yong man of my house / that is suche in alle thynges as the berer herof shall enforme you / & I beleue when ye se hym, ye shaſt like him bettir than y write vnto you / if it please god, it shaſt not be the last seruice that he shall do you / and y beseche oure lorde, of his grace to graunte you thaſcompliſhment of youre high and noble desires : Writen at your Towne of Talpoir, the .vij. day of Aprile." Thus thies letters writen, he called a messangere right wise and discrete / and delyuered them vnto hym / & bitwene mydnyght and the poynþ of the day he made him to departe / and so passed he forth, as god wold, aſt peaseably / so that he came sauſly vnto the kynge of Sizile / whom he founde right sorowful. But whan he had seyne his lettres, he was right ioiful, and made them to be radde in the preſence of alle the noble men of his Court / whiche deuoutly to-gedirs thankid & preised god / trustyng, that by this takyng, some frute shold folowe. The kynge ¹commaundeth the Messangere alle openly to telle his credence / whiche seide vnto hym, "sir, we repute yn your towne to be a miracle / and I ſhall telle you the reason / In the Towne of Towlete was ther a yong man, a-boute the age of .xx. yere / that lay ſeke of half a yere / which was newly recoured at the comyng of my lord, my maister / This yong man is so wele viſaged / ſo faire made of body & of alle fetures, that it ſemeth verily that nature haue made him with hir propre handes / and with this excessif beaute / he hath ſo moche of humblolle and bounte, that no man can bileyue it / without ſeyng / & of maner he passeth alle othir. This ſaide gentilman is of good nacion, but not riche / So it fortuned my lord, my maister, to be logged ther as he had leyne ſo longe ſeke ; and ſo wele demeaned him this yong man to hym & to his folkes / that eueri man him preised / & ſo moche that my lorde withhelde him for his ſeruaunt / & brought hym with hym, often deuysyng with his othir folkes the maner of this man / and hym thought / that he might not faile to be valiaunt ; & ſo hath he founde hym ; ffor at the besynesse he ſaw him do ſo wondirfully yn armes, that it is to grete a meruaille / for my lorde was taken / and he alone reſkewed hym by his grete strength and hardynes, and toke the kynge prisoner, & brought hym in-to your Towne / and eueri man that ſaw the hardynes of this yong man, toke ſuche corage & boldnes, that they abandoned theym to the vtterer / & ſo they lefte mo than .V. C. of the kynges men ded in the

^[1 leaf 20] and ſo does
his mes-
ſenger,

who reports
how Philip
rescued
Ferant, and
captured
Ferabras.

place / & as the sonne passith the sterres, so passid this yong man Ferant's messenger continues his praise of Prince Philip.

othir folkes. he is borne of the Reaume of ffranunce / and for conclusion / alle that se hym loue hym / honoure him / and cherissh 4 hym / and he that aught moost to hate hym, the kynge his prisoner, swerith by his goddes þat he wolde haue hym in his company the remenaunt of his lif, to departe euenly with hym alle 8 his honour or hardies / is as basshfu^H as a mayden / he wot not haue the kynge reputed as his prisoner, but for his maisters prisoner" / the kynge was of thies tidynges fult ioifu^H, & thought wele that god had sent this yong man to do hym yit a grettir aide / 12 anon he made to ryng the bellis in alle the ch[i]rches of the Towne / and he and the Quene & his daughter, and alle oþer in the Towne, went on processiou[n] / thankyng god of the good aventure that he had gyuen them. Thus bode he ¹stilt, herkenyng what the Turke [l. 20, bk.] 16 wolde do vpon the takyng of his brother.

YE may wele wite that yn the Chambres of the ladies was spred a-non the tidynges that fferauntes messangere had brought / and rehersid alle the vertues of this yong Squyer, 20 Le Despurrueu, wele asmoche or more than the messangere had seide ; for ye knowe wele the reporters put to somwhat more alway / The Quene, her daughter, and alle the ladies & gentilwomen, heryng recorded the right parfite bounte, beaute, and worthynesse of this 24 yong man, desired mernailously to se hym. So ther was no day but they had hym in speche, in so moche that some of the gentilmen of the court had grete displeasir therof, thynkyng that by hym a^H their loos & grace sholde be the lesse / Thus bigan the enuye bitwene the yong men of the Court & le Despurrueu, that aftir was 28 goode & profitable for the kynge / for that they wolde be as worthy in armes as he, their corage & hardies doubled, whiche did so moch good to the Reaume of Sizile / that it was ayen reviued in honour / 32 as ye sha^H here-aftir here. ¶ ye haue wele herd here-bifore, what messangers the kynge of Sizile had sent in to alle reaumes / & that the messangers had in charge to telle prynces hou it was with him / for the discarge of hym, without he were shortly socoured / taking 36 god to his recorde, & a^H the worlde / that the charge was theires / and not his / Thus thies messangers, goyng to many kynges & prynces / in especia^H to the kyng off ffranunce / of Englond & of Scotlond, The kyng of ffranunce hanuyng remembraunce of his 40 sone, that but litle a-fore he had lost, thynkyng yn hym self, that

The Queen of Sicily, the Princess Iolante, and all the Court Ladies are eager to see Philip.

The other Courtiers envy him ; but they fight hard to equal him.

**The King of
France says**

god had soffered it for that he hadde done noon helpe nor comfort to this cause / wherfore he had taken fro hym the thinge in the worlde that he best loued, then renewed a grete part of his sorowe, and thought / that of hym selue he was so olde & feble that he might 4 not go. But, & any of the kynge of England or of Scottes wolde

**he'll send
40,000 men
to help the
King of
Sicily;**

go, or any of their sones / he wolde aide theym with xl^{ti} thousand men wagid for a yere / The messanger of Sizile heryng the answeare of the kynge of ffrance, was right glad and ioifull therof, hanyng grete pite 8

[¹ leaf 21]

& compassion of the kynge sorowe, which semed ¹more ded than a-lyue. Thus departed he from hym, & went to the Reaume of Ingland / where he fonde the kynge / to whom he shewed his credence / and told him also the Answeare of the kynge of ffrance, 12 whiche he had founde in ful grete annoy & trouble, seyng that it semed hym / if his sone had be stiH ther / with right good wille

**and the King
of England
promises aid
too,**

he wold a sent hym on that viage. The kynge of Englund, whan

he had herd the messanger that spake ful wele & wisely, he 16 thought moche on that werke / and had many counsells at dyuerse tymes / And so, aftir sad deliberacion, he answerd the messangere

yn this maner / “I knowe wele / that among other kynges & cristien prynces y am gretely bounden to god / for he hath gyuen me more 20

of weles than y haue or can deserue, wherfore y wolde ful gladly do hym seruice, though y may not so moche as y am biholden to do. I haue but one only sone for to holde my Reaume aftir my deth,

which y may yn no wise departe with ; how be it / if ye can fynde 24

any kynge or prynce that wol entreprize this viage / y shaſt helpe

**If the King of
Scotland'll
let one of his
3 Sons head
the Expedi-
tion.**

him forth with a good puissance / & if my brother & neighbore, the kynge of Scottes, that hath .ij. sones, wol entreprize it / y shalt

put to yit more gretir helpe and peyne than y wold do yn the 28

company of som othir / and me semyth he might lightlyer do it than the kynge of ffrance or I, for he hath .ij. sones ; and if it pleased him to sende forth one of theym, whiche shold only be gouvernour

and hede of this werke, it sholde be to him grete glorie & honoūr 32

with the seruice that he shold do to god.” The knyght of Sizile,

hering the answeare of the kynge of Englund / wist not what to

answeare, the kynges seyng was so resonable / but so departid fro

hym / and toke the streight wey toward Scotland. And withyn 36

short while he came there the kynge was / & presented his *lettres*,

& tolde his credence / and al that he hadle founde with the kynges

of ffrance and of Englund. The kyng of Scottes remembred him

self gretly in this werke / and thought that euerich of the kynges 40

aforesaid had delyuered to hym the Chapelet / knowyng wele he
had moo sones to sende forth than any of that othir / and for that
the matier appered to hym full grete / he answerd no-thyng lightly
4 ther-to, but full long tyme thought ther-vpon / and for that cause
sent to assemble alle the estates of his Reaume / and at ^[1 lf. 21, lk.]their comyng
to hym, opened & declared to hem, as wele by lettre as by mouthe,
aH that the knyght of Sizile had brought hym. & for that he sawe
8 this mater peisaunt, & gretely touchid hym, he wold make ther-to
noon answere withoute their aduise & agreement, and gaue them
lene to take aduise ther-on ij. or iij daies, and commaunded theym
at that tyme to be ther present ageyn, eueri man to sey his aduise.
12 Thus departed they, & counseled to-gedre fro day to day / and
were wele instruete, & remembred what thei shold answere. the
day came that they were assigned to be a-fore the kynge, where-as
they ordeyned a fuH honourable knyght to make the Answere for alle
16 the iij. estates in generaH, which knyght, aftir the honoures & reuer-
ences don to the kynge as to him bi-longed, for alle thestates of his
lond seide / “Oure souerayn lord / we haue, my lordes that here be,
prynees, prelates, & Barons / knyghtes / Squyers, & Burgeis of thes
20 Reaume, thought on that it pleased your grace to open vnto us toching
the aduertisment that ye had of the kynge of Sizile, the whiche
aduertisment touchid gretely to youre holy cristen feith / the sauacion
of your soule / and to the honour of you & of your Reaume. & for
24 to geue you counself we haue had deliberacion to take aduise to-
gedre, suche as y shaH declare vnto you / offryng to you toward
this conclusion / that we shaH put in auenture oure bodies & part
of oure goodes. we knowe wele that ye be created kynge / ye and
28 alle othir, for the defence of the comon wele / & specially for to kepe
& mayntene the feith / and to this cause be ye ioyned & sacred / and
if ye faile to the defence of the feithe whiche is the thinge that
moost serueth to the comon wele, than go ye oute of the termes
32 wherfore ye were creato / we knowe also the sorowe of the kynge of
ffraunce, that hath no children but one þat he loste of late tyme /
the dispureaunce also of the kynge of Englond, that hath but one
sone / and ye haue iij., wherfore ye be lesse excusable than any of
36 them, with the grete aide that they offre you, which semyth vs, seeng
your grete worthynesse / the children that ye haue / & the offris
that be made vnto you, by reason with your honour ye may take
noon excuse, but ye may conclude to sende one of my lordes your
40 sones, which that pleasith you / and for to knowe oure aduise, we

The King of
Scotland
assembles his
Nobles and
Commons,

who advise
him

to help the
King of
Sicily,

and they will
back him
with their
bodies and
goods,

his eldest
son taking
command.

[¹ leaf 22]

conclude alle / that the eldest shold be moost propre, for he is more redy to harneys than any of that othir, & more sad ¹to conluyte a grete entreprise / and if it please you this to do, my lordes alle that here be / haue made you suche offres as y haue seide here-bifore / & vndir whos correcciooun y was ordeyned & commaunded to declare this vnto you / and nowe alſt lieth in *your* good grace, for, as it pleasith you to commaunde, we are alle redy to accomplishe."

The King of
Scotland

P¶ The kynge of Scottes, heryng the wordes of this forsaide knight 8 yn the byhalue of the iij. estates of his land, thought ful moche on this matier, for it touchid him right nere, and therefore differred he it / til on the morowe, ij. aftir none / and commaundid at that tyme / eueri man to be ther ayen / thus euery man departed / and the 12 kyng, that neuir coude put this matier out of his mynde, thynkyng yn hym self that it was in maner leide vnto hym by the kyng of ffrance & of Englund / & sith auised hym by the .iij. estates of his land / & so restid it but at him self; wherfore hym thought, as a 16 man constreyned by honour, he might not refuse in this viage to sende forth his sone. And then ayen aftir thies consideracions he wolde argue yn hym self to the contrary / thinkyng, "this armee may not be put on me without grete charge / I am the leest of the .iij. 20 kynges; & the despenses ar like to tourne on me / it behoueth me to take grete hede that I haue a notable aide of echie of them / it behoueth alway that my sone be accompanyned with people of this land, & that the grettist company come with hym, whiche may not 24 be without grete empouerishment vnto this land, wheroft y am nowe ful sorowful / And if y shold sende forth myn eldest sone / whiche is the thinge yn this worlde that y best loue / yif he diede, y shold be so sorowful / that y sholde neuir aftir haue ioie nor rest in my 28 herte / wherfore y wote not wele what y may sey / But y pray the, my creatore, to counself me aftir thy pleasir, & to myn honoure /" thus alſt nyght stroue he & argued in his mynde / & wist not what wey he miȝt holde / be aroos in the mornyng, & herd his massis 32 with grete deuociooun, recommending hym and his werkes to god / aftir his massis and dyner dōōn / as fully affermēd of that he wolde do / wente in-to the chambre wher alle thestates were redy at his comyn. so entred he yn with visage and maner ful trist and sorow- 36 full / & at his comyng, and silence commaundid, he spake to his men and suggettes / right hertly thankyngh theym of the good wille

and next day

answers his
Estates:

[² lf. 22, bk.]

he founde them of towardes hym, ²and preisyg god with good herte, that thestates of his Reaume were of suche & so high prud- 40

all night,

ence, dredyng & louyng god, as he sawe by experiance ; for euerichon
 of hem yn his parte offred seruice to oure lorde / wherof he was as
 ioifult as he might be. And in like wise he sawe, & verely knewe,
 4 the grete & naturall loue that alle they of his blode, with the
 remenaunt of the .ij. for-saide estates bare vnto hym / yn-as-moche
 as eche of theyn wold, & desired grete honoure of hym & of the
 Reaume, prayng theym also not to to be abasshed nor ameruailed,
 8 though that his manere were perauenture more sobre than it hath
 ben be-fore tyme, " for this matier goth ful nere me / for many
 reasons / one is / that some folkes not wele seiying, perauenture wot
 sey, ' beholde this presumptuous kynge, the leest of the .ij., that is to
 12 wite, of ffraunce & Englund / that of him selue wot enterprise this
 viage / that the tothir haue full grete doute to take on hande, whiche
 haue so many noble lordes of their lynage / wherof they might ful
 lightly fynde a suffisaunt hede ' / thus the thynge may turne more to
 16 charge than to preise. I considre, on that othir side / þat by the
 two forsaid kynges is ny all the charge loide on me / echon of them
 wiþ helpe me / and ye my Cousyns, frendes, & suggettes, counseile
 me to entreprize this viage / & to sende forth my eldest sone,
 20 whiche y loue moost / wherto ye offre youre bodies and goodes to
 myne aide in this hy matier. and for asmoche, if y had not corage
 to do it, seeng your grete offers / I might be reputed with alle
 straungers, & amonge your selue, a man but of litle feith & of
 24 slakke corage / and therfore, what-som-euer befaller vnto me therof /
 either sorowe or pouert, y ought more to put my trust yn you than
 any othir; wherfore y am determinyd & thorughly concludyd, bliss-
 yng me with the synе of the crosse, recommandyng my dede to
 28 my blissed creatore / to make my sone Dauid to entreprize this
 viage / for y haue no sone but hym / but that were to yonge ther-to,
 & y pray god yene hym gracie to do him suche seruice as may be to
 his pleasir / and y pray you alle my cousyns, frendes and suggettes,
 32 to strecch forth your good willis acordyng to your promyses." Alle
 the .ij. estates, heryng the Answere of the kynge, had grete ioie,
 vndirstandyng his good wilt, and alle to-gedirs, & eche of them,
 helde vp his hand, promysyng ¹the kyng seruice with body &
 36 goodes. and thus was the matier perfylly concludid / and day taken
 of the departir at ffeuyrer / and it was the feuyrer aftir the depart-
 yng of Le Despitureu. The conclusion thus taken / the messanger
 of the kynge of Sizile was deliuereled, to whom was shewed all then-
 40 tent of the kyng of Scottes, with that the kynges of ffraunce & of

he may be blamed for in starting the Expedition;

but as the Kings of France and England, and his own subjects, have all promised their help,

he will let his eldest son David undertake the enterprise.

[¹ leaf 23]

The Sicilian
Messenger
reports that
the Expedi-
tion is de-
cided on.

The Sultan
hears of it,

and recalls
Ferabras's
troops.

Ferant is
orderd to
send Fer-
bras, and
Prince Philip
to Sicily.

[1 ff. 23, bk.]

Prince Philip
grieves at
this, and

wants to
serve on the
frontier.

Englond wold do him any aide / Thus the knyght of Sizile departid
full ioiful out of Scotland, & toke his wey by Euglond & be
ffraunce, & shewed the ij. kynges aſt the conclusion that hath̄ be
taken in Scotlond / humbly bisechyngh them this holy viage shold 4
not be letted / so hath he pronys of both kynges, for no thyngh they
wolde faile, but trewly performe aſt that thei had seid bifore. The
messangers deuoir doon as is here rehersed / he toke the way
streight to Sizile, & came vnto the kynge / sone aftir the comyng 8
of fferauntes messangere / & tolde the kynge of aſt his spede in the
forseide matier / ye may wele wite that the Soudan was not with-
out his espies iu eueri cristen Reaume / wherþoruḡ he knewe of
the conclusion that was taken in Scotland assone or souner than 12
did the kynge of Sizile / and therfore sent he anone a messangere to
his brothers folkes that lay bifore fferaunt / commaundyngh them to
departe thens & to retourne to their garison / for he had herd suchē
tidynges that he was determyned to haue no sege laide there as yet. 16
and as for the takynge of his brothir / he wolde remedie it when he
migh̄t, but yit he coulde not / thus alle his brother folkes retourned
in-to their garison / and fferaunt in alle haste sente the kynge
wordē therof / whan the kynge knewe thies tidynges, he sent 20
fferaunt wordē that he shold puruey for the conyngē of kynge
fferabras vnto hym, and by suchē a day as he apointed him / he
wolde sende him a feliship to helpe conney the kynge the more
surely. fferthirmore he commaunded him not to leue behinde him 24
his newe esquier / of whom he had herde so moche wele reported /
& alle the ladies & gentilwomen of the court praied the messangere
that he migh̄t not be forgoten. Thus went the messangere forth to
fferaunt, & shewed him aſt his message from the kynge, & from 28
the Quene & hir daughter, & from alle the ladies & gentilwomen of
the Court / And withyn litle while aftir, this came to the knowlage
of Le Despurneu, whiche desired ouir alle thinges to dwelle ¹ in some
place of the ffronters / to proue his body in his youthe / and to do 32
that wherfore he was departed fro the kynge his fadir / feling him
self aſt hole of his hurtes / and so made a request to his maister /
if it pleasid him, that he migh̄t abide with his brothir / for he neuir
entendid but to abide vpon the ffronters / ffor / for to be a man of 36
Court now / wold he neuir a departed fro the place fro whens he
came. when fferaunt vndirstode his newe esquier, that thus wolde
take his leue of hym / whom he knewe such that noon other migh̄t
compare with / yif he were sorowfuſ, it was no meruaile / & vnnethe 40

might he holde manere, seyng vnto hym, "A ! Le Despurueu ! haue Ferant re-
y brought you from so fer contre, so sone to forsake me ? haue ye proaches
dred / that ye shal not fynde fightyng y-now yn this contre / or Prince Philip
4 elles that y be a man of so pore condiccion / that y dar not holde my for wishing
fote nere the fire / truly I truste verily to be founde more often to leave him.
vpon the ennemyes than they shal be that abide in this place / &

that more often, if ye be with me, ye shal se strokes gyuen than yf He'll get him
8 ye abode stille here / neuirthes, if ye be not pleased to abide in his fill of
my seruice, telle it me at ones, & y shal do as me thinke good." fighting.

The yong gentilman, right shamefast and sorowfull that he sawe his
12 maister wroth with hym, wenying not to haue displeased hym for
abidyng with his brothir, answerd hym ful humbly / " My lord ! y Prince Philip
16 at skarmysshes as your brother / for, as men sey, the kynge loues you apologizes,
wele / therfore y thought that ye wolde kepe you nere aboute hym /
and ye knowe wele / it is not accostomied, ne reason, that kynges &
prynces, chefteynes of the warre, be allwey on the ffronters / and

20 for this dredre y that y shold se but litle war, nor haue the lernyng
yn armes, whiche was the cause of my desire nowe to abide / but,
sir, and y haue displeased you / y beseche you to pardone me, for y
knowe neither kynge nor prynce levynge, as longe as ye haunte the
24 warres, for whom y wolde leue you. y haue so moche sene of and agrees to
noblesse yn you / that y am assured y may lerne more in your stop with
seruise / than y dar enterprise or may here" / fferaunt answerd hym, Ferant.
" A, my frende ! for lakke of warre ¹ye shal not leue me as long as [leaf 24]

28 y leue / for there is y-nough in this reaume for you & me, & many
moo" / thus fferaunt & his newe seruaunt be accorded. Then came
the day / that the kynge sent his folkes to fferaunt / whom they
32 founde alle redy in the felde / & kyng ffirbrace with him / than
departed he from his brother Olyuer, prayng hym to take good
hede to the place & the ffronters that he had in keypyng / So rode
he forth al a day withoute any interrupcion. ¶ It is to thynke,
ffirbrace folkes dred them of the goyng of their maister, and that
36 he shold be brought to the kyng of Sizile / wherfore they did their Fernbras's
diligence to vndirstonde his departyng / & did so muche that they men plan
knewe it for certayn that he was departed right wele accompanied /
than toke they counseil & aduise to gedir ; & it semyd theym that
40 puissaunce was not so bygge, but that they shold take a shame to

suffre their maister thus to be gon. wherfore they vttirly concluded to put them yn deuoir to the rescue of hym / the mone shone faire & clere that night that they departed fro the garison / & they did so moche by the next mornyng / that they passed fferaunt, and 4 embusshed theym yn a wode that was ny the same wey that fferaunt sholde passe / they kepte theym cloos, & made their waechis to go vp in-to trees to se aferre whiche wey fferaunt sholde come ; and thei were in nombre xvj.C feightyng men / And with 8 fferaunt a vj.C or mo of the best men that longed to the kynge of Sizile, whiche were that nyght wele loggid *with* fferaunt & kynge ffirabrace, & made right mery & gretly auised le Despurueu, whiche thought them of visage, persone, & maner, moche more to be preised 12 than the messangere had seide, & moche desired they to se hym yn armes / & so did they souner than they wende. they auised him in alle his wordes and his demeanyng, & founde him so assured & wise / that they were ameruailed / this nyght passid forth, & the morñ 16 came / and fferaunt, that was an ynlly wise knyght of warre, saide

Ferant warns his men that they may be attackt, and advises them to arm.
[¹ lf. 24, bk.]

"my lordes, if the kynge oure soueray[n] lorde were prisoner, as he is that we lede / and ye wold do by my conseiH, & we had the puissaunce that oure enemyes haue, ther is no place y 20 wolde souner put me in deuoir to reskewe hym, than here by / and yistiday we rode armed & helmed / and as this day y se no man charge hym *with* harneys ; but y say for me, y shall arme me as y did yesterday." some helde ¹opinion he seide wele, & did by his conseiH, 24 & some toke little hede therto / but le Despurueu was aH-wey armed / for he had no valet to bere his harneys. fferaunt departed fro his logyng, the moost part of his folkes armed / & som not, whiche dere a-bought it / thus rode they forth til they came ny to the wey therē 28 as the embusshementes were leide / many of the yong folkes of the Court whiche had Grehoudes, trauerst the felde to fynde the hare or some othir disperte, so longe, that they came on the trakkys of there enemyes / and anoon tolde fferaunt therof / but he was so ny 32 that he coude set no remedy to take none othir wey / but taried stilt, & put kynge ffirabrace in sure garde / thus put he yn ordynance alt that he might. on the tothir part / the waechis of the enmys that were yn the trees tolde to the embusshementes what 36 they sawe / & sodeynly they shewed them-selue, & brake their embusshementes, and alle at ones ranne on fferaunt & his ffelisshipp. and aftir the puissaunce that fferaunt had, he encountrid theym right mighty / but fynally they might not wele haue endured, ne 40

Some of them come on the enemy's tracks.
~

The Turks attack Ferant's host.

had be the grete worthynesse & vertu of Le Despurreu, that did so wondrefully in Armes at that day, that eueri man meruailed / he ouirthrewe men & hors ; noon myght withhi-stonde his strokes /

4 so wele was he knownen of his ennemyes that every man fledde hym / and as he was feightyng thus amoung his enemyes, they that were behynde hym, by strength of Armes / they reskewed kynge ffirabrace, and delyuerd hym to xxⁱⁱ men / that in alt haste toke the 8 wey toward his place / and fortuned that Le Despurreu, that so valiauntly fough^t, herde the crye & noise / howe men seide kynge ffirabrace was reskewed : “se where he goth !” he tourned sodeynly on that part, & sawe hym ferre on his way / then toke he his hors

12 with the spores, & folowed the kynge yn alt that he might, without espiyng of any of fferauntes folkes, saue of .vj. that folowed hym. Le Despurreu hastid him in suche wise, that in a valey he ouirtoke the kynge, & smote yn amonges them, & did so, that he slew v. or 16 .vj. of them or the tothir .vj. coude ouirtake him, whiche, at their comyng, with the helpe of Le Despurreu, discomfited the Remenaunt. Le Despurreu toke ageyn his prisoner / & be that tyme bothe their horses were so wery & fortrauailed that they might no ferther / but 20 bothe were fayne to alight a fote, to lete their horses take brethe / In this meane tyme fferaunt espied that his prisoner was gon / & that he had lost his newe seruaunt / if he were sorowfult, it is no question, not only for losse of the kynge / but specially for his 24 seruaunt, by whom god had sent him so faire aventure. thus sorowfu^H, he cursed the houre that he came ther / and wisshed that day he had be slayne. Alle tho that were yn his company, as litle as they had knownen le Despurreu, yet for the dedes in armes they had sene 28 hym doⁿ that day, thought the losse of hym was as grete a sorowe / as if the Reaume of Sizile had ben vttirly lost / and yn this sorow, as they were to-gedre biholdyng the wey where-as kynge ffirabrace wente / they sawe .vj. or viij. horsis comyng / than drewe they them 32 to-gedir, wenyng to haue hadde newe to do, & that they had ben of a newe feliship to a set on them / than sent they som of their forriders thiderward / & anone as they came ny them, they knewe verrily they were of their folkes. than went they to them, and 36 knewe Le Despurreu / that brought ageyn the kyng. than seide they to hym, “A, right noble Squyer, flour of honour, ye be welcome / for ye haue recomforted this day the moost discomfortable company that euer was / for by your dedis they haue recoverid such 40 honour and surete that they ar out of al perile. Blissid be the

but Prince Philip spurs after him,

K. Ferabras is rescued,

[1 leaf 25] Ferant mourns Prince Philip's supposed loss,

but he soon turns up, with his Prisoner again.

wey that ye came on hiderwarde, and the place fro whens ye came!" Than anon one of them rode ageyn in aſt haste to fferaunt / and whan he sawe him, he seide / " My lord, be mery, for yondre is Le Despurueu aſt hole & sauf, that by his grete myght & hardynes hath 4 brought ageyn kynge ffirabrace." ye may wele thynke the ioie was grete thorugh aſt the company / whan that worde was herd / and eueri man presid who myght be first with hym. whan fferaunt came to hym / he toke him in his armes & kist him / and did him suchē 8 honour that the pore yong gentilman was gretly abasshet of / than seide fferaunt vnto him / " that day y firſte sawe you, was the moost happy day that euer y had / And beholde ye nowe whether y haue gabbid vnto you / haue ye failed nowe at the begynnyng, of the 12 fyndyng of som auenture with me? had it nedid you now for this cause to haue biden with my brothir / yif ye so had doſ / there had bifallen this day the moost pitous auenture that euer was in Sizile / that only by your persone is come to good conclusion /" 16 eueri man seide to Le Despurueu so many goodly wordes of honour / that he wist not what to Answere / but as a man shame-fast, smote yn amone the tothir feliship, for to eschewe such wordes as moche

[¶ lf. 25, bk.] as he might; so he yeldid kynge ffirabrace his prisoner to ¹the 20 handes of his maister / After the auenture thus befallne, they with grete ioie departed alle to gedir / and toke their way in right good ordenaunce; and eueri man seide that fferaunt was right a wise knyght, for he had tolde them ful wele in the morning as was 24 sith befallen. ffor that day forth, fonde they no recountre that dis-tourbed theym yn their viage / & with-yn litle season they came thider as the kynge was. bifore their comyng, many were gon bifore to take vp their loggyng; & also som officers of armes & pur- 28 ceantes that had be at this iourney, wente in aſt haste to the kynge / & tolde hym aſt the maner & trouth therof / And wite wele the kynge was as ioiful as he might be / and gretely mernailed of the grete prowesse that he herd euery day of this yong man, Le 32 Despurueu; & moche he desired to see him, for he thought wele it was some tokne that god wold recouer him; for the armes that he herd reported of hym, semyd to hym not to be possible to noon earthly man / If the kyng were yn this opynyoun / so were alle the 36 knyghtes, squyers, ladies, & gentilwomen / and the faire & good Iolante, the kynges daughter, that in alle hir werkes was wise, womanly, & vertuous: whan she herde at any tyme of the honour of this yong man, she toke merualous grete pleasir ther-yn / & she 40

He is so
praised that
he feels
ashamed.

Henceforth
they march
in safety.

The King of
Sicily,

and all his
Court, and
the Princess
Iolante, long
to see Prince
Philip.

thought verily that such honour might not be yn a man of smale
birth / and also she wist wele that without grete nurture, & beyng
in high places, he might not knowe the weelis and honoures that
4 he coude / and in hir mynde she wisshed that he had ben of such
courage that he wold haue entreprised alle his armes for hir sake /
hou-be-it she had neuir, daies of hir lif, ben amorous / not as moche
as she enioied the company more of one than of an othir, but as
8 honoure & maner requyred / thus euery man thorugh the towne, as
wel as in þe courte, spake of the worthynesse of Le Desparueu. And
in this meane season feraunt & his company came vnto the Towne ;
& at the comyng, the stretes were so ful of folkes that vnnethe he
12 might passe, for eueri man desired to se hym that had so honorably
aquytte hym twies sith he retourned fro Spayne / also euery man
desired to se his frendes that had be at this last iournay / In like
wise desired they to se kynge ffirbrace / and the tothir prisoners /
16 so did thei Le Desparueu, of whom they had herde so moche welc
reported / thus the houses were alle fornyssh^t with folkes. And yet
ther was an othir cause / for a grete while they had not sene no
good auenture for the kynge of Sizile, but alle of losis & damages,
20 wherfore this was ¹to them the grettir ioie / thus feraunt passid [1 leaf 26]
thorugh the prees with grete peyne, and came to his loggyng / where
as kynge ffirbrace alight, and alle his folkes / and yn alle hast
arelded hym to go to the kynge his maister / and to delyuere hym
24 his prisoner. so wente he forth vnto the kynge, that abode hym in
the grete halle of his paleis / that was so ful of people that euery
wyndowe and borde was charged / and so were alle the stretes of the
Towne / so that he was a large half houre or he coude passe the
28 prees to come yn to the halle where the kynge was / and at the
laste he came vnto the kynge / and put the kynge his prisoner afore
hym / whom he shewed to the kynge of Sizile / and whan he per-
ceyued Kynge ffirbrace, albe-it he was his prisoner / yit did he him
32 such honour that he went toward hym a grete way barched, and
toke hym by the hande / kynge ffirbrace seeng him self prisoner,
& at the wille of the kynge of Sizile, did hym grete reverence, for
at that tyme was he as his suggest / than wente they two hand yn
36 hand vndir the clothe of estate / & than talked the two kynges to-
gedre, and callid feraunt vnto them / but ouir alle thing / the kynge
of Sizile desired to se Le Desparueu, & behelde ouir alle to knowe
him / but this yong gentilman, that of his condicoun was shamefast
40 & hunble, had drawen him in-to the prees behynde moche people /

THREE KINGS' SONS.

Ferant and
Prince Philip
have a grand
reception
from the
townsfolk.

Ferant takes
his prisoner
King Ferab-
ras to the
King of
Sicily,

who does
him honour,

but asks
for Prince
Philip.

the kynge that yn no wise coude espie hym, seide to fferauut,
 “ where is your newe seruant / why put ye him to no more honour /
 be that y haue herde sey / he hath deserued as moche honour as
 any withyn this halle, noon othir excepte / forsothe y desire gretely 4
 to se him ” / kynge ffirabrace, þat herd the kynge of Sizile thus

King Fera-bras praises Prince Philip,
 speke, coude him in his mynde right goode thanke / and saide, “ be
 my feith, he is worthy to haue moche honour / & wold god that y
 had suche a seruaunt, that helde the lawe y holde, and y wolde 8
 take hym for my felaw, daies of my lyf / and partener yn alle that
 y am worth / & shold be as grete maister of my Reaume as my self,
 seeng that y haue sene him do / whiche is not credible / y am his

who captured him twice. prisoner by .ij. tymes / and notwithstandingyng, all the daunger that y 12

am yn, cometh by hym / yet is he the leuyng man that y moost
 loue / and moost desire the compayny of.” The kynge of Sizile
 commaundid fferaunt to calle him / and so he did / and when he
 herde him called for / he came forth fro behinde moche of the 16

[¶ ff. 26, bk.] people / his visage aH rede for shame that so ¹many folkes called
 him / He came bifore the kynge, & kneld douñ, and salewed him
 as he coude full wele for aH honour was yn hym / the kynge toke
 hym by the hande / & made him to rise vp / and bihelde him right 20

ententify / & the more he behelde him, the more was he ameruailed
 of hym that excedid alle othir in euery thinge to be preised / then
 talked the kynge with him / and so did kynge ffirabrace also. and
 yn alle his wordes they founde him suche, & so wele assured / that 24
 they were ameruailed. The kyng of Sizile, & alle they that sawe
 him, thought / there were moo laudable thinges yn hym than any
 might reporte / he was gretely lokid on of alle them that were
 there / and euery man praiede for him that god of his grace sholde 28
 longe contynue hym yn honour. withyn litle while, kyng ffirabrace
 departed from the kynge of Sizile to his loggyng, to his dyner.
 The kynge of Sizile commaundid fferaunt to “ brynge ageyn kyng
 ffirabrace aftir dyner, & le Despurueu also. and then shaH they se the 32
 quene, the ladies & gentilwoman.” & thus departed they to their

The King of Sicily is much struck with Prince Philip,
whose beauty and prowess are praised by all. loggyng / Aþ that day in euery place was moche speche of the beaute,
 persone & manere of Le Despurueu. But they that had sene hym in
 armes seide, that his beaute was not to compare with his worthy- 36
 nesse / and some answerde that than passed he aþ the world. The
 kyng, aftir his grete assemble was departed, went to his dyner /
 and with hym dynyd the Quene and his doughter. and ye may wele
 thynke that this dyner tyme, through aþ the halle they hadde grete 40

speche of Le Despurneu. The quene, & faire and good Iolante hir doughtir, & alle the ladies & gentilwomen, desired so moche to se hym, that they thought the dyner right longe, and seide amonge
 4 them / “fu^H enrous is fferaunt the Senesha^H, to whom god hath sent this man / by hym is he at this day moche honoured / & the moost renomed knyght yn this Reaume / If y were kynge, y sholde hau^H Le Despurueu of myn house, for he hath noon suche” / On the
 8 tothre part, fferaunt dred right sore leste the kynge wold desire his newe seruaunt from hym, whiche was the thing that moost sholde sorowe hym / and therfore aftir dyner / er he wente to the courte, he
 toke Le Despurueu alone yn-to his chambre / and seide vnto hym,

12 “my dere frende & my childe, the kynge hath doⁿ you to-day grete honour, wherof y am right glad / for he may not do you to moche,
 nevirtheles y drede that by som enuy that reigneth ¹our alle, the [1 leaf 27]

kyng sholde be exorted to take you from me yn-to his hous ; and
 16 if ye were yn wi^H now to leue me / it sholde be þ^e grettist displeasir and sorowe that myght befalle me / but y knowe wele it happeneth alday that men leue company for a higher seruice ; hou be it / seeng that y haue sene in you / y can not Inge þat ye wi^H so do / for ther

20 is so grete bounte in you. I knewe weel þat ye haue not ben accompayned here as bilongeth vnto you, and therfore y graunt you fro this day forth to haue v. or vj. men waityng on you / & to take part of my goodes as longe as it pleasith you to be with me, as my

24 owne sone sholde, if y had any / and if god send me neuir noon, y sha^H make you myn heir, yeldyng thanke to god to haue suche a successour.” Le Despurueu fulf humbly thankid his maister, &

28 promysed hym trouthe & seruice to his power, without hauyng
 serue / and that his maister shold lyue / and of this, at the request

of fferaunt, promysed him his feith / wherof he was more sure than of any obligacion in the worlde / sone aftir departed fferaunt from

32 his loggyng toward the kynge / & had Le Despurueu with him, that aboue alle thinges desired to se the kynges daughter, whom of beante, bounte, & alle good manere was renomed thorugh^H the worlde. Wherfore he apoynted hym, as goodly as he coude, to go with his maister /

36 & they came enen as the kyng was arisen. and yit were alle the ladies & gentilwomen there / the prees was not so grete as it was in the mornyng / and therfore men might more easily se fferaunt & his company / Le Despurueu, for his grete humbles, was noon of the

40 first, wherwith his maister was no thinge pleased / for to his power

Ferant fears
that the King
of Sicily will
take Prince
Philip from
him;

so he gives
Philip five or
six waiting-
men, and a
share of his
goods.

Prince Philip
promises
Ferant his
faith.

he wolle fayn hane auaunced hym. The kyng reseeyued fferaunt fult gladly / and aftir that he had salewed the kyng he toke forth Le Despurueu by the hande / and brought hym to se the quene, seyng vnto hir, “ Madame, here is a gentilman of ffraunce that y bryngē 4 you / if his beaute be not resonable, his worthines recompenseth, for by hym and his dedis hath the kyng, the Soudans brother, yn his prisoun / for to me ought not the honour to turne therof, but to god & to this gentilman / and therfore, madame, y bryngē hym to 8 you / that it might please your grace to haue knowlache of hym ” / The quene answerd to fferaunt / “ for sothe, Seneshalt, a grete while sawe not y so faire a presente / & y wylt be aqueynted with hym with right goode ¹ wylt / and he is right welcome to me, & y 12 shalt se hym & welcome him more at leiser / if it please god / and

[1 ff. 27, b.^c.]

who says he's
to anuse
himself with
her daughter
and the
Court-ladies.

he pray you, bryngē hym or sende hym often to disperte hym with my daughter & the yonge ladies and gentilwomen of the courte / for it behoucht that we assay him in alle poyntes, if he be suche 16 amonge ladies & gentilwomen as he is amonge you men / And if he can not wele the manere / y beleue he shalt sone haue lerned / for it is a comon seyyng / that men of warre be not good companyers with ladies & gentilwomen ” / Le Despurueu Aunswerd / “ Madame, 20 y thanke your grace right humbly / and verily sheweth the same / that of the warres y can no thyng / but that my lord, my maister, hath taught me / for neuir yn my lyue was y yn warre but in his company, wheryn men may lerne bothe wele and honour / for y 24 haue herde hym ymagyne & sey yn the euenyng, that hath befallen yn the morow ” / fferaunt answerd & saide / “ by my feith, sir, if ye be as light to lerne your contenaunce amonges ladies & gentilwomen as ye haue ben to lerne the crafte of armes, ye shalt yn 28 shorte tyme be a bettir mayster / than they that shalt lerne you ; for so farith it by yon & me in the warres ” / the quene lough, & seide, “ y beleue / from hensforth, yn like wise he shalbe bettir welcome than ye ” / Aftir thies wordes, fferaunt made him to rise vp / 32 & brought him to faire Iolante, that Le Despurueu desired so moche to se / he went not with a nay / but with a right good wille / and whan he sawe the grete beaute that was yn hir, he thought that all that euir he herde speke of hir was no-thing in comparison to that 36 he sawe yn hir / he salewed hir fult humbly, & the faire lady toke hym by the hande & seide, “ my right dere frende, ye ar right welcome, & by that / that y se / your name is ‘ Le surname ’ ; for ye ar not Le Despurueu of beaute, ne of alle othir condicouns as y here 40

Philip is
taken to the
fair Princess
Iolante,

who christens
him *Le Sur-*
nome.

sey. Wherfore me thinketh *your* name is gyuen you with wronge / and also me semeth that my lord my fadirs warres be a grete dele bettir puruaide sith *your* comyng, than bifore / I trowe that god of 4 his gracie hath sent you hider" / this yonge gentilman was so ashained & so suprised with the beaute of this faire lady, that he wist not what to Aunswere, saue that he seide, "Madame, god yelde *your* gracie / but trewly y am wers puruaide than my name 8 can shewe / but what name that pleasith you, y am content to bere" / the quene & fferaunt lough wele at the wordes ¹of hir [1 leaf 28] doughtir / & fro that day forth was he named Le Surnome ; whiche euerie day multiplied, for the more men asaide him at alle pointes, 12 the more they were assured of hym, & founde him puruaide of alle thinge / that to a noble man belonged.

This meane tyme, abidyng the comyng of the kyng of Scottes 16 sone / fferaunt & his felawe abode stille with the kynge, yn grete ioie, for the tidinges of socours that they abode / and yn this ceason of fferauntes abidyng, Le Despurueu, that now is named Surnome, by the kynges doughter / euerie day wold go se the ladies, & in especia^H the Quene & hir dougther, on whom al^H ^{He visits her daily,} his mynde restid / and ther was he right ioiffully resceyued / and euerie day was preuyd in daunceyng / in songes that the ladies coude ^{and dances with her.} thinke were couenable for a noble man to conne ; but in eueri thinge he passed alle them that were there / The kyng, for to assaie 24 him, made Iustis & turneis / & noman did so wele as he yn rennyng, pleyyng at the pame ; in shotyng, & castyng of the barre ne founde he not his maister ne his felawe / for yn eueri thinge he passid all othir. Thus past forth the tyme / but it annoyed gretly 28 Surnome, that ther were no warres ne dedes of armes / for the cause of his departyng from his fadir was only to do god seruice yn the warres ayenst the hethen men : thus had he little ioic, saue only of the faire and good Iolante, to whom his hert was bounden for euer ^{but loses his heart to Iolante.}

32 without departyng. ¶ Now leue we of a litle, to speke of the kyng of Sizile and alle his courte, & we shalle speke of the armee of Scottes, hou they did aftir the departyng of þe messangere of Sizile.

The conclusioun thus taken, as ye haue herde, with the kyng ^{The King of Scotland} of Scottes, that knewe thies tidynges, sent to the kynges of fferaunce and of Englund, how, vpon trust of them / & that they had aunswerde the knyght of Sizile / that he had concluded 40 to sende, yn the seruice of god, to the socour of Sizile, Dauid his

Prince Philip
is abash'd at
Iolante's
beauty.

[1 leaf 28]

He jousts and
tourneys,
plays at
tennis, &c.,
and beats
everybody,

but loses his
heart to Iolante.

eldest sone / albe-it they knewe full wele it was not yn his power to
 fynde ther-to a suffisaunt nombre of folkes / wherfore he prайд
 eche of them to assertayne hym what aide & socours they wold do
 to god / to the kynge of Sizile / & to his seide sone / because that

4 vpon this he might take auise / & shewed them vtirly that
 without their aide he helde his conclusion noon / ¶ Notable
 knyghtes & messangers went to the two kynges. ¶ Now was this

[1 lf. 28, bk.]

Viage of Dauid spradde & pubblisched thorugh alt Scotland / 8
 wheroft Dauid & alle the yonge lordes & knyghtes of the land were
 gladder than euer they were yn their lyue / seyng amonges them
 that they were moche bounden to god / that in the floure of their

youth had yeuen them this auenture. Dauid was a goodly yonge 12
 man, of like age to Surnome, wele condicioned, as to a kynges sone

bilonged / and wele shewed it / as hereaftir ye may here / there

was no thynge so noious vnto him as his long abidynge / and to the

kyng his fader was no thynge so sorowfult as his sones goyng / for 16

it was the day of the worlde þat he drad moost / and so he had

cause, for it was full longe or he sawe hym ageyn / In this ceason

of abidynge worde fro the kynges of ffraunce & Englond / he made

alle his prouisions & ordenaunces for his sone / so wele and so honour- 20
 ably / that ther was neuer non suche seyn bifore in Scotland / In

like wise alle the princes & Barons abielde them, & made to abile

their sones, to go in this armee / whiche they desired to do sone /

seyng the conclusion taken / many aunciente knyghtes there were 24
 also, affermed & concluded to auenture their lyues in this Viage, &

thought them wele euorous to make their last viage in so high a

seruice bothe for body & soule. ¶ The messangers spedde them so

that euery man came there his charge was / he that came to the 28
 kynge of ffraunce, did his message right wele, & foryate no thynge

what Aunswere he had yeuen to the knyght of Sizile / In trust

wheroft his maister was determyned to sende his sone, and ellis not /

The kynge of ffraunce, remembryng for trouthe what wordes he 32
 had to the knyght of Sizile, wolde yn no wise for his honour

contrary them ; and therfore, by good deliberacion of counself, or-

deyned to sende his Constable with the nombre of .x. M^l men,

certifiyng him that at such day as the kynge of Scottes had taken / 36

ther shold be yn his parte no faile / Thus departed the messanger

of Scotland, that was honorably resceyued, & had grete yiftes.

And now returne we to hym that went yn-to England / that

semblably in substauince declared his charge, as the tothir had done 40

asks England
and France
what help
they'll give
to Sicily.

The Scotch
youth are
eager to fol-
low Prince
David,

and a large
Expedition is
prepared.

The King of
France pro-
mises 10,000
men.

in ffraunce. the kynge of Englund, heryng the wordes of the messanger, sawe wele that, and he sente not socours as he promysed, vpon him sholde reste the charge, and so concluded to sende his
 4 Admyralt of Englund / and with him the nombre of ¹vj. M^l men /
 promisyng on his feith / that such day as þe kyng of Scottes had
 taken, shold not be failed by hym / thus delyuernyd be the messanger,
 and honorably rewarded hym. and thus .ij. Messangers sped them
 8 so wele, yn shorte tyme they came ageyn vnto the kynge their
 maister, to whom they shewed hou they had spedde / Whan he
 herd thies tidinges, he perceyued wele ther was no lettyng for his
 eldist sone / than ordeyned he with alt diligence his apparaile, & so
 12 did euery man yn his parte / & so wele quitte them that at the day
 they had set / there was noon vnredy / and eche of the kynges
 kepte his promys. Then was it a mervailous thinge to se, & a
 faire / the iij. companyes to-gedir / that for the honour of the
 16 kyng of Scottes helde them only vndir the obeisance of his sone
 Dauyd. ¶ Wele knewe Le Surnome, that the kyng his ffader sent
 som folkes to thies socours ; wherfore he was in grete sorowe lest
 any of them shold knowe him, for be his wille he wolde not be
 20 knownen. ¶ Now cometh the day of assemble of the puissaunce of
 thies iij. kynges / and alle were at the porte Deon, yn Scotland.
 the kyng of Scottes conveied his sone thiider / and aftir that eueri
 mannes harnois was shipped / they toke their leue of the kyng,
 24 whiche vnmethe might speke to them, and in especiaH to his sone /
 but whan he toke his leue, felle yn a swone / so that men were fayn
 to bere hym yn-to a chambre, so arayed / that he seemed rather ded
 than alyue. Alle they that abode & sawe their frendes go, had
 28 suche sorowe that they coude not comfort the kyng / for they were
 alle comfortles / they that wente made little sorowe, but only to se
 the hevynsse that their frendes toke for theym. The kyng hath
 committed his sone to the aduise of therle douglas & of the Erle
 32 Busshant, that were wise knygghtes, & connyngh yn the warres, &
 had seide to them bifore their departyng / “my frendes and cousins,
 y put yn your handes the thinge in the woldle y loue moost / &
 commaunde him to the kepyng of almyghti god, & sende hym forth
 36 with you” / and more might he not sey vnto theym. whan eueri
 man was to shippe / and the Sailes & ankers wounde vp, they had
 good wynde / that brought hem sone from the port / and alle the
 people that were a lond commaundid them to the kepyng of onre
 40 lord / and there was every day a seuenyght aftir their departir

The King of
England
guarantees
6000.

[¹ leaf 29]

The three
Heralds are
under Prince
David of
Scotland,

and embark
from Port
Deauy in Scot-
land.

David's ad-
visers are
Lords Dou-
glas and
Bushant.

generalt processione thorugh al the Reaume. Alas ! this grete & notable armee did litle profit to cristendome / wherof was grete pite and damage / but it is to thinke that god doth al for the best / for peraudenture they ¹that went yn his seruice went not as they ought ; 4
[¹ lf. 29, bk.] but I remitte all that to the knowlage of god. [*Illumin.: siege by ships.*]

The Sultan
hears of the
Christian
navy

Off the departyng of this grete & high armee was the Soudan playnly eufourmed / & yn like wise the kynge of Sizile / but of al the reaume of Sizile was not one with the armee. The 8 Soudan, in eueri parte of the land that was yn his handes, had folkes to here tidynges / and helde him and his power on the feldes nygh the portes, where as he thought they might aryue ; so withyn little while came certayne worde to hym, that men sy the cristen 12 navee comyng to take lond at the port of Gayette / the Soudan, heryng thies tidynges, drewe thider with alle his puissaunce, & brought his ordenaunce with hym, & ranged hym & his people vpon the ryuage, and leide his gonne & his coluerynes to diffende 16 & distourbe the cristen mennys landyng / vpon the tothirside, Dauid of Scotland, with al his company, approched the port, & perceyued the enmys redy to deffende their landyng ; and yn as moche as it was late, & that they knewe not the port, they toke 20 councell to ly at ancre til on the morowe, that they might se bettir what they had to do : So did they as ye haue herde / and at that tyme was the wedir faire and ²calme, & thorugh alle the cristen navee they made to blowe trompettes, claryons & taberynes, & alle 24 maner of mynstra^Hcie, so that it semed wele a place of ioie / their baners & penouns set out fleyng with the wynde, so that they that were on land might se them by the bright sonne / & thought it was a riche & a wele ffournyssht navee. Oure good cristen men 28 thought longe, that they might not set vpon the Sarasynes that night. In the hoste of the Turkes sounded they al night grete taberynes / that it semid bettir Helle than any othir thinge. Aftir al this done, Dauyd of Scotland sent for the Constable of ffraunce 32 & the Admyra^H of Englond / & the moost part of notable knygthes & Squyers, prayng them to take advise & councell what were best to be done / aftir many wordes & demaundes, the conclusion of the councell was this / that men shold take .xx.^t or xxx.^t Gallettes, of 36 the lightest that were in the Navee, & that they shold be wele & strongly garnyssh with artrye & serpentynes, and alle other abilimentes that were behoffult / & that they shold go costyng the lond / to se where were best londyng ; and in this wise might they se 40

nearing Ga-
eta,

and prepares
to oppose
their landing.

[² leaf 30]

The Christian
fleet looks a
joyful scene :

the Turkish
host like
Hell.

somwhat the maner of their enemyes / And also that in eueri galiette sholde be some notable knyghtes and squyers wele accompayned, suche as were connynge & expert yn armes / this councelt
4 was admytted / and euery captayne that had yn charge to ordeyne his folkes, did it with a^H diligence / So euery man was redy at the <sup>The galliettes
of the Chris-
tians</sup> houre that he was apointed / & the Gallettes wele puruaide for / & full of folkes / But ye may wele thinke that every man went not
8 that wold, for euery man had desire to auenture him in that high seruice / whan they were assembled, they departed & sprad in many placis / approchynge the aryuail. The Soudan, seyng this company, ^{reconnoitre,} drew towardes them, wenying veryly that they had come to take
12 londe / wherfore he ranged his folkes vpone the aryuail as ny the water as they myght, for to defende the cristen mennys londyng ; where he did foly, for the Gallettes approched them so nye / that they drewe a^H at ones withyn the shotte of their ordenaunce, &
16 were withyn ij. stones caste to theym / for the Gallettes & bargettes drew but little depnesse / & at this first encountre were many <sup>and shoot
many Turks,</sup> turkes slayn, & many grete lordes of theym ; for the moost noble alwey desired to be formest / that day bare the turkes grete damage /
20 & with little losse the cristen folkes retourned ageyn to their grete vessels, that lay at anere without the port / ^[1 lf. 50, bk.] whiche had seyne a^H that they had done on lond / and whan they came, they had grete laude and thanke, for they had so honorably aquitte them þat day.
24 Dauyd of Scotland / the Constable of ffraunce, the Amyralt of Englond, sende for their folkes to come to the shippe that Dauid was yn / for to telle what they had seyne oñ lond, and hou they did for the grete shotte that came among hem, and hou they sup-
28 posed that they alle might londe / and thus they answerd alle <sup>They report
to Prince
David and
his Council,</sup> generally, that yif the grete vesselles might haue come as nere as the litle / it sholde haue be a light thinge to take lond / but they sawe wele it was not possible for theym to come so nere / wherefore
32 it was nedefult to take good aduise, ffor the company of the thre kynges that ther was / was not lightly to be auentured, for the losse of them might turne to ouir grete hurte to alt cristendome / Dauid and alle the tothir lordes, heryng this reporte, concluded that
36 every man shold take aduise of this matier / & on the morowe, in <sup>who resolve
on a consulta-
tion next day.</sup> the point of the day, that eueri man shold here masse / and forwith aftir meete ther ageyn / & sey ther advise, such as they shalt haue remembred that night / this was done, & eueri man wente to soper
40 and to reste. ¶ Nowe shalt we retourne to þe Soudan & his

folkes, that gretely mervailed of the maner of oure cristen folkes / for moche people had they lost by them / and aftir the departyng of the Gallettes, the Soudan sent for alle his Capteynes, to take auise what was best to do / either to lete the cristen men to take lond / 4 or to resisthe them / they sawe clerely that yif the cristen men contynued yn that they had done the day before / he might no thynge wynne, but alwey lose / so he praied eche of them trewly to counseile him, & say what was to be done / and aftir thies wordes 8

The Sultan
calls his
Captains to
Council.

Baltasar

he asked auise at one that him thought most sad to counseile in suche cas / & this knyght was named Baltasar / whiche alt his tyme had vsed his lif in warres / as wele on cristen as on hethen / the whiche Baltasar, aftir many excuses made, leyng the charge on 12 them þat were wiser than he / seyng that it was full vnsittynge for hym to speke bifore suche as there were / & whan he sawe he

advises the
Sultan

might not be excused, he seid in this manere / "sir, sauynge your 16 pleasir and correccion, ye haue a feble choyse of me / but sith it

[1 leaf 31]

pleasith you that y shalt speke, & may not be excused, y shalt sey vn¹dir correccion as me thinketh / ye haue sene the maner of the cristen to-day / what Damage they haue done to you & youre folkes / 20 whiche is more than folkes put you yn knowlage of / ye se wele that alt their desir is to take lond ther as we be ; wherof y mervaile,

to have pits
dug on the
shore,

for it were more profitable ellis where for them / and therfore y suppose that they haue non of Sizile with them / and so they wote

not where to seche their port but here / wherfore me thinketh it 24 were good this night to make pittes ther as they sholde londe,

whiche sholde be wele garnysshed with ordenaunce, and that they shold be made yn suche wise that eche of them might defende

and great
trenches,
all fild with
Turks,
and then re-
tire his army
behind them.

othir / And also that ther might be made grete trenches, that ther 28 might be grete nombre of people hid theryn / and that your grete armee drewe them a-bakke the draught of an arowblast, and there shewed them. I suppose verily whan the cristen shal se that / they

wold come in many placis to take lond / perauenture alle the puis- 32 saunce of them / and if they come ones withyn gonне shotte, y suppose that fewe of their vessels, or noon, shal escape vndrowned /

and for this that y haue seide of my opinion, alwey with correccion, me thinketh ther shold be apointed moche people, wele puruaide of 36 vitaile til to-morowe yn the mornynge, to go yn hande al night

with this werke / and yif eueri man do his deuoir, y trow it wol not dure half the night ; and as for my part, y wol begyn, if ye be

plesed. and if myn advise be simple, y beseche your grace / & alle 40

that here be, of pardon, for if y coude bettir / bettir y wold sey, and offre me to the best counse^H / Afir thies wordes / the Soudan asketh forth alle othir folowyng / hou they thought. and he that 4 spake nexte, seide / “ sir, ye haue herde thaduise of Baltasar / that All the other Captains agree. al his tyme hath haunted the warres / and for the spedē of this matier, to myn aduise ye may no bettir be adressed / wherfore, without holdyng of longe speche fro pointe to pointe, y can no 8 bettir say / than y hane herd him say ; wherfore y offre my self & all my folkes with al diligence toward the perfourmyng ther-of / if it so please you.” whan thies two had endid their reasons / the Soudan asked ferther / and every man was of thopinion of 12 Baltasar / offryng them self and alle their folkes to al that pleased the Soudan to commaunde / this counse^H was sone taken & concluded / and they that shold do the diligēnce [^[1] ff. 31, bk.] were ordeyned, and to euery man deliuern their charge, whiche 16 was done biforn day / and so wele accomplished that no man The pits and trenches are dug and mand.
coude amende it / for it was not so wele deuised / but it was perfourmed.

20 **V**E haue herde wele hou the cristen men had apoyncted the moost noble men to be yn Dauyd shipe yn the mornynge be tymes / to take aduise what was to be done. at the houre apointed they came, & went to a counself / and than spake Erle At Prince David's Council, Douglas for his maister / seyng, “ faire lordes, ye knowe at oure 24 departyng yster euen, howe euery man sholde take remembraunce of this grete matier. Wherfore, my lorde that here is, wolde fult fayne knowe your anises / what is to be done, for he knoweth wele amonges you alle, prynces & Barons, ye haue this night fult ofte 28 awaked to stodie aduise yn this high werke, where-yn we be / In whiche we may wynne the glory of heuen / the honour and renome of the worlde / and aquyte vs of the charge þat is youen vnto vs. So praieth you, my lorde that here is / that it plesē you to counseile 32 hym / and he is redy to execute it to his power. The kynge his fadir hath ordeyned hym ther-to / and for that cause sent him hider” / aftir tho wordes, Dauyd hym self praidē them the same / and than he bisought the Constable of ffrance to speke first / for 36 he was moost noble man of the company, and not werst puruaide of good aduise / it was no meruaile, for he was one of the chief of the Reaume of ffrance. Then spake he, & seide / “ y mernaile moche, my lorde, of so wise a kynge as is the kynge your fadir, that he 40 hath sent you hider yn this grete & noble company, without the Constable of France advises

hauyng one only man of that same reaume that ye shold aryue yn.
 vndir correccion / me semeth it a grete defaute / for as longe as
 oure enemyes wille / we shalle take no londe here / seyng the Soudan
 & alle his puissaunce bifore vs, and we not knowyng the londyng,⁴
 whereby we hane neither Wisdam nor policee to helpe vs / also the
 kynge of Sizile is not aduertised of oure comyng / wherfore y wote
 not what to counseile you / but best, me thinketh, it were to sende
 vnto the kynge of Sizile, and byde stille here til their comyng⁸
 ageyn / But ther is o sore point / they that shalle go, knowe not the
 way / ne where they shalle fynde hym / but y make no doute, if
 they may haue grace to come to hym / the kynge shall purvay for
 them to be conduyted surely y-nough / I can se noon other wey but 12
 this / for the more y thinke on it / the more straunge me semys
 the matier / wherfore y can not wele geue you counsei^H,¹ but
 biseche youre Lordship to axe ferther of them that hane sene more
 than I. sfor often tyme they that haue grettis charges be not moost 16
 wise / & so farith it by me / but as for my parte, y am redy to
 obeie you / and do you seruise as is commaundid me / and to
 biseue the counseile of wise & noble men, bettir knowing such
 matiers than y, wherof many may lightly be founde in this notable 20
 company." Dauid vndirstode wele that the Constable was yn dis-
 pleasir, by cause they had noon ther of the Reaume of Sizile that
 might conduyte them / and so he askid forth the Admiralt of Ing-
 londes auise, whiche in alle poynetes folowed the Constable of 24
 ffraunce / & shewed more sad matier to be troubled than did the
 Constable / and spake as he that was not pleased, leyng grete
 charge to them that had the conduyte of the armee² / and Dauid of
 Scotland askid ferther, but he fonde noon that coude take a ferme 28
 purpose. Thus as they were yn argumentes, without any conclu-
 sione takyng, they that were in the somer Castells & toppis of the
 shippis / that might easely se alle them that were a londe, per-
 ceyued verrily that the Soudan and alle his armee was withdrawen 32
 more than the draught of an arowe; & anon they tolde thies
 tidynges to dauyd / & to alle theym that were with hym, whiche
 forthwith went vp on the shippes / an sawe it was trewe that they
 had seide / Som of them seid the Soudan did this for to haue 36
 bataile, & to haue the cristen men at lesse defence / & som seide
 that he withdrew him for the grete losse he had yesterlai with the
 gonne & shotte of cristen men / whiche he wolde no more abide.

that, as they
don't know
where to
land,

they shall
wait for the
King of
Sicily.

[leaf 32]

The Admiralt
of England
agrees.

The look-out
men report
that the
Sultan has
withdrawn
his army
from the
shore.

² ? MS. ariuee.

alle they that were there, seide that they withdrew them for they
might not wele feight so ny the water, seyng the smalle vessells so
wele furnyssh / Than they concluded to go thider ageyn / and it
4 was ordeyned that they shold go, that went the day a-fore, with
many moo yn their company / so than was the houre apointed / &
to euery man deliuerd the charge of such feliship as shold go at
their conduyte / whan the houre came, alle men went to their ves-
8 sells / and in especialt, grete nombre of yong knyghtes & Squyers,
moo than had done the day a-fore / & whan they were assembled /
they spredde their vessels as they had done the day bifore. Of
the tothir parte / grete nombre of Turkes came out of their paulylions
12 toward them, makyng semblaunt to defende the londe ; they that
were withyn the barges & Gallettes, in al hast nyhed the ¹Londle, [^{¶ ff. 32, bk.}] & then feyned the turkes to withdraw them, for the grete shote of
The Christians man
their small
vessels, and
advance.
oure cristen men / this seyng, they of the Gallettes approched so
16 nye that they might a lepte to þe londe if they had wolde ; & so
they had done, if it had not be defendid fro them / the turkes that
were yn the trenches & in the pittes, that were so wel made that
their shot was alþ a longe the see side fro place to place, & was so
20 wele garnyssh that no thinge failed ; and whan they sawe the
barges & Gallettes so ny, that they might no nerre with-out
londyng, then lepe they out of their trenches / with so horrible a
noise & cry, as though it had ben alle the ennemys of helle ; & alþ
24 at ones shotte with gonne, serpentynes & culuernes, arblastes,
crosbowes ; & alle suche ordenaunce as they had / they lete go at
ones ; and whan the turke herde this noise, he made to caste vp a
cry & a noise amonsg his folkes, & drewe thiderward in suche
28 maner that alle our folkes were a-ferde ; & not without cause / for
many of their barges were a londe, & had fewe gonne or serpen-
tynes to defende them self with / and they were araied in suche
wise / that they were almost destroied / for the moost part of them
32 withyn / were so hurte that they might not helpe them self / the
remenaunt durst not shewe them, for the grete shot that came on
them / moreouir, ther were at this first encontryng .iiij. or .vij. Three or four
gallettes & barges drowned / wheryn many a notable knight &
36 squier endid their lyues / It is not to questionne / þat our folkes
þat were in þe grete Nauue, & myght se þis grete infortune / but
they had asmoche sorowe as þey myght bere / for yn þis little
Nauue was þe flour & þe choise of alle þeir yong chivalry / ful
40 feyne wold þey at þat tym a bene a londe to a uentured their lyues

The Turks
make a feign'd
retreat;

their men in
the trenches
leap out and
fire.

Christian
gallies and
barges are
sunk, and
many men
kild.

yn the helpe and rescuse of their frendes / but for alle their dis-comfort / it might now be noon other. The turkes did their deuoir

The Christians retreat,
having lost
eight boats,

to destroie the cristen / and the cristen put Payne to sauе them self / without makyng any oþir warres, the moost part of them 4 came ageyn to the grete Navee, Wherof were hurt without nombre / & many of them dyde that were hurt with the gonneſ & serpentyneſ / whan alſt this was endid / they tolde of their losſe / hou

and many
men kild and
wounded.

vij. of their ſmalleſt veſſeſ were drowned, wherof neuir a man 8 eſcōpe, beside alſt the remenaunt that were hurte / this day hath done aſmoche harme to þe cristen men as ſholde a done a grete bataile, for ſuſhe as were of hy & grete corage, that wolde auenture

[¹ leaf 33]

them / the moost part was dede. ¹There was the ſorowe & con- 12 plaint that eueri man made for his frende / aswele for the hurte as for the dede / whiche were to longe to reherce. ¶ I ſhall leue of this

I drop this,
because it
annoys me.

Sorowe, for the writyng therof annoieth me / and I retourne to the Soudan & his company / that make grete ioie this night / thinkyng 16 that for a bigynnnyng this was a faire auenture / and knewe wele by them ſelf of the night a-fore / ynne what diſcomfort the cristen men were / and gretely honoure they The knyght that hadde yeuen them this conſeile. that nyght concludid they to tary there ſtille, 20 til the cristen Navee was withdrawen, for the grete losſe & ſorow that they had / this nyght was yn the cristen Navee no counſeilt nor conclusion taken, for eueri man had y-nough to do, to viſite his frende / there is no ſorow nor myſfortune but it moſt paſſe. 24

Prince David
holds a ſecond
Council.

So on the morowe Dauyd assembled his counſeilt ; and aftir that he had made the compleynentes & lamentyng of them he had loſte, to their nyest frendes / he praied them euerichon to take this auenture

It decides
to ſend two
Scotch
knights to
land by night,

yn pacience, & to shewe their best counſeilt in this matier / & for 28 to reherce the opinions of eueri man, it ſhould be to longe, I ſhall go to the conclusion, that was this / they apointed two notable yonge knyghtes, hardy and wiſe of their age, and wele aduised, & ordeyned them to take that night a Galee / and more than ij. leegis 32 from the Soudans puissaunce thei ſholde londe / & put them in deuoir to take ſom maner of persone walkyng yn the feldes, whiche

and capture a
Turk to ſhow
them the way
to Sicily.

sholde teche them the wey to the kynge of Sizile. whan this was apointed / they leide the charge of the message on thies two 36 knyghtes, whiche were bothe of Scotland, whiche charge was no thinge elles but that they ſhould telle by mouthe, what auenture was befalle to the cristen Navee / and alſt for lakke that they had no man of that countre that coude conduyte them / and that they wolde 40

abide ther / the messangers / xiiij. daies / and if thei retourne not
withyn that time / they wolde departe / for they had no lenger
vitaile. Thus departed the two knyghtes / and euer man praid
4 them to do wele their deuoir ; so they went to their vessells, &
slepte there til it was night / than toke they their course toward a <sup>The two
Scotch
knights land,</sup> grete wode / that semed a two leegis from the Soudans hoste / then
they toke vnto them vitaile for ij. or iij. dayes, & armed hem
8 lightly, & toke theire sheldes and their swerdes / and eche sware to
abide by other yn alle alien^ttures ; & wele might eche of them trust [¹ lf. 33, bk.]
othir, for they were cosyn germyns, comen of the best lynage yn
Scotland, as of Barons / and of their age of them self moost renomed.
12 So moche did they that, vnperceyued or knownen of any persone,
they came to the forscide wode. this forest was ful longe, and but <sup>and get to a
wood.</sup>
little wey fro thens was the place fro whens kynge ffirbrace de-
partid whan he was taken / and that forest endured to the playne of
16 Tapyr / that Olyuer, feraunte brother, had yn gouernaunce. Now
ar thies ij. knyghtes londid, and made their praiers to almyghti god
to be their guyde, and conduyte hem from alle them that wold hurte
them / then they wilke forth thorugh the forest til it was day / &
20 when it was day, they perceyued a grete hy wey, that was moche
vsyd & betyn with horsis / it was a wey that went to a Toure of
kyng ffirbrace / & assone as they might / they leste² this hy wey /
and toke a more wilde wey in-to the foreste / alwey costeyng by
24 the same wey, to the entent to mete with some laborer that might
auertise them where they were / so long they went til they came
out of the forest / and were almost at the Towne of ffounde / where <sup>They come
near Fondé,</sup>
a grete garison was of the Turkes / and they dred to come yn any
28 toun til they knewe more / and withdrew them ayen in-to the
forest / they had gone but a while, but they mette an olde woman / <sup>and meet an
old woman,</sup>
that bare a fagot on hir hele of stikkis, that she hadde gedird yn
the wode / and whan she perceyued thies knyghtes, she knewe
32 anoon be their abilment that they were not of the turkes, & she
dred hir moche, & seide vnto them in such langage as they might
wele vndirstonde / “my lordes, preised be ihesu criste / that y
haue founde you here, for y se wele ye be cristien / & forsothe so am <sup>who pretends
to be a Chris-
tian.</sup>
36 I / and for that y wote not that ye knowe this contre / y wol aduise
you to be ware / for on that honde is a grete garison of the Turkys
folkes.” and this seide she, for she thought they had sene the
place, by cause they sholde haue the more affiaunce yn hir / when

² ? for *leftc.*

the knyghtes herde her speke / they wende wele she seide trouthe,
and came the more out of the wode to speke more to hir / and
askid whiche was the nexte place that hilde of the kynge of Sizile /

The old woman tells the spies that a Sicilian town is but 4 miles off.

she seide it was but .iiij. myle thens / and that a knyght had it in 4
gouernaunce, that was called Olyuer, whiche was Brother vnto the
Seneshalft of Sizile ; & she seide that but a litil while syne / the
Soudans brothir, kynge ffirabrace, was taken prisoner bifore the
same place / the ij. knygħtis were ioifult of thies ¹tidynges, & 8
praiede the woman that she wold bringe hem thider / she made
semblaunt of haltyng, as she might not wele go / for there was no
thinge she drede more than to come yn to that place / for she was
knowen ther for the worste & the moost vntrewe that yn hir tyme 12
lyned / then asked they hir, what wey they myght holde / and she
tolde hem the trouthe, & shewede hem whiche wey they sholde
take / and that shold not faile them til they came withyn a bow-
shot of the place / than bitoke they hir vnto god / and helde forth 16

As soon as they leave her, she runs to the garrison,

that wey aswele as they might. & whan they were out of hir
sight / she leide dounē hir fagot / and ranne yn suche wise toward
the garison of the turkes, that she seemed not lame / for vnnethe an
horse might ouirtake hir; so fast she ranne / that by than she 20
came to the place, she might vnnethe speke / and whan she was
brethed, she called the Captayne & tolde him all that she had
founde, & hou she thought they were not of the Reaume of Sizile;

and tells the Turkish Captain about the Scotch spies.

& hou she had counseiled them / for she dempte they were of the 24
cristen armee / that is nowe come, "and if ye wille, they may not
escape you, for y shall brynge you where y lefte hem" / whan the
Captayne herde this olde woman / he callid his folkes, & made hir
to reherce the tale ayen bifore them ; & so she did, & seide verily 28
they had no horses, but wente a fote, & drewe toward Olyuers
place / wherto they might not come but by ij. passages / thenne

He sends two parties of his men to catch them.

apointed he xxⁱⁱ of the garisone to go forth in ij. partes to the two
passages that they thought thies ij. knyghtes sholde passe by / and 32

sent forth othir .x. with this olde woman, to wite if they might
fynde them nere ther she lefte them / Thies ij. cristen knyghtes,
that sawe this olde woman renne thus whan she was departed fro
them / and that she was not lame as she had seide / knewe ful wele 36
what hir entent was / & wherfore she ranne so fast toward the

The Scotch spies get further into the wood.

Sarasyns / wherfore, as wise knyghtes of warre, they drewe them
ferther yn-to the wode / yn-to the thikkest therof / costeyng alwey as
the woman had taught them / so that they came neither yn hy wey 40

nor path / but costeyde forth as streight as they conde, towarde the place / And for the turkes, that y hane tolde you rode to the ij. passagis / they toke no grete hede to the reporte of this olde 4 woman / but seide amonges them, ¹“oure Captayne is wele occupied [1 ff. 34, bk.] to geue any credence to the seyng of this olde woman / that is wors than the blak denelt of helle ; it may as wele be that she doth this for the harme of vs, as for the hirte of othir / it is not good to trust to moche yn hir sorowe / haue he that hastith hym ouir faste for her wordes / it is goode we auise vs wele a-fore / for Olyuers folkes be men of grete vertu and worthynesse / and if we approche their place, y suppose we shall not retourne without debate” / with 12 suche wordes rode they forth al easely, so longe til one of the x. that were to-gedir, perceyued the ij. knygthes comyng out of the wode, & toke the wey to Olyuers place / whiche was not fer fro them. & when the turkes perceyued hem, they spored aftir them 16 in al that they myght / the two knygthes vndirstode wele that they were enimys, & fled toward the ffortresse / but they were so nere them / that they onirtoke them withyn lesse than a bow-shotte to the toune & ffortresse / & whan they sawe they might no ferther, they 20 put on their helmys / and aredied hem to their defence, & made a syne to them of the place for helpe, & set them self ayenst a tre, & defendid them ayenst al .x. The wacche of the place, that sawe wele al this, sende worde to Olyuer herof in al haste, whiche 24 came vp anone on the wallis, & sawe wele alle the feeldes aboute / that there was no moo but they, & that they were so nere his place / wherfore he had no drede to make his folkes issu out on them / & anone they came to the socours of thies ij. knygthes, that wele and 28 manfully faught / & be than had slayne ij. or iij. turkes / & made suche way aboute them / that their enemyes durst not wele approche them. the turkes perceyued þe comyng-out of þem of the place, and durst not abide them / but anon fled streight toward the wode, 32 but ther was noon that folowed hem / for assone as Olyuers folkes came to the ij. knygthes, they taryed stille with them / and brought them yn-to the toune to their maister, that rescayned them with grete ioie whan he knewe what folkes they were / and askid 36 them of their tidynges / whan the knygthes sawe Olyuere, they thankid god of his grace / that had brought them yn-to his handes ; and than they tolde him al the pitous & sorowfull aventure that was falle vnto the cristen the day bifore their departyng / the dis- 40 comfort of Dauid, the kynge of Scottes sone / & of alle the Prynees

The old
woman's
report is
pooh-pooh'd.

The 2 Scotch
Knights are
attack by
Turks.

Oliver sends
his men to
succour the
2 Scotch
Knights,

who are then
brought safe
to the fort-
ress.

[¹ leaf 35] of ffraunce, Englund and Scotland, that were there / & ¹hou they wist not where they were / nor herde no worde fro the kynge of Sizile, wherof they thought grete meruaile / seyng that he was assertayned of their comyng / of tyme & houre of their departyng / 4 and neuir had sente one only man vnto them / wherfore they toke grete displeasir / and were gretly annoied towardes him, & had sente them / vpon their retourne withyn xv. Dayes / or ellis to go their wey / and tary no lenger / Olyuer excused the kynge as moche 8 as he might / for he sawe wele it was nede / & that the cristen had cause of displeasir / So made he the knyghtes ~~at~~^{all} the chere that he coulde, & promysed to conduyte them to the kyng of Sizile, that was but ij. dayes iournay thens, of whiche kynge we wol speke 12 nowe, for we haue lefte of hym a grete while.

The King of Sicily

The kynge of Sizile, knowyng verily the Armee made by the iiij. kynges, assembled the thre estates of his lond, and helde a grete counseil, to take aduise hou he might con- 16 duyte & gouerne him, the ceason he abode the comyng of the cristen armee / eueri man counseiled hym to reise alle the power of his lond, a litle bifore suche tyme as the cristen armee shold arryue / accordyng to this auise he did / and sent for alle maner abile men 20 of warre / & anoon without any delay they came vnto him / arraigned and accompanied as wele as they might / thenne shewed he vnto them / the hope & comfort that he had, to haue socour of the cristen men / and the kyng was then wele accompanied aftir the 24 pouerte of his Reaume / and the grete losse that had fallyn thereto / & for they of the reaume had moche leuer dye / than to contynne yn suche case as they had bene a grete while / for this cause came alle maner of folkes / eueri man for his parte aswele abiled and 28 accompanied as they might / In like wise the kynge of Hungry, that ioyned to the reaume of Sizile, hadde arredied him & alle his power, to mete with the cristen men at their londyng / accompanied with the kynge of Sizile, trustyng at that day to se the warres 32 endid / Thus the kynge of Hungry, wele accompanied, abode eueri day to here tidynges of the cristen / but noon he herd / whiche was a grete defaute yn alle partyes / For lakke of sendyng eche of them to othir, grete harme befille, wherof was grete pite. The kyng of 36 Sizile, abidyng tidynges, was asserteyned by his Capteynes that the Soudan had assembled alle his people, ²as they vndirstode by suche of his folkes as were taken prisoners / and that he purposed to encountre the cristen armee, whiche was ny the costes, as he vndir- 40

and the King of Hungary
and his,

assemble to
meet the
Expedition
from Scot-
land, &c.

[² lf. 35, lk.]

stode. The kynge, knowyng for certayn thies tidynges from many places, toke the felde with alle his folkes, a thre leegis from the Soudan on that on side of hym / but his puissaunce was not to dele with the Soudan and his hoste / & than toke he counseilt what was to be done yn this matier; and they auised him to ley seige to a place that was named fosses, whiche was but iiiij. myle fro the porte where-as the turke lay. This sholde be but for a maner to holde his peple to-gedir til the londyng of the cristen armee / & to thentent to cause the Soudan drawe thiderwarde til the cristen might londe / for he entendid to hoolde no seige ther / for and the Soudan came / he wolde withdrawe him / for he was not able to dele with him / thus was the conclusion taken / and as yn maner of a seige, loggid him and his folkes bifore the place, where he was the same tyme that the ij. knyghtes came to Olyuer, whan he promysed them to conduyte hem to the kynge in ij. dayes.

16 ¶ On the morowe fult erly, whan the ij. knyghtes were wele restid at their ease, Olyuere puruaide for them .ij. good horsis / & conveied them so wele that he brought them to the kynge / and with the lesse peyne he might do so, for alle the hethen men were with the

20 Soudan / saue only they of the garisons, whiche were not right wele furnysshit with folke, as it shewed wele by the place that the kynge of Sizile lay bifore / thus as the ij. knyghtes and their guydes rode / they questioned of the kynge of Sizile & his puissaunce / and

24 Olyuers folkes tolde hem the grete paynes, hardnesse, myserie, & pouerte, this pore Reaume had endured / and than they tolde hem / hou, bi-fore the comyng of the cristen armee / a man like an Aungel yn beaute, to scynt George in worthynesse, was come vnto them, &

28 sith hys comyng, they had neuir but good auenture / and alle their dedes & emprises were come to good conclusion / and tolde them of the ij. first good auentures that felt sodeynly at his first comyng, and tolde al the maner hou they fell / and that sith his comyng,

32 one Sizilion was worth vj. turkes, and byfore, vj. of them were not worthe one turke / and that nowe the turkes might not endure ayenst them / of thies tidynges were the ij. knyghtes wele comforted / and desired no more of god, ¹but that their company were

36 ones assembled with the kynge of Sizile / And for to knowe more of this yong man that was newe come in-to Sizile / they asked his name / "for sothe," seide their guyde, "whan he came hider, his name was Le Desparueu; but for that eneri man hath sene yn him

40 so moche wele & noblesse / the ladies of the courte haue named him

While wait-
ing, the
Sicilians and
Hungarians
besiege
Fosses.

Oliver brings
the 2 Scotch
Knights to
the King of
Sicily,

and they are
told of the
wonderful
acts of Prince
Philip.

[1 leaf 3c]

Le Surname ; for they sawe him yn no thinge dispurued that longid to honour / thus now his name is Surname. And if ye wylt knowe him, it nedith not to desire any man to shewe him you, but beholde the moost faire and amyable, and the moost likly of the 4 kynges armee / and that is he, and by this ye may lightly knowe hym " / The ij. knyghtes of Scotland rode forth aH ioiffully, hering thies tidynges, & had grete meruaile that yn the persone of one man might be so grete cause of preise, desiryg moche to se him / 8 so longe they rode, that they approched the kyng of Siziles hoste / and at their welcomyng, there was right a grete assaute at the place / and they alight as folke of right high corage, and went streight to the saute / & fonde ther many pavis throwen to the erthe / and ech 12 of them toke one, & went to the wallis, beholding who did best / & they sawe, by force of defense, that the saute began to waxe lesse / & many folkes to withdrawe them / for there were many of the cristen woundid & sore herte / but at the laste, they sawe at o toure 16 one of the kyng of Siziles parte that valiauntly foughit, and for no thing wolde descende, but rather was maister of that toure / but he had noon earthly helpe / wherfore he made a syne to his company that they sholdre retourne / hou-be-it ther were fulf fewe þat drewe 20 thiderward / for euery man helde hym vttirly destroied with-oute remedy. men might se wele a-fer that he was sore assailed / but meruailously he defendid him / so that noon durst abide a stroke of his hande. he was so hy a-lofte that nedid to drede, neither gonue 24 shot, ne stone cast / nor no hurt they might do him, saue only with strokes / and the turkes dred his strokes so moche, that they durst not abide him ; thus, as half taken, was he vpon this toure, & sy hym self at a mischief / wherfore he made synes to the people, geuyng 28 them corage to come ageyn / thies ij. forsaide knyghtes of Scotland had be their but a while, when they herd cry, " Le Surname is lost / but if he haue socour / whiche sholdre be the grettist hurt that eur
[1 ff. 36, bk.] beffet to the reaume of Sizile ; " & anoon they knewe ¹wele that it 32 was the same valiaunt squyer of whom they haue herde speke, whiche stode yn auenture for lakke of socour. than toke they ij. a laddir, and drew them toward the toure / anoon aftir them came many moo folkes, but they were the first, be a good while, that went 36 vpon the laddir / the saute began on alle parties more huger and more sore than it had ben bifore / thies ij. knyghtes of Scotland did aH their Payne to come vp / & to make them to be knownen of Surname, as wele as of them of the hoste. wherto they did aH the 40

The 2 Scotch Knights

join in the assault on Fosses.

They see Prince Philip fighting alone in a tower,

and go to his help.

diligence that any noble men might do / & many tymes were put
dounē of the ladders / & many tymes remounted ayen. Surnome, ^{Prince Philip}
seyng the good wille of them, thought, with the helpe of god, to
4 make them better wey / & so betoke him-self to god & blessid him /
& auanced hym-self amouge the turkes that were on the walles
a-boute the toure, delyng them suchē lyucrey, that many he slewē /
and the remenaunt fled bifore hym / and so made he the two
8 knyghtes of Scotland, and many oþir, to come vp on the walles /
the turkes drewe them to the market place, sore discomfit. the
kynge & his folkes entred yn-to the toune by the gates that were
opynd vnto them by them that had wonne the wallis. the defence
12 that the turkes made yn the market place ayenst the kynges folkes
auailed not; for, with the helpe of Le Surnome, alle were slayne /
thus was the towne wonne without any grete losse or damage to the
eristen men / and it was boþe faire & stronge. Thies tidings came
16 anoon to knowlage of the Soudan / wheroft he was right sorowfuþ,
& knewe wele ther was to hym a right grete losse / & impossible to
him to recouer so many good men as he had slain there. And
thies ij. knyghtes of Scotland were gretly ameruailed of þat they
20 had sene that day, yn the persone of Surnome, more than they had
herd sey / then desired they moche to accomplishi their charge
that they had to the kynge / and also to se Le Surnome vnarmed,
and that þey might be aqueynted with hym / assone as they myght,
24 they founde vp them that had conduyte them, whiche they sente
to the kynge / to certifie him that ij. of the seruauntes of Dauyd of
Scotland were come to him / fro the saide Dauyd, desiryng moche to
speke with the kynge / seyng that hir message was hasty. The
28 kynge, hou-be-it that his folkes were yet alle out of aray, & that he
wist not where noon of his counseil were logged, yn asmoche as
the towne was newly wonne / wherfore every man was loggid with-
out an herbeiuour, he sent them word that withyn ij. houres he wold
32 sende for them / and commannded them that had conduyte them, to
holde hem company vnto that tyme / and that they shold put them
yn deuoir to do them alþ the chere and ease they coude / The
kynge of Sizile, aftir that he was wele loggid, & his folkes, and
36 made gret slaughter, & wanne grete good, he made to seeche where
they of his counseil were logged, & sent for them to come to hym ;
and than sent he for the knyghtes of Scotland / that, as ye may wele
thinke, had not chaungid their abilimentes / for their somers were
40 not ther / they came to the kynge, their visages grete and swolne of

and the two
Scotch
Knights
drive the
Turks from
the walls;

and Fosses
is won.

The 2 Scotch
Knights
wonder at
Prince
Philip's
prowess.

[1 leaf 37]

They are
sent for by
the King of
Sicily.

*The 2 Scotch
Knights tell
the King of
Sicily*

the strokes that they had rescyyued, & salued him right honorably,
as knyghtes of honour that had be right wele acostomed to do such
thinges / yeldyng thankes to god of the grete and good fortune / that
he had that day / geuyng hym a grete commendacion and preise / 4
seyng that the place that he had wonne at this tyme, was not con-
querable without the grete grace of god, and worthiness of his
persone & of his noble chyualrie / aftir this, fro Dauyd of Scotland,
the prynces & lordes of the cristen Armee þat at that tyme were 8
yn the see bifore the port of Gaiette / made they semblable recom-
mendacion, seyyng to the kynge / that for to do seruysse to Ihesu
criste / to hym, & also to his Reaume, this grete and mighti armee
was sent fro the iij. kynges, of ffrance, of Englund & Scotlände, of 12
the whiche Armee, Dauyd, the kynge of Scottes eldest sone, is chief /
and he and alle the prynces and Barons of his company meruaile,
yn-asmoche as ye were assertayned of the Armee by their propre
messangers / and of the day of their departyng / and yit haue they 16
not one only messanger fro you / nor your auertisement hou they
shold be demeaned, nor haue not yn their company one man of
this Reaume ; whiche thinge gretly abasslith them / that so mighti
a kynge, so porely hath condite so grete an acte / wherethorugh hath 20
folowed moche harme & shame to the cristen men / And there they
tolde of the grete ynfortune that felle to the Armee the day bifore
their departyng / and enformed the kynge that the flour of chialre
of the cristen armee was fult ny lost that day,¹ and so many of them 24
were slayne / that it was grete pite to reherce : this sore annoied
them, and so ought it to the kynge yn whos seruice they came /
seyyng ferther, that if they had not right sone tidynges from the
kyng, that it was not possible for them to abide there / for this 28
infortunat day caused grete displeasir amonges them / so þat
Dauid had right grete peyne to kepe them stille / for whiche cause
they fult humbly requyred the kynge to be hastily spedde, for such
was their charge. The kyng of Sizile, heryng thies wordes & 32
tidynges that the ij. knightes had tolde him, hou-be-it this day had
be right ioifult to hym of the takyng of this stronge towne / yit
was he sore troubled yn his eorage, & seide / “they shold be answerd
& delyuerd the nexte morowe,” for he desired moche to se this hy 36
and noble company / to the whiche he was as moche beholden as he
might be / “and y beleue verily that ther is the flour & choice of
chialrie / for yn you, faire lordes, hath be shewed this day grete
noblesse / and if alle your company be such / it may be called the 40

*that the Ex-
pedition of
his Allies
have waited
at Gaeta,*

*and not had
one message
from him,*

*so that the
flower of
their army
has perisht.
[¶ ff. 37, bk.]*

*He must
therefore
send to them
soon.*

flour of chiularie of the worlde / for ye haue made you more to be knownen this day in this company, bothe of the worthy men and of cowarde / than they that haue ben moche lenger here / y leue fu^t 4 wele your visages be vñknownen to cowarde, but the abilementes of your bakkes might wele y-nough be knownen of alle them that were behinde you. with them y was / & therfore y knowe your abilement wele / y leue / he that was yn the toure knowe your visages bettir 8 than y do / for ye shewed them vnto him / that at that tyme had ful grete nede of socours." The knyghtes thanked the kyng fult humbly, that for so litle deserfe yaued them so grete honour, & seide / "that he allone that was yn the toure, to their conceite was 12 cause of the good auenture that day ; & it semed them / that he allone suffised y-nough for half them that were with-yn, for ther was noon that durste abide his strokes." As they were yn this talkyng, fferaunt the Seneshall, & Surnome his seruaunt came yn 16 to þe kyng / & assone as þe ij. Scottyshe knyghtes sawe Le Surnome come yn / by the report þat they had of them þat had conduyaute them / þey wist for trouth it was þe same / for, so goodly a man ne saw þey neuir. & þan thought þey þat it was he þat 20 was on þe toure, & for the vois that þey had herde amonges the people that cried "helpe Surnome þat is on þe toure" / þey thought certeynly þat the name that the ^[1 leaf 38] ¹Ladies had geuyn hym, was more propre for hym than the first name / for god and nature 24 had highly puruaiede for him. Assone as the kyng sawe hym yn the Chambre, he came to hym / & embrased hym / & seide to the knyghtes of Scotland, "knowe ye this man ?" / that one answerd anone & seide / "for sothe, sir, yea ; and y sey for trouthe that he 28 is Le noumpareil that euir y sawe or herde speke of. and god of his grace long contynue hym, for by the name that remmeth on hym now he is vnarmyd, we knowe hym ; and by his dedes and prowesse whan he was armed to-day, we inged it shold be he also / and I wote 32 wele, whan our maister, Dauid of Scotland, shalt here that we haue sene yn hym, he shall put hym yn grete peyne to haue his acqueyntaunce / for we knowe certaynly that the gretest desire that he hath, is / to haue acqueyntaunce with Valiaunt folkes / and knowe 36 wele that his body, his power, and his goodes shalbe as redy this gentilmannys, as his oun." Le Surnome thanked them alle shame- 40 knewe fult wele that this preise came of their goodnessse / for an ilt fastly of the honour that they gane hym / praying god that the hundreth part of this that they seide, might be yn hym / for he He thanks them.

The King of Sicily praises the 2 Scotch Knights.
They praise Prince Philip.
who is introduced to them by the King.
They call him the Nonpareil.

hert deyneth not to preyse another. “ I sey this, for that this day, ye
 Prince Philip lauds the 2 Scotch Knights.
 that were vñknowen, haue made to be knowyn yn eche of you, yn
 one houre / more than this is yn any of this company ; and for
 sothe y haue to day knownen you more be sight than any man yn 4
 this hoste / and the kynge that here is / ought to thanke god & you
 of his good auenture.” Yf y shold reherce the wordes of honoure
 that were bitwene Le Surnome & them, y sholde haue to moche to
 do / but e[ue]richon to his power honoured his party. ¶ Afir this 8
 talkyng, the kynge made to conduyte the scottish knygthes to their
 loggyng, & commaundid them to be honourably serued, and wente
 him self to his counseil to wite hou he shold do to the cristen
 Armee / & there were they longe debatyng this matier / And at last 12
 they were of acorde to sende notable folkes to Dauyd of Scotland,
 to the prynces & Barons of his company / desiryng them that they
 shold departe fro thens, & drawe to a-nothir porte, that was, Le
 toure de gretuz / and there esily & without any perile they might 16
 londe. albe-it that the port was som what more daungerous, yit were
 it not so grete auenture for them the londyng ther / and they
 [1 lf. 38, bk.] thought, if the cristen Armee were 1ony s Londid, sone afir the
 turkes sholde haue more than y-nough to do. The knygthes that 20
 sholde do this message, were ordeyned that night, whiche on the
 morowe by tymes entreprised the viage with right good wilt. The
 Scottisshe knygthes were sent for / and the kynge of Sizile seide
 vnto theym yn this wise / “ my frendes, and right wise Valiaunt 24
 knygthes ! y haue herde the credence that by you was sent me fro
 my good cosyn, Dauyd of Scotland / and my good frendes, alle othir
 princes and lordes ther / yn the whiche ye haue right notably
 declared the mysery that they haue suffred for the honour of oure 28
 blissed creatore / and for the socours of this pore and desolat
 Reaume / whiche is to me right sorowful to here rehersid. and for
 to make myn excuse, y knewe verily by my folkes that y had sent
 to the iij. kynges, ther awnswere / and what tyme the Armee shold 32
 departe / but neuir sith, by them nor noon of them, had y neuir
 tidynges, by letteres nor othirwise / and for that ye knowe wele / the
 thynges chaunge often yn so hy matiers / y wist not what to thinke,
 for y supposed verily to be assertayned fro them of their comyng / 36
 which, and y had knownen it, had not be conduyte as it is now / but
 tho thinges that god wolt haue suffred, may not now be amendid /
 therfore remytte we alle thinge to the wilt of god / And to go to the
 conclusion of the surpluis of this matier, to puruey the best that 40

The King explains to the 2 Scotch Knights

that their Generals never told him that their Expedition had started.

may be doñ, y haue ordeyned iiiij. knyghtes of my folkes, that ^{4 Sicilian Knights} knowe best the conduyte of thies marches / and they shal put them ^{2 Scotch ones back} in deuoir to bryng you ayen to your maister / & declare vnto hym

4 such conclusions as y haue taken with my counseil / whiche to their power they shalt helpe to execute / and shall not departe fro hym til he and y be to-gedre ; & so ye may puruay to departe whan it pleasith you / and they shall be redy to accompanye you " / whan **8** the scottish knyghtes had herd the kynge, they were right wele content of his Answere, and take their leue of the kynge / whiche gaue eche of them a courser, and othir grete giftes ; and thus they departed / and iiiij. knyghtes of Sizile with them, whiche conduyte **12** them so wele, that they brought them to their maister ij. dayes ^{to the Allies}. bifore the terme that he had set to his seruauntes. and at their comyng, it is no question if ther were ioie thorugh al the company, for they wende neuir to haue sene the houre of their retourne. And **16** after their comyng was knownen, ¹and that they had brought iiiij. ^[1 leaf 39] knyghtes of Sizile with theym, the prees was grete a-boute theym / as wele of the frendes of thies ij. knyghtes, as othir that helde them half lost / & were right ioifull that they had accomplished their ^{They are joyfully welcomed,} **20** charge, to their grete honour. & eueri man desired to knowe of their tidynges ; but, as good & right wise knyghtes, they tolde nothinge til they had spoken with their maister / and assone as they might, they went vnto hym, & lefte the knyghtes of Sizile accompanied **24** with many a noble man / til tyme they knewe the pleasir of their maister / what tyme they shold bring the knyghtes of Sizile vnto hym.

And aftir their comyng vnto hym / there had they a lawde, **28** honour & thanke that they so valiauntly had accomplishisht the charge ^{and thankt.}

he had geuyn them. than tolde they hym hou they had spedde, and that .iiij. knyghtes of Sizile were come with them to enforme hym of al the kynges entent / and to abide stille with hym til their **32** londyng. Of thies tidinges was Dauid right glad, and alle they in his company / and anoon sende forth ayen thies .ij. knyghtes, with many othir notable men in their company, to fecche them of Sizile.

And anoon they came ayen / and brought thies iiiij. knyghtes with ^{The Sicilian Knights are introduced to Prince David.} **36** them, whiche fult humbly salued Dauid & alle the lordes of his company / yn recommending the kynge, their maister, to them, & to alle the noble chyualrie & company that was yn this armee / they were resceyued right ioifull of Dauid, and of all the lordes that **40** were present / they performed their charge, so as ye haue herde

before, that the kynge gaue them at their departyng / & offred them self to the accomplishment therof / and to helpe to conduyte them without departyng fro them / til the kynge & they were mette with the grace of god / Aftir their credence herd / they were ledde to an 4 othir faire vesseH, wele accompanied with knyghtes & squiers. and the counself abode stille to-gedir, to take aduise vpon this message, what was to be done / and so they concluded. In-asmoche as the kynge of Sizile had sente thies knyghtes to conduyte them / that 8 on the morowe alle the maisters shold be warnyde to aredye them forward, and on the next 1day be-tymes to put them yn the garde & conduyte of thies knyghtes of Sizile that the kynge had sente them / Alas, fortune ! whan a man weneth to be moost sure, than 12 is he nere his daungere ; for sone aftir this apointment and this grete ioie, there befelle suche infortune that it was grete Damage to al cristendome, as ye shalt anoon here / this counself, takyn, the knyghtes of Sizile were sent for / and tolde them the conclusion 16 that was taken amoung the lordes / wherof they were wele content, and thought the conclusion good. than euer man departed, and brought the knyghtes of Sizile to their loggyng, and did them al the honour and chere that men myght do yn suche cas. Dauid made 20 his knyghtes that he had sente yn-to Sizile, to suppe with hym that nyght, to telle hym and the Constable of ffraunce, & the Admyrah of Englund of their tidynges, bothe of their departyng & of their demeanyng, and of al the manere of the contre / than the two 24 knyghtes tolde hem suche tidynges as they knewe, and of the olde woman / yn what wise she wolde a betraide theym / and hou they escape, and were reskowed by fferauntes brother / and hou he made them to be conduyte then in alle haste to the kynge of Sizile, 28 whom they founde assautyng right a faire towne / & wannte it. than they tolde the noblesse of Surnome, and al the honour they hadde herde of hym, and al that they had sene hym do / & what honour he put them to bifore the kynge / and hou he was the moost 32 amyable persone that euir they sawe, daies of their lif / and they wende that nature coude not, nor neuir sholde, make no suche / And so moche they seide of hym, that alle the lordes that were there / and alle othir, had grete meruaile ; and if the knyghtes that tolde it had 36 not ben of their age the moost renomed of sadnesso & trouthe yn the cristen Armee / they conde not hane billeued them / for suche worthynes, bounte, & beaute, semyd them ympossible to be yn one persone. Also the knyghtes seide of the kynge of Sizile moche 40

*The Allies
resolve to
get ready
next day,*

[¶ lf. 39, bk.]

*and start for
Sicily the
day after.*

*The 2 Scotch
Knights tell
the French
Constable
and English
Admiral
all their
adventures
in Sicily,*

*and the
nobleness
of Prince
Philip.*

honour / and tolde yn what maner he excused hym, wherof alle the lordes that were there thought them selfe coulparable, seyyng, “verily that they did ille, þat they had not sente one to hym bifore the 4 departyng of the armee fro Scotland, for to haue had som of his folkes to be conduyte by. Nowe was alle thinge yn suche eas that it was past remedy” / wherfore they praied god that the remenaunt of their viage might be ¹bettir conduyte, and more to their honour [1 leaf 40] 8 and profite / Than tolde they hem that, “by the noblesse of Le Surnome / the hardynesse of alle them of Sizile was redoubled / for where .vj. of the Turkes haue put to discomfiture .xx^t. Seziliens & moo / at this day it is the contrarie ; for it faileth not, but vj. 12 Siziliens are worth xx^t turkes / and they thynke verily / that, and they myght ones ioyne with the turkes, they sholde lightly wynne the ouir hand of them.” The iiiij. knyghtes of Sizile suppid yn a nother vesſell, rehersyng ther al the wynnnyng of the towne, and 16 the manere of the ij. knyghtes / and howe they were knowen for their prowes ; & reported grete honour of them / and seide vnto hem that accompanied them / “if alle ye be such as they .ij. are / I wote wele the turkes shalle not longe abide you.” Of this tidynges were 20 alle they ioifulle that herde hem, and coude the ij. knyghtes right grete thanke, that so wele aquytte them / and so did they to the knyghtes of Sizile / that so honorably reported them. Aftir soper, eueri man drew hym to his loggyng / for to be vp on the morow 24 betymes, for to redye hem to departe the next day / thus eueri man went to his vesſell. Nowe I pray god conduyte them / for this nyght toward the point of day befelt them a meruailous harde fortune, as ye shalle here folowyng.

28 **B**Etwene midnyght and the point of the day, grete wynde & ^{A tremen-}
^{dous tempest}
rises.
tempest aros vpone the see, yn such wise that the shippes tumbled as they shold alle to-breke ; and at the point of the day the tempest was grettir than bifore / and the wawes came with such 32 violence, that eueri wawe came in-to the shippes, and ouir them an C. galons of water at ones / oure goode cristen men, seyng this huge tempest, feſt on their knees with their handes ioynd toward the heuen / bisechyg god of mercy, reheryng vnto hym / 36 that they were departed out of their contre & possessions to do hym ²seruice, & had also forsaken fadir & modir, wif & childe, [2 lf. 40, b.k.] only for his seruice, bisechyg hym to geue hem that grace / that they might wele retourne ayen yn-to their contrees. At that tyme 40 was the noise so grete a-monge the Nauie, that the Soudan & alle his

company were full ioifult / for they might wele here them / and a
nyle beyonde that he was. It is to thinke, that of this grete and
hidious tempest they were gretely reioised / trustyng it sholde do
grete hurt to the cristen armee / and so it did / for this tempest 4
contynued til the sonne risyng / and brought them to suche necessite
that they cutte their cables & drew vp their sailes, and put them
alle in the auenture of god / many shippes were dryuen forth with
the wynde / some caste hider and thider with the wa[w]es / that had 8
neither saile ne maste / nor noman so hardy that durst conduyte

*The hideous
tempest
makes the
Allied Fleet
cut their
cables.*

*Some ships
dash to-
gether.*

the steerne ; som of the shippes russet to-gedir, that they alle to-
brake ; & some drawe forth, waityng but dethe. The Erle douglas,
that was in Dauid vessel, made the moost pitous compleyntes that 12
any man might make ; for he sawe wele by the shippes that
perisshed & drowned afore hym / and also by othir that he sawe
dryue forth with the wynde, som without either saile or maste /
that all was yn auenture to be drowned / than seide he thus / that 16

*Earl Douglas
laments the
danger.*

alle might here that were aboue hym / “A ! ffortune male-eurus / I
thought me highly honoured to haue in my conduyte the eldest
sone of my souerayn lorde, yn so grete a seruice as the seruice of
god / nowe se I wele, that to god pleasith neither his seruice nor 20
myn / but rather we must dye / and ende oure lyues wrecchidly /
and of þat dethe þat yn this world y moost dredde. A ! my
creatour ! I pray the rescyeue the sowles of my maister and of vs
alle yn this company, yn-to thy glorie / and knowe wele, that for the¹ 24
we are in this cas, and for doyng vnto the, seruice / we are come to
oure dethe ” / Such wordes and compleintes made the Erle Douglas,
that was a fult wise and a worthy knyght / and yit was that vessel

stille at ancre, and so was noon of the company but they / they 28
thought with euery wawe the vessel shold all to-breke / “ & than,”
seide the maryners, “it behoueth to put vs in the auenture of god.”

the yonge Dauid, seyng this dolorous fortune, was agreeable to cutte
the cables / and anone as they were cutte, the vessel smote a londe 32
streight before the Soudan / and brake all on peces / and so ther
escope noon, but alle were drowned sauе Dauid and Erle douglas,

*The Prince's
ship runs
ashore, and
breaks up.*

[2 leaf 41]
*Prince David
gets to land,
and is attackt
by Turks.*

and vj. othir persones, that with helpe of boordes droof ²to Londe,
whiche was ther ny / then had the Turke of his cruelte com- 36
maundid, that if any of fortune came a-lyue to londe / that they
sholde sle them without raunsome / and whane his people sawe this
yonge Dauid, they came to sle hym / and that, sawe the Erle

¹ the = thi

Douglas, and sterte bifore hym / to diffende hym / but his helpe
 auailed not / for anoon he was slayne at his maisters fete / and so
 were alle they that came with hym / saue hym self / and he, seyng
 4 hym in this daunger, withdrew hym, and set his bakke ayenst a
 little rokke was ther / trustyng to diffende his lif / and that it shold Prince David
defends him-
self.
 thought his dethe sholde be the more easy / and that eueri noble
 8 man of honour wolde haue the more pyte of his dethe / so put he
 hym vttirly yn the handes of god / and leyde so aboute hym that
 noman durst approche hym / for he slewe of them many. The and kills
many Turks.
 Soudan, that saw the armes that he did / yn his hert had grete
 12 despite / and spake a-lowle / “what! shall o. cristen man discom-
 fort this armee / if there were any noble man amonges you, he shold
 endure but litle while” / he had a sone of the age of xx^{ti} or .xxiiij^{ti}
 yere, that behelde al this, & had grete pite of this yonge lorde of The Sultan's
son, Prince
Orcays, pities
Prince David,
 16 Scotland, that so manly diffendid hym / and meued with suche
 pite / ayenst the wile of his fadir, he went to hym, brekyng the
 prees / & made eueri man to withdrawe fro hym / and sithe seide
 vnto hym / “my frende, thou seest clerely that thy strength may
 20 not auaire the / & that thou stryuest and feightist without reason /
 but yelde the to me with thy fre wille / and I shall brynge the to
 the Soudan, and pray hym for the.” whan pore David herd thies
 wordes, he was not of a grete while so glad as aftir the aventure
 24 that god had sent hym / for he knewe wele that he had spake to
 hym / was a lorde of grete estate / bothe by his aray / and by the
 obeisance that alle men did vnto hym / and thus he answerd hym,
 “My Lorde, ye se yn what cas y am / if I feight in diffendyng my
 28 lif, noman blame me, for I haue sene your folkes take litle pite on
 any of vs / alas! what may vj. pore persones do ayenst alle your
 company, whiche were fallen yn your mercy / & humbly asked
 your grace & mercy / and, sauf I. allone, they are alle slayne / many
 32 folkes shalle calle this rather rigour & tiranny than any honour /
 but of the offre that ye haue made me, right humbly, my lorde, I
 thanke you / and I. yelde me to you / here is my swerde” / whiche who gives up
his sword to
him.
 he delyuuered hym / & seide, “In you is my lif and dethe, whiche,
 36 ¹had not be the trust of youre assuraunce, y wolde a done my ¶ lf. 41, bk.]
 peyne a litle lenger to diffende / so demeane ye me as it pleasith
 you.” And this yonge sone of the Soudane, named Orcays, assured
 hym on his feith, and aftir that, was noon so hardy that durst
 40 approche hym / thus was yonge Davyd takyn / & brought by

Orcays bifore his fader / whiche made hym take of his helme / and sawe hym, of visage and body, of right excellent beaute / and saide to his sone, "ye wol nedely take this man prisoner / but it is bettir lete hym dye than lyue, without he wol billeue as we do / for he is 4 merualiously shapen to do armes, as ye haue sene hym proued by experiance / and if ye be so content / me thinketh best / that men delyuer the worlde of hym lightly" / this yonge Orcays, heryng his fadir, was yn grete sorow and displeasir / & thought yn him self 8 that he shold sle hym also with his prisoner / and seide vnto his fader. "My Lord, the first prisoner that euer was taken with my handes y haue brought bifore you ; the Payne that y had yn takyng hym was not grete / without any stroke he put his trust yn me / 12 where noman durst come ny hym / & leue not / that yn one man be the power to destroie this company / wherfore ye nede not to haue no drede of hym / but ye may do with hym & me your pleasir / for y thinke not he shall die without me / seyng the feith that I haue 16 promysed hym ; and if any othir than ye lay hand on hym, he may be sure to repente it, for y shall diffende hym to my power while y haue any lif" / and thies wordes seide Orcays so vigorously, that his visage wex al rede. Al this vndirstode wele, this yonge Dauyd, 20 with visage assured / as he that abode the dethe / without hauyng any regarde to his lif, seide to the Soudan yn this wise / "Sir, y holde me wele ewred of the wordes I haue herde you sey of me / & be ye assured, yf y die, y shall die with ioie to thynke for whos sake 24 it is / for of my lif y rekke ful little / if it please my creatour, y haue lyued y-nough / sith this day y haue sene so many a notable man die befor me / and y haue no wiH to leue their company / for y am wele assertayned that be this houre their dethe is to them right 28 ioifull / I am yolden to this lorde bifore you vpone his feith / y wote not who he is / but forthwith y aquyte hym therof, & pardone hym and you also my dethe / prayng to our lorde, at my dethe to resceyue my soule." The Soudan, heryng his sone speke, seyng 32 hym vttirly wroth, had pite of him / and aH-be-it he was ¹right hard / yn corage ayenst alle cristen / yet had he pite also of Dauyd / that so hardyly spake, & with so stable manere, abidyng dethe with suche corage / that to beholde, he was aH recomforted / and so he 36 answerd his sone, not geuyng hym no surete of his prisoners lif / bade him lede his prisoner where he wolde, so he were kepte sure / "and y shall take advise here-on / and shall speke with you / and y doute not, aftir ye haue herde me, ye shall be content of that / that 40

The Sultan
wants to
kill Prince
David;

but his son
Orcays tells
his Father

that he will
die with
David,

who yet says
he is ready to
die joyfully.

He prays God
to receive his
soul.

[¹ leaf 42]

The Sultan
orders Prince
David to be
kept prisoner.

I wo^H do" / Thus this Orcays sent forth his prisoner; but for drede
that men sholde do hym any hurte, he kepte hym al that nyght yn
his chambre, without departyng fro hym, for he knewe the cruelte
of his fadir such that, & he myght gete him at large / he wolde
make hym to be slayne / and thenne wolde he laugh ther-ate / as
though a had made kyl a dog / or som othir vnthrifte beste / and
for thies doutes kepte he contynuelly his prisoner with hym / and
8 as a bridle is assottid on hir make / so was Orcays of Dauyd.

¶ Aftir this grete tempest was thus befallen vnto the cristen
Navee / ye may thinke welle / that the vessells helde not al^t one
wey / for som arryued by infortune amonges the sarasynes / wherof

12 som were kepte as prisoners / and some were put to pore occupa-
cions, as to kepe shepe & bestes / for they solde the cristene men as
they wolde selle catelle / and they that had bought theym, bete
them euery day like dogges, and they did not wele that / that they

16 had yn charge / the tothir vesselles to whiche god wold extende his
grace / aryued / som yn ffraunce, som yn Englund / som in Scot-
land / many aryued yn othir cristen reaumes / wherby the sorow-
fulle tidynges were sone spredde thorugh-out alle cristendome / and

20 sone came to the knowlage of the kynge of ffraunce, of Englund
and of Scottes / that were hugely sorowfull of that ynfortune / and
eche of them made grete enquerre aftir their frendes & seruauntes /
but noon ther was that conde assertayne theym what folkes were

24 sauad or loste / eueri man trusted his frende were sauf, their hertes
desired it so moche. The kynge of ffraunce vndirstode verily that
the moost parte of his folkes shold retourne / so did the kynge of
Englund and the kynge of Scottes / that euery day herkened for

28 tidynges of his sone, þat he loued asmoche as any fadir myght do
his childe / and trusted moche yn the wisdam and conduyte of the
goode Erle Douglas / that had the gouernaunce aboute hym / A
grete while thought he that he herde no tidynges of them .ij., for

32 ¹there were come many othir / & of the reaume of Scotland were [1 lf. 42, bk.]
not loste past .vj. shippes / the Erle Bussaunt was sauf, & many

othir notable men of Scotland / the grete losse was in Dauyd
vessell, for it is to thinke that yn his vessell was many a notable
36 man. Of Englund came ageyn many / bothe the Admyralt / and
the moost parte of the noble men that went forth, but som were

lost. Of the reaume of ffraunce came ageyn many / but the goode
Constable abode / men wist not whelir he was drowned or takyne.
40 ffor final conclusioun, eueri man of this thre reaumes trusted wele

The Turkish
Prince
Orcays is
captivated
with Prince
David the
Christian.

Some Chris-
tians are
sold like
chattels and
treated like
dogs by the
Turks.

The Kings
of France,
England, and
Scotland
grieve over
the losses of
their Expedi-
tion.

that their frendes were sauf. Afstir the retourne of hem that were come ageyne, y can thinke the iiiijth parte of this arne was myssed, of such as were takyn, & suche as were drowned / tho that the kynge of Sizile had sent to Dauyd were sauued / as for the two 4 knyghtes that had been with the kyng in message / y wote ner whethir they were sauued or not / for y fynde no more of theym.

The King of Sicily reproaches himself as partly the cause of his Allies' loss.

8
12
16
20
24
28
32
36
40

The Three Kings think this
judgment of God deserved.
[1 leaf 43]

YE shalle retourne to the kynge of Sizile, that fulle sone was assertayned of this ynfortune, wherof he was so sorowfull that noman might recomfort hym / and iuged him self yn party the cause of this auenture ; &, as a man enraged with sorowe, cursed the houre of his birthe / & wisshed hym ded / sith thorugh his defaute & negligence, so many notable prynces & lordes were perissshed and dede of so lamentable a dethe / and seide / "y wote wele / and y had aquytte me to them as y shold / they had bene a londe / & noon of al this ynfortune had happed ; but wele y wote, the turkes shold sone a be destroied / and this londe set yn a perfit reste / But nowe sheweth wele god / that y am not to hym agreeable / and that I haue done some synne that displeasith hym" / ye may thinke that yif the kynge of Sizile had such wordes / that eche of the iij. kynges, [of] ffrance, Englund, & of Scotland were of semblable condicione, thynkyng yn hem self / that the seruise that they did to god was not to him agreeable / for by their owne corage they knewe wele they had done this seruise more for veynglory, and to haue a renome, than for the loue of god / and therfore they thought the iugement of god, and his stroke, resonable / thus their owne conscience iuged. The kyng of Scottes compleyned hym / "Alas ! y haue sent my sone, for that the kynges of ffrance & of Englund put it on me / & for myn honoure y durst not refuse it / and yf y had not dred shame, he had ben yit stille with ¹me / at his departyng y had suche sorowe that noman might conforte me / and for thies thinges, y wote wele y haue displeasid god / and haue not done as did Abraham by Isaac his sone / y offred not seruise to god of my childe / but y offred to the worlde, & for drede to haue had shame / god that is iuste / and that knoweth the condicions of man and their thought, hath refused this seruise, as he did the sacrifice that Caym did / and he hath good right / but myn owne sone, that with my trespass might no thyng do / wente with so grete corage & desire, that me semeth / god ought to haue pite oñ hym. As for my self, I crye god mercy / & beseche hym to haue pite on my childe / where-som-euir he be" / and thus yn secrete

The King of Scots says that God has refused the service of the Allies.

place the pore kynge of Scottes made his compleinte, wepyng alwey
 & prayng to oure lord for his sone / The kyng of Englonld, on his ^{The King of}
 party, remembred also / how longe he had taried to sende socour to
 4 the kynge of Sizile / and yit had noon sende hym, if he might by
 any meanes a left of / and so he sende more for drede of shame
 than for the loue of god / and yit he felte himself ferther eoulpable,
 for asmoche as he had leide the charge to the kynge of Scottes to
 8 sende forth his sone / whiche was so goodly a yong man / and now
 is lost thorugh his counself / and yit he did it to thentent but to
 cause the armee to breke / and for this / he thought wele god was
 displeased with hym / and of right hath refused his seruise. The
 12 kynge of fraunce had sent his armee yn the company of Dauyd / <sup>and the King
 of France
 reproach
 themselves
 as to the
 Sicilian Ex-
 pedition.</sup>
 alle to a nothir entente than the .ij. kynges did / for he dred, if he
 sent hem not forth, that god wolde be displeased with hym / for at
 such tymes as his sone had often meued hym with the same, & he
 16 wold not enclyne to his request, god suffrid him to lese his sone /
 whereof he toke such sorowe that he neuir recovered to that he
 was a-fore / and therfore lest god wolde take vengeance on hym,
 & aftir his dethe vpone his reaume, that was fulle like to be lefte
 20 withoute heire / he did to god his seruise / wherfore he knewe wele
 yn hym self / that he had done this seruise to god, more fore drede
 than for loue / and therfore he thought that god was not pleased.
 Thus thies iij. kynges that ye haue herde of, eche of theym leide
 24 grete charge to them self of the sorowfuH aventure. But ouir alle <sup>But the King
 of Scotland
 grieves most
 for the loss
 of his son.</sup>
 othir, the kynge of Scottes made grete sorowe, and alle his reaume,
 for yonge Dauyd; and so did alle the iij. reaumes / for the grete
 vertues yn hym, eueri man perfity loued hym / and thought it was
 28 to importable a losse. Thies ^[1 lf. 48, bk.] thre reaumes aforeside / were yn
 compleyntes & wepyng, & in especiaH for their frendes, that were
 not retourned ayen yn-to their contrees / neuirtheles, eueri man
 trusted that they were aryued in some othir lande / or takyn
 32 prisoners / and that they shold here tidynges of them / and many
 contynued yn this hope duryng their lyues, & in especiaH women,
 such as myssed their husbondes, that neuir sawe theym aftir / and
 some ther were / that in litle while were recomforted with the
 36 retourne of their frendes / the fortune of this world is not like to
 eury body / But nowe y shalH leue of this sorowe, that was made
 thorugh all thies reaunes / & retourne to the kyng of Sizile, that, ^{The King of}
 aftir the destruccion of the cristen armee, was discomfited out of
 40 mesure / neurles, he perceyued, as a wise Prynce, that no discomf
 THREE KINGS' SONS.

mighty remedy hym / wherupone he shewed his wisdom, and put all his trust yn god / and assembled his grete counsell, seyng vnto them in this wise. ¶ "My frendes, eche of you is assertayned of this pitous auenture that is befallen vnto oure socours / yn the 4 which were so many princes and Lordes, that came to vs from iij. reaumes / þat most mighty helpe vs / and it is to suppose that of them we gete no more helpe / and y holde this company, or the most part therof, loste, whiche kan not be without grete hurte, 8 losse, & sorowe to the iij. kynges and reaumes / and therfore it behoueth vs to take hede to oure self / I haue often sent vnto my fadir, the kynge of Spayne, and we can haue no socour ; thens this reaume is yn grete auenture, but god of his grete mercy helpe / and 12 sith it is so / we haue the more nede diligently to beholde what is to do / than euir we had / for oure hope of oþir nowe is failed vs / lete vs do oure self what we may / for oþir comfort may we not abide / My frendes, I pray eche of you to take good corage / & be 16 content to obeie and abide the wille of oure lorde / & to take suche part yn pacience, as he wol sende / and y sey for me, that haue more to lese than any of you / y shalt comfort me yn god, and yn the helpe of you, my trewe frendes / and yn your good counsell, 20 whiche y wol vse, and be redy to auenture my body, my lif, & my good amonges you, requiryng you alle, & eche of you, to yene me counsell, comfort and helpe / & to auise shortly what y haue to do." Thus the kynge of Sizile spake to his folkes, with teres trikelyng 24 downe on his visage, whiche caused alle them that herde hym to haue grete ȝpite and wille to helpe to diffende his reaume. And they Aunswarde hym : "sir, to holde longe counsell is not profitable, for it behoueth you shortly to conclude ; for ye may thinke 28 wele that the Soudan is enhaunced yn suche pride by the destruction of thies cristene folkes, that hym thinketh the sonne and the sterres shold honoure hym / and that no thinge sholde holde party ayenst hym / wherfore it is to suppose that he wol come yn 32 all haste vpone you / ye be not of mighty to abide hym, seyng their corage is redoubled / & your folkes be amated and alle yn discomfort for this pitous auenture / wherfore y kan not thinke be no meanes how ye may abide hym / but me semeth it is best to take auise of 36 suche as pleaseþ you / & that the matier be shortly concluded, for the cas requireth it." The kynge perceyued that the knyghtes seide trouthe, & asked ferther this knyght was the first that spake, & answerd without tariyng, for him seemed that it was tyme, and 40

tells his
Councilthat his
father, the
King of
Spain, won't
help them;but they must
take heart.He will give
his all for his
folk.

D leaf 44]

They say the
Sultan will
attack them
at once.

seide yn this manere / "sir, the cause y presume to speke, is, for the matier requireth such haste; neuirtheles, lete eueri man sey, in dischargyng of his honour & trouthe / the best auise that he can / 4 but me semeth / if the thurke knowe you here / he wol come to besege you; and withoute any faile, if he haue good counselt, he wol do so / & if he so do / & ye abide him, ye haue no vitaile for your armee, wherfore ye may not longe holde party ayenst hym / 8 & as for feightyng / y haue seide myn aduise / seyng his folkes so moche yn comfort, & youres yn dispeire / But me thinketh that yn Feraunt ad-
vises the
King to leave
2000 men in
Size, and go
himself to
Naples. this towne, that is right stronge & wele furnysshed with ordenaunce, ye may leue a ij. M^t of good men / and a good Captayne, or 12 ij. of the moost notable of your armee / And your self, to-night or to morowe at the point of the day, to departe to Naplis, where-as the quene is, with alle the remenaunt of your company / whiche hath at this houre, y dare sey, right grete sorowe yn hir herte; and if the 16 turke came bifore hir, she is yit right febly accompayned. and yf ye go thider, ye may so wele puruay you, & so wele furnyssh the towne with men, ordenaunce & vitaile, that if the turke come bifore you he sha^H more lose than wynne / for the lenger he lith 20 ther / the more shal he spende of his good and lese of his men, & sha^H haue asmoch of youres at his goyng / as he had the first day he came. And nowe lete vs nomore trust on rescue / but put oure only trusste yn god / and y trust he sha^H helpe ¹vs bettir than we [^{¶ ff. 11, bk.}] 24 can thinke / a[n]d therfore lete not oure hertis faile vs for noon y[n]-fortune that is fallen yit / for he may socour vs whan it pleasit hym" / The knyght that spake thies wordes, was fferaunt the Senessha^H, that gladly was herkenyl of alle folkes / & gaue grete 28 corage to eche of theym / Aftir thies wordes, the kynge askid alle the remenaunt of lordes, knyghtes and squyers, of their aduise; and yn The rest of
the Council
agree. conclusioun they were of the opinion of fferaunt / & preised gretly his wit & counseH / seyng that it was tyme nowe to leue of alle 32 sorowe & lamentacion for any fortune that was befallen / & to put alle thynge yn foryetyng / sauf only to pray god for the soules of such as haue lost their lyues yn thies viage, and eueri man to calle vnto hym a desirous corage & good wille to auise to the defence & 36 keypnge of the reaume. And they in alle poyntes concluded & folowed the opinion of fferaunt / The kynge, heryng thies wordes, was right gretely recomforted & reioised of the corage that his owne suggestes yauie hym / and ordeyned fferaunt to abide yn this 40 place accompanied with ij. M^t men, such as he wolde chese / and

So Ferant
is made Cap-
tain,

chooses 2000
men (with
Prince Phi-
lip),

and places his
artillery.

The King
starts for
Naples.

[leaf 45]

The Sultan
is full with
pride,

and boasts of
the favour of
his Gods.

made hym Capteyn of them alle. fferaunt refused not, but rathir / with good herte & noble corage, right gladly toke on hym the abidyng & garde of that place / and right lightly chase oute the nombre of ij. M^t; and eche of theym bode with hym with right 4 good wile / for the grete wisdam & noble pat was yn hym / whan Le Surnome knewe that his maister abode, ther was no thinge coude make hym so glad / for he thought wele to se this towne biseged / whiche he had neuir sene to-fore, trustyng euery day to 8 do armes, whiche was the thynge he moost desired / and thought hym self wele fortuned to be yn seruyse with such a maister as fferaunt was. thus aH the nyght fferaunt leide & establisshed his ordenaunce yn the moost propre places / wher-of he was right wele 12 puruaide / And at the pointe of day came to the kynge, that than was at masse, and redy to departe / & so he toke his leue of hym and of alle his company, certifyng hym that he shold kepe that place to his power / and not departe therfro but acordyng to his 16 trouthe & his pore honour / Aftir masse, the kynge toke his leue to departe, of fferaunt and alle his company, prayng them fuH hertly that eche of them wold peyne hym to do wele, and to obeie fferaunt their Capteyne / whiche he had lefte ther as his ¹lieutenaunt, pro- 20 mysyng hem alle that, in obeyng fferaunt, he wolde con hem asmoche thanke, or more, than if it were to his owne persone. Thus departed he fro them / takyng the² wey streight to the place where as the quene was, & his daughter / and aH this while he was in 24 grete thought & drede ; neuirtheles he comforted hym in aHmighty god, in whom was aH his truse. fferaunt abode stille in the place / and be than the sonne was vp, he had delyuered euery man his charge, such as he thought them moost meete vnto / ¶ Now shalle 28 we retourne to the turke, that was on the see side, in suche pride that almoost noman durst approche hym, & wende wele to be kynge of aH the worlde / and that his renome sholde sprede ferthir than euir did Alisaundres. The night aftir the perdition of the 32 cristen Navee, he made him to be serued more rially than euir he was bifore / and aH that day abode yn his loggyng, for the fortune endured tiH it was nere noone / so aftir soper he sent for his folkes, to take a conclusion of his departing, & seide vnto them : "Sires, 36 ye se wele the grace and myracle that oure goddes haue shewed for vs this day / ye haue sene that, in turnyng of an hande / the grete pride of the cristen is ouirthrowen / and ye may wele thinke that

² MS. they.

the kynge of Sizile and alle his folkes shalle now lese corage, knowyng the myracles of oure goddes ; and their hardynesse shal falle & mynyssh / and contrary thereto, I trust oures shal encrease / for we
 4 may elerely se that oure goddes wolle helpe vs / & we may be called
 of slak corage, & vnhappy / if we wynne not yn short tyme the
 remanaunt of this reaume, that is fult ny aH oures. And it be-
 houeth vs to put peyne to the rescuse of my brother, the kynge of
 8 Peerce / that y suppose haue grete sorowe yn his herte, that he was
 not here this day / to se the miracle that oure goddes haue shewed
 for vs / wherfore lete vs put our deuoir to accomplissh the reme-
 naunt that oure goddes haue so wele begonne" / and eueri man
 12 concludid that it was tyme nowe to put hem in deuoir, and alle
 accorded yn one, that the Turke, with aH his grete might, shold
 ley sege to the towne of Size / that was wonne but late by his
 16 enemys / and he sholde wynne it as lightly ayen / & they thought
 without the kynge were there him self ; and if he were there, they
 wold trust sone to haue hym / to this conclusion helde they,
 1 trustyng that yn that place, nor yn noon othir, shold they fynde [1 ff. 45, bk.]

20 noon that night endure ayenst hem / for they thought alle their
 enemyes were discoraged / and they auised the turke to abide ther
 ij. or iij. daies, to thentent that he & alle his folkes might departe
 at their ease and leiser / whiche turned hem rather to hurte than

24 auantage / for their abidyng was to sferaunt & his folkes gretly
 available / for yn that tyme thei fortified their towne bigger than
 euir it was / for there was neither knyght ne squier but labored
 right diligently ther-yn / who had sene the labour that Surnome
 28 toke / and knowyng what he was, wold a merueled / for like as he
 past them alle yn armes / paste he them alle in labour / and that he
 did it with so good wille that alle men had ioie to beholde hym /
 Thus in litle while they were so wele fortified & assured, that they
 32 thought right longe of the Turkes comynge. [Illumin.: knights, poor men.]

Now came the day that the turke had apointed to departe.
 ye knowe wele that it is a grete daies iourney to departe
 with such a company / he went that day but a legee and a
 36 half fro thens as he lay / and sent some of his fore-riders to her-
 kene tidylnges of the kynge of Sizile & his company / and they toke
 some of the pore folkes fulle ny the garison of sferaunt / by whom
 they knewe for certayne that the kynge of Sizile was departed, and
 40 had lefste a grete garisone yn the place that he had wonne ; & they

The Sultan
says they
must rescue
his brother,
the King of
Persia,

and besiege
Size.

The Turks
dawdle for 2
or 3 days,

while Ferant
strengthens
Size.

The Turks
hear that the
King of Sicily
has gone,

purposed to kepe it, & defende it ayenst the Turke & his power /
and they tolde hem also / that as for the mysfortune of the cristen
men þat were drowned yn the see / the hardynes & wille of the

and that the
Sicilians are
confident.

men Sizilions was no thyng mynysshed, but rather encreased, for they 4
sawc wele they had noon othir comfort but god, and with his
helpe they purposed to defende them self and their goodes to their
^[leaf 46] ¹power / his knyghtes retourned ayen þat night yn-to the turkes
hoste, where they reported as they had herde & founde, & brought 8
the pore folkes that they had takyn, by-fore the turke / that herde
hem speke, and fonde yn them the same that his foreriders tolde
hym ; wherfore he purposed on the morowe to be loggid but a litle
leuge from the place that he purposed to ley sege to. That night 12

Prince Orcays asks
Prince David
who he is,
and wants
him to turn
Mahomedan.

Orcays felle in questionyng with his prisoner, & askid him his name,
& of what blode he was descendid / and what he purposed to do /
shewyng hym that by reason he ought to turne to their feithe,
seyng the gre[te] miracles that their goddes had shewed / with many 16
moo wordes / whiche were to longe to reherce / but in conclusion he
seide vnto hym / that pouerte shold not lette hym to be of their
creaunce / for if it were his pleasir to be so / he shold be most yn
faouour aboute hym of alle othir. Dauid answerd hym / and of his 20
grete bounte right humbly thanked hym / and if his wille were to
turne to othir creaunce than his predecessours had alwey holden,
the grete loue & honour of hym that hath sauad his lif / shold
rather make hym to enclyne ther-to, than any othir thinge / but he 24
was determyned yn his feithe to dye / for to suffre as grete martir-
domme as was possible any man to endure / wherfore he bisought
him to speke no more ther-of, for it sholde be in veyn / but humbly
beseching him from thensforth to helpe hym / for yn his contre he 28
was a gentilman / but at this houre he trowed there lyued not a
porer nor a more redeles / and as for his name, it was Athys / and
trustid that his fadir & moder were lyuyng, which were of full litle
power to helpe hym, or to brynge hym oute of thies daungers. whan 32
Orcays herd hym thus sey, he had grete pite of hym / & askid him
if he had any maister / or whelir his maister were dede / Athis
answerd hym / “the same to whom y obcied, was slayne euyn at
my fete there as y landid / wherof grete sorowe befelle me, & me 36
thought it grete cruelte / for he wold a yelde him to the Souldone /
that, aftir his takyng, might a done with him what he wolde / as ye
may do with me whan it pleasith you / that of your grete bounte
haue sauad me vnto this tyme.” Orcays was right sorowfull that 40

David re-
fuses;

and says
he's a poor
gentleman
named Athys.

he might not turne his prisonere to his beleue / and sawe wele that
 their company might not longe contynue, whiche greued hym right
 sore / for moche he loued hym, for that he ¹sawe hym bothe amy- [1 lf. 46, bk.]
 4 able, wise, and worthi / and bithought hym self hou he might sauе
 hym / for he knewe wele / that with them might he not abide
 without holdyng their lawe / or ellis dye / and he knewe wele that
 his fader desired gretely his dethe / & so he remembred hym of a
 8 good costom that was amonges them, whiche was alwey kepte
 amonges notable princes, and by that he was verily assertayned to
 sauе his prisoners lif / The costom was this / than whan the sone
 of a kyng or of a grete prynce had taken a prisoner, and the first
 12 that euir he toke yn his lif, what-som-euir he were worth / if he
 were not the chiefteyne of the warres / he shold horse hym &
 harneyse hym honorably, and geue hym a C. scutes / and make
 him to be surely conduyte vnto his parties / & thus thought he to
 16 do by his prisoner / for he knewe wele his fadir might not lette hym
 ther-of / for, and he did it, shold be to hym an ouir grete reproche /
 In this thought went he to his fadir, and seide vnto hym / " My
 20 lorde, ye knowe wel that by the pite y had of a cristen gentilman
 the tothir day, at the fortune that befelle them, y toke hym with
 my handes prisoner / and saued his lif / wherof ye wolde a done me
 grete wronge / yf ye had put him to dethe, contrary to my promys &
 assuraunce / whiche had be to grete a shame, if my first feith that
 24 euir y yauē yn armes, sholde a be so shamefulli broke / wherfore if
 y² were soroufuH & somwhat greued yn my mynde, ye ought to
 take no displeasir / for y knowe wele what the costom ys of alle
 reaumes here a-boute / & also of your self and of your predecessours /
 28 that whan they haue ben in suche eas, they haue delyuernerid hir first
 prisoners / & y am remembred for certayne that ye haue done the
 same yn your tyme / and y trust verrily that ye wile in no thing
 amenysshē me / & that ye haue noon othir entent / but that y may
 32 & shalt do / as they of the lyne fro whens y came haue done bifore
 me / that is, to gene leue to my prisoner / and to araiē hym as y
 ought / with this / to make hym to be surely conduyte vnto the
 cristen folkes; and hereof humbly y beseche you /" The Turke,
 36 herynge his sone speke yn suche wise, coude hym yn his herte fuH
 grete thanke / & knewe wele that, by reason & honour, his request
 might not be denyed / albe-it that of this delyueraunce his hert yauē
 hym right ille, for-asmoche as he had sene hym do so moche yn

Prince Orcays recollects the custom that,

when a prince takes his first prisoner,

he may equip him and set him free.

So he asks his father, the Sultan,

to let him free his prisoner, Prince Da-
vid.

The Sultan
agrees.

[¹ leaf 47]

Prince Or-
cays tells
Prince Da-
vid, and asks
him where
he'll go.

David says,
to Size,

and its com-
mander,
Ferant.

So Prince Or-
cays equips
David,

[² lf. 47, bk.]

and tells the
Sultan all
about it.

armes. Neuir^ltheles he agreed to the request of his sone / and bade hym yet assay to conuerte the cristen man vnto their lawe. His sone saide / þat so he had done / but in no wise he wold be agreeable thereto. Thus departed he from his fadir / & wente to his 4 prisoner, and tolde him alle howe he had downe with his fadir / and that a conclusion was takyn that he shold departe on the morowe, wherfore he wold wite whider he wolde go / either to the kynge of Sizile or elliswhere / for whider that euir he wolde / he wolde 8 puruay him to be surely conduyte / and tolde hym that on the morowe they alle sholde departe to ley sege to a cristen place, that but little bifore was conquered on his fadir / and tolde him hou it was not stronge, wherfore it might no while be kepte ayenst hem. 12 when Athis herde thies tidynges, that ther was a cristen place so nygħi, that sone sholde be biseged / yif he were glad, it is no demaunde / and aftir the thankynges that he made vn-to Orcays his maister / as right wise & wele aduised, & as he that coude aH 16 honour / he saide vnto hym / that for no thlynge wolde he go ferthir than to the next place, not shewyng no semblaunt that it was of any desire to be yn the warres, but for drede to be ferre conduyte / and for periles that might ensue therof / and he enquerid 20 of Orcays who was withyn that place / he answerd, "that it was one fferaunt, the Seneshall of Sizile, that was there" / Assone as Athis herde hym named / he knewe wele that it was the same with whom the Valiaunt man dwelled, that he had herde so moche speke 24 of / and if his wille were bifore to go vnto that place / it was more now by a C. part / Orcays his maister, of good wille counseiled hym to the contrary, seyng / "my frende, this place may not endure ayenst oure power / and if ye taken wit-yn it / y know, my lord, 28 my fadir is such a man that aH the worlde may not sau you / wherfore y counseile you to drawe to som other parte / and drede not, but y shalt se you to be surely conduyte." But for no thyng that Orcays coude sey / coude he meve Athis from his opinion, 32 wherof he was right sorry. Then he yauē hym the best hors that he had, and the harneys that he was armyd yn hym-self / whiche was at that tyme as good & as faire as any myght be / and yauē him an C. floreyns / & concluded that on the morow, when they 36 came to their loggynges, ²he wolde sende hym surely conduyte to the towne. Than tolde he his fadir thentent of his prisoner / by the whiche purpose he ymagyned more & more, that yn this man shold be right grete honour and corageous wille / nertheles, sith he 40

had promysed his sone, he wolde not breke his promes, but was agreeable to that his sone had ordeyned / and on the morowe they departed, and came withyn litle while to the towne / and than

4 Orcais called his prisoner, and saide vnto hym / “Athis, my frende, the tyme is come now of oure departyng / but, & my company were asmoche desired of you / as youres is of me / it sholde be harde to make the departyng / nertheles, y had leuer we sholde

8 departe, than my fadir shold put you to dethe / se yondir the cristene towne that my fadir entendith to ley sege to / but y pray you, go not thider / & y vndirtake ye shalt be saufly brought whidir euir ye wile ellis / but y know wele, and ye go thider, ye may neuir

12 departe thens withoute dethe.” Athis answerd then, & seide, “my lorde, y betake me vnto the garde of hym that hath brought me here; and sith that it pleasith you to do me this grace, to yeue me leue, I beseche you that y may be conduyte to yondir place” /

16 Orcays toke him forth with him, & brought him to his fadir / to take his leue of him, al armed as he was. The turke was at that tyme out of his tente, accompanied by many prynces / he sawe his sone bryngyngh his prisoner, & seide to theym / “se, my sone,

20 how grete desire he hath to delyuer this man / and he hath right / but al-wey my herte yeueth me ill ther-of” / and some of theym seide / “my lord, what may o man do by his delyueraunce / little harme may growe ther-of” / and at this wordes approched Orcays /

24 and seide vnto his fadir, al smylyng / “my lorde, y haue brought you this cristien to take his leue / thus abiled as ye se / & yif I might haue bettir apoynted hym, y wolde with al my herte.” The prisoner alight, & toke his leue at the Turke & alle the company

28 that was ther / & humbly thanked Orcays his maister / prayng god to yeue him grace to do some seruise to his pleasir, sauyngh his feith / and thus departed he, accompanied by many herowdes of armes purceauntes, that brought hym to the barres where fferaunt

32 was, & desired to speke with him / & saide vnto hym in this wise, “My lorde! Orcais, sone to the Turke, oure souerayn lord, at this last auenture that befelle vpone the cristien by a vesseH that brake,

¹ some of theym came to Londe, amonge whiche this was one / &

36 taken by the handes of the said Orcais; & mo was ther not saued / And yn asmoche as this is his first prise, that by reason & for his honour he wolt not withholde / he hath sende hym you hider yn such cas as ye se hyt / certifiyng you, that from hensforth he hath

40 done his deuoir / if any mo fal yn his handes.” fferaunt, heryng

Prince Orcays is loth to part with Prince David.

The Sultan's heart mis-
gives him.

But David
is taken to
Sise, where
Ferant is.

[1 leaf 48]

the heraudes speke, knewe wele that yn suche cas euery prynce or
grete estate doth the same, and seide vnto the heraudes / “ Oreais,
your maister, hath done his deuoir / & hath right wele, and honor-
ably aquyte hym. and nowe may ye withdrawe you whan it pleasest 4
you”; and commaundid wyne, & made them drynke, and did them
alt the chere that he coude / and askid them whedir þey shold sone
be biseged / the heraudes answerd / “ ye may se grete liklighodes.”
& more seide they not / for at that tyme they were seruauntes com- 8
mitted, aswele for on part as for othir, saue for their feith / Aftir
the departyng of the heraudes, Athys entird yn-to the towne / ther
was none acostomed so moche to honour and chere to straungers as

*Prince David
enters Sizie,*

*and is wel-
comed by
Prince Phi-
lip :*

*Like to like,
they become
fast friends.*

Le Surname ; and he made him to be brought to his loggyng / & 12
made him to be vnarmyd & wele loggid / & wente to se him / and
whan he saw him vnarmyd / he saw him so goodly a man & so
personable, and yn alle his wordes so wele assured, that he had grete
ioie of hym / thus eueri thinge sekith his semblable / for he that was 16
a kynges sone had grete fauour & loue to the kynge of Scottes sone /
and suche loue felt bitwene them, that alwey aftir endured / and he
loggid him with himself / and parted with him such goode as he
had / and neuir varied they yn wille or opinion / neuirthelles Athys 20
alwey put hym to grete honour, & concludid verily yn his herte,
that neuir to no man wolde he discouere what he was, but tolde
euery man that he was a pore gentilmannes sone of Scotlande. that
night he was brought to fferaunt / whiche questioned him of the 24
manere of takyng of hym / and the fortune that was befallen them
yn the see / & he tolde him alt the trouthe / and he askid hym
specialy of the knyghtes of Sizile that the kyng had sente / & he
seide he knewe not what was befallen of them / than were they 28
sore bemoned of fferaunt and alt his company / for they were fult
notable men / than praidie they hym to telle them the trouthe of his
takyng / and so he did / sauyng of his owne noblesse, he spake not /

[¹ lf. 48, bk.]

*Prince David
tells of his
capture, and
his fellows'
death.*

but seide / “ had not be the grace of god that he was taken by the 32
turkes sone, he had be put to dethe as alle othir were, for there was
none that escape a lyue but he ” / eueri man that herde him reherce
his auenture, thought he had grete fortune / and thought he might
not faile to be a man of right grete honour. fferaunt was right 36
ioifull of hym / and also that Surname hadde takyne hym yn-to
his company / wherof he coude him right goode thanke. the night
came / and euery man drewe hym to reste aftir the Vacche was set /
and yn the morowe betymes, euery man aroos, and herde masse / 40

and armed hem / for they knewe wele / that day the sege sholde come / wherfore they were alle redy to abide suche fortune as sholde besalle them / for they knewe wele that the Turke had sworne to
 4 take that place with assaute / and to do by them as the kynge of Siziles folkes did by his / but god of his grace had othirwise puruaide / for a grete parte of his pride was abated bifore that place. ¶ Now came the day, and the hoste of the turkes, with
 8 grete sowne & noise of taberynes & beaumes / they departed at The Turks
advance in
3 battalions. sonne risyng in iij. bataills right wel ordeyned / and diuided theym selfe yn thre parties, and delyuered the charge of the tone partie to Orcais his sone / and the tothir to his Constable / and the iij^{de}. to
 12 him self / and thus alle raungid & set, euery to the place that he sholde abide yn for that day / for they durst not come ny for gunnes / but they thought, whan the night was derke, to come nere / & to establissh their sege / fferaunt, seyng the conduyte of his
 16 enemyes, had the yates shut, without suffryng any man to go oute, Ferant keeps
his men in
reserve. & made no semblaunt of warre, for this cause / that the turke & his
 hoste sholde haue more hardynes to come nere ; and so did they / euery man came to his place apointed, & did their deuoir to dresse
 20 vp their loggynges, whiche were a good wey a-sundir / for eche of the iij. bataills were loggid by them self. The Turke, seyng no semblaunce of warre of them yn the towne / toke suche a company as pleasid hym, and went to his sone / to se the maner of his
 24 loggyng & of his gouernaunce. fferaunt, espiyng hym ther / The Sultan
goes to see
his son's encampment. whiche was a man of meruailous witte & prowesse, seide to his folkes / " Me semeth / seyng the besynesse that oure enemys haue to logge them / and that we be loggid at auantage, we ought to visite
 28 them, and to go se them a litle ner / for it semeth than that here is nobody / but they shalle haue knowlage that there is " / euery ¹man [1 leaf 49] that herde this seyng was anoon horsed. And fferaunt ordeyned / that ther shold go yn his company but .v. C. ; & an othir feliship
 32 sholde be redy to releue them, if nede were / and at that yate they roode oute, he ordeyned an othir feliship with grete ordenaunce of smale gownes / that if cas be / that they were dryuen to the yates ayen / as it might fu^H wele happen them / with the grete company /
 36 that their enemyes had, that then they shold leuelle & shote alle at ones / lest their enemyes shold come to ny / And longe bifore was no towne bettir garnysshed than that was. This ordenaunce thus made / the yates were opende / and they wente out at that yate
 40 that was bifore Oreays / and the first that wente oute was Surnome,

and Prince
David.

They kill
many Turks.

More Turkish
troops come
up, and drive
the Chris-
tians back.

Prince David
takes Prince
Orcays pri-
soner.

[1 lf. 49, bk.]

The Turks
press on to
the gates of
Sizre,

and are
thrown into
disorder by
the Christian
fire, which
destroys
many of
them.

& Athys, that grete desire had to folowe hym, & to se the meruailes yn Armes þat he hade herde speke of hym. so rode they forth as fast as their horses might renne / tilt they came to their enemys / at their first comyng, they slewe many / and mighty set vpon the 4 Turke, that was come thider to se his sone / but he and the moost part of his company withdrew them aswele as they might / whiche, as ye knowe wele, might not be done without grete losse & damage to the Turke & his company / for there were moo slayn of them by 8 double / than they were that assailed them / the crie aroos on alle parties, and euer man assembled and drewe to the Turke & his sone / & than were they so bigge, that by force they made oure folkes to withdrawe to the remenaunt of their company that helde 12 them to gedir / Orcays, that was yonge & corageous, came byfore alle othir / and knewe anoon his prisoner that was with Surnome, whiche ij. were the laste that withdrew them / he ranne so ny that they ioynd to gedir. Surnome, seyng his felawe in daungre, 16 cam for to socoure hym / but there were so many folowyng Orcais / that, had not their good maister feraunt a bene, they had neuir retourned yn-to the towne / but he, seyng his ij. seruauntes in suche daunger amonges so grete a nombre of the turkes, with alle his feli- 20 ship, at ones encountird them so vigorously, that he made them to withdrawe more than the draught of an arowe. In this recountre was takyn Orcais by the handes of Athis / and many moo prisoners were ther takyne without nombre. The Turke sawe & knewe for 24 trouthe his sone to be takyn / with the handes of hym that the night afore he had delyuerner / the crie & the noise was so grete yn the turkes hoste, that he might not haue herde a thondre, & they resorted ayen ¹so fast / that by force they made the cristen to with- 28 drawe ayen yn-to the towne / that were folowed vnto the yatis, which were sone closed / and anoon alle the ordenaunce & Arthery were shotted at ones amonges their enemyes / whiche were so thikke assembled, þer might not faile to be hurte & slayne many of them / 32 whiche brought them alle out of aray / for there were so many slayne & hurte, that it was meruaile / for they stynted not, but leide on them with ordenaunce so sore / that the turkes wist not what to do / feraunt seyng them alle out of aray, made the yates to be 36 opened ayen, & made a newe scarmysh on theym a foote / at whiche tyme he did grete hurte to the turke and his folkes / that neuir sith were they so hardy to come so ny the towne. The cristen did so moche that they retourned pesibly ayen to the towne, & there 40

were that day so many prisoners taken, þat men might not knowe
 one fro an oþir / But Athis knewe full wele his prisoner / and
 what he had done for hym / and knewe wele also that it shold not
 4 ly yn his power to delyuer hym / and he were ones knownen. wher-
 fore, of fre and honorable corage, he brought hym outh of the towne
 by an oþir yate / and seide vnto hym, "Orcais! ye haue sauued my Prince David
 lif / and it is reason therfore that I deliuere you now, & soone, or
 8 elles shaþt it neuir lye in my power. I can no bettir arme you than
 ye be / nor bettir horse you / wherfore y geue your hors & your
 harneys, that is myn be right. I pray god to conduyte you outh of
 alle daungers / and now, sauue your self, for it is tyme." Thus lete quietly lets
 12 he his prisoner go so couerly, that noman perceyued it / and came Prince Orcays
 ageyn yn-to the towne, where he founde his felawe Surnome, that
 was full sory that he wist not where he was / and whan he sawe
 hym come, he made him grete chere / and askid hym where his
 16 prisoner was / and he seide, that at the last encoutryng / he was and lies to
 slain. Surnome billeued hym wele y-nough / for there were many Prince Philip
 slain, aswele prisoners as oþir. ¶ Now retourne y to the Turke,
 that, aftir this auenture that was full damageous vnto hym, he
 20 lefte good gardes yn his sones hoste, and wente ayen hym self vnto
 his tentes, where he was serued with many knyghtes & squyers /
 that al that while had kepte stille his loggyng / and at his comyng,
 askid hym tidynges; & he tolde them the dolorous fortune that this
 24 day was befallen hym / as to haue lost his sone, & grete part of his
 people / and of the best / wherof he named grete nombre of hy and [1 leaf 50]
 noble estates and valiaunt knyghtes / after this he seide to theym,
 "ye sawe wele that my herte coude not assente to the delyuerance The Sultan
 28 of my sones prisoner / and it was not without a resone, for y sawe becaus the
 hym this day take my sone prisoner; and aftir he had ones capture of his
 conquered hym, he wold not leue hym nor fauour hym, for y sawe
 hym lede hym towarde the towne / and yit y know not whedir at
 32 the last encountre my sone were slayne or not / or if he be yn the
 towne / nor how it is with hym." & amonge, thies wordes he seide
 to them / that "there was neuir houre sith y sawe this eristen man
 first / but that my herte tolde me that by hym I sholde haue grete
 36 damage; and so tolde y my sone alwey / and now hath he founde it."

As they were in this talkyng, euery man makynge doule, came
 a mañ vnto the pauylion, and seide vnto the Turke / "sir, but then
 my lorde your sone, ys sauf / for as me thought y sawe him
 40 come alone from the towne" / The turke went out / and by then
 hears tidings of his safety.

his sone was almoost at him / whiche a-light assone as he sawe
 hym / & came to hym, & comforted hym aswele as he coude, aftir
 his grete daungere / the Turke seide, " my sone, this auenture that
 ye haue had to day, & y had ben billeued, had not befallen you / 4
 for yn this partic ye are cause of oure losse / for whan ye were
 takyne, to haue rescowed you, this grete herte is befall me " /
 " truly, sir," quoth Orcays, " that y haue done, y holde for no grete
 dede / for the sone of a mighti kynge hath delyuerd a felaw that 8
 he knew not / which hath not ben scars, nor of so pore corage / but
 that he hath wele to his knowlage delyuerd the sone of the grettist
 kynge that leuyth " / Than tolde he his fadir the maner of Athys /
 and the wordes that he had seide / and how he had delyuerd hym 12
 frely / & had put him self in iubarde of his lif, if it were knownen ;
 " thus haue y do no thyng for hym, yn regarde to that he hath done
 for me " / the Turke, heryng his sone reherse the grete bounte of
 Athys, more & more in corage dredde hym, and seide / " yn a man of 16
 pore condicion ne might be so grete vertu ; and alwey more & more
 me thinketh he shold do vs harme. Nertheles, what-som-euir be-
 fall, he is a man of hy & noble corage " / than comforted he him
 aswele as he might / aftir this sharpe fortune & annoy, seyng the 20
 recouerir of his sone, he made to fortifie his sege, and made stronge
 wacche / for he sawe wele ¹that he had to do with valiaunt folkes.
 Nowe shal we leue to speke of the sege / and of alle the warres of
 Sizile, & retourne to speke of the kynges sone of Englond, that 24
 conduyte thus, as ye shaſſ here.

Prince Orcays tells the Sultan

how Prince David set him free.

The Sultan fears Prince David,

and strengthens his own force.

[¹ ff. 50, bk.]

Prince Humphrey of England

laments the Allies' losses in Sicily;

but the King, his father, will not let him go there.

IT is trouthe, that, as ye haue herde, the kyng of Englond had
 a sone named Humfray, faire, wise, and right wele condicioned /
 for as y haue seide you here-to-fore / the kynges made their 28
 children yn youthe to be norisshed by notable folkes & wele con-
 dicioned / This yonge Humfray, aftir the discomfiture and harde
 auenture that the cristen had vpon the see yn Sizile / helde the
 reaume as lost, wheroft he had as grete sorowe yn parte, as alle his 32
 frendes had ben destroied / and thought wele that the cristen put
 hem not yn suche deuoir as they shold / and many tymes he seide
 to his fadir / that "it was grete pite to se thus cristendome
 destroied" / The kyng anoon vndirstode wele for what entente he 36
 seide it / but for no thinge wolde he sende him forth / he toke
 ensaumple of the kyng of Scottes, that was yn suche sorowe for
 his sone, of whom he coude here no worde, that noman might
 recomforthe hym ; and therfore the pore Humfray lost his tyme to 40

speke therof / and whan he sy he might haue non othir comfort of his fadir / he remembred hou the kynge of ffraunce had loste his sone / & thought he wolde secretly breke with the feliship that 4 were aboute him / as the sones of grete prynces and othir grete lordes / that in their youthe had be norisshed with hym / and if he might fynde any of his accorde / he wold departe from his fadir, & drawe to Sizile ; for he thought wele / and he were ones there / and 8 his fadir knewe ther-of, that for no thyng he wold leue hym yn daunger / but rather sende thider folkes to accompany him / whiche might be grete socour and helpe to the kynge of Sizile / and in this thought was he longe tyme or he durst discouer it pleynly to any of 12 his seruauntes. So fortuned, vpone a day he stode at a wyndowe, passyng trist & pensif / and the Erle of warwikes eldest sone was there / that long tyme of youthe had be brought vp with hym / so he came to him and seide, "my lorde ! sauyng your displeasir, me

16 thinketh that now of late y haue sene you more pensif & malyn-
colious than euir ye were before / and as me ought yn this wise, y shewe you the trouthe, that many folkes withdrawe them out of this courte / and be right sorowfull to se you in this cas ; ¹for by

20 youre Lustynes, & Liberalite & frendly manere, eueri man desired to ycue you attendaunce, and to be accompanied aboue your persone / and now they se you of right mate & heuy chere / and if they come aboue you, ye make vnto them fulf litel countenaunce, or 24 noon, whiche they haue not ben acostomed to ; Wherfore they haue

the grettir mieruaile / and thus departe they all abassed and sorow-
fulle, to remembre how ye ar turned so ferre from that they lefte
you / and there is noon that moost desire to do you seruise, but 28 that they are annoyed to se you so / ye knowe wele, my lorde, y say trouthe / for here were many noble men that were right glad to do you seruyse at their owne coste & charge that nowe be departed.

And this courte is sore amenyssed of noble men / and alle by you / I

32 biseche you, my lorde, pardone me of thies thynges y haue shewed
you / for y can yn no wise hide fro you / that haue brought me vp /
any thinge that y se or here, that shold be to your charge, or
amenyssyng of your grete loos & renome / that of your age hath
36 largely be spred thorugh the worlde" / Thus yong Humfray / hering
thies wordes of this yong sone of warwik / knewe wele that of good
herte, & feithfull loue & seruise, he seide thies vnto hym / and
thought wele he seide trouthe ; and forthwith the teres felle from

40 his yen / wherby this yonge gentilman pereeyued wele that his ^{This makes} _{Humphrey} weep.

Prince Hum-
phrey re-
solves to start
for Sicily, if
he can find
friends to go
with him.

The Earl of
Warwick's
son re-
proaches
Prince Hum-
phrey for
his melan-
choly,

[1 leaf 51]

which has
driven young
nobles from
Court.

maister might not wele speke / the sorow strayned so sore his
 herte / than seide he / "my lorde! y se wele that there is som
 thinge yn your herte that sore annoieth you / or displeasith you /
 and .I. wote not whethir ye haue or wilt discouer it to any aboute 4
 you / but y say for me, if y knewe any thyng that were to your
 annoy or displeasir / and it were possible my seruise to remedy it /
 y shal auenture my body and lif to accomplishe it / neuirtheles y
 desire to knowe of youre secretes no ferthir than pleasith you y 8
 sholde knowe / but whan my seruyse may please you ye shalt fynde
 it redy, without any Demaunde reseruyng / al-only the kyng, & my
 pore lorde, my fadir." whan Humfray had herde his seruaunt &
 kynnesman thus sey vnto hym / and offrid his body and goodes for 12
 him / thought wele yn him self that he might trust hym, & seide
 vnto him, "ye haue be norissh vp with me / and y trust certainly
 that my wele, myn honour, and preferment, ye wolde as moche as
 any man that longith to my fadir or me; and for this y am con- 16
 [¶ lf. 51, bk.] cluded yn my thought to ¹discouer vnto you myn entent / and
 notwithstandinge ye haue be brought vp with me of childehode /
 and that y haue alwey loued you wele, yit wolt y haue an othe of
 you / and what othe y shalt say you / if that y shalt disclose vnto 20
 you, please you not / nor that ye wiff assente and agree ther-to /
 that neuir, daies of your lif, it shal be opend or disclosed by you /
 and this shalt ye promyse me" / and he answerd him / "my lorde,
 y wolt wele / for y had leuer dy than euir y shold discouer thinge 24
 that ye commaunde me to kepe" / and here on yane his trouthe /
 and then he shewid his sorowe in this wise / ¶ "It is so that ye
 haue, dyuerse tymes & many, herde speke of the right grete pite &
 destrucion / that euery day befalleth to the kynge of Sizile / that 28
 is a kynge of ful grete honour, whiche is a grete amenysshment to
 alle cristendome, & shame to alle cristen kynges that haue their
 reaumes in pees / and he hath a daughter, of whom the renome of
 al honour is spred through al the worlde / and the kynge, hir 32
 fadir, might haue pees / if he wolde mary hir among the mys-
 creauntes / but he had leuer dy / and þe destrucion of hym & of
 his doughtir bothe / than euir, daies of his lif, he wold consent
 ther-to / ye may wele se that this cometh of a stable herte / grete 36
 which danger drede & loue of god / ye knowe the socours that by the kynge of
 his Allies ffrance / my lorde,² my fadir / and the kynge of Scottes, hath be
 have not relieved him from, done to him / whiche no thing hath profite him / but to him a grete

² MS. my lorde my lorde.

hurte / for his folkes are gretly discouraged ther-by / for, as y vndir-
 stonde, bifore this comyng, one of them was worth .vj. turkes / and
 nowe y se noman that dressith to any socours of the seide kynge /
 4 but they thinke they haue done y-nough. I haue many tymes ^{I've talkt to my Father,}
 moued my lorde my fadir, heryn, that litle hede takith to my
 wordes, but rathir thinkith my speche ys chyldissh & folie /
 thus for certayn y holde this good kynge / his fair doughtir and his
 8 reaume, lost / and for that me thinkith that euery noble man sholde
 be sorowfull of so grete a losse / y can in no wise make good chere /
 and this is the principall cause of my sorowe / And y thynke werrily
 if y might gete thider / the noble suggestes & seruauntes of this
 12 reaume shold can me no maugre / and wolde god that euery man
 wold employ hym therto / and that the kynge were agreeable to
 sende me yn this viage / but that wol he not, for no thyng, y knowe
 for cer'tayne / notwithstanding a^H my speche vnto hym / & also ^[1 leaf 52]
 16 the grete losse that but late is fallen to them that were sent to the
 socours / But y sha^Ht telle you more playnly myn entente, suche ^{But I mean}
 promyse as ye haue made me / for ye be one of them that y haue
 most affiaunce yn / and also y knowe you wele assured, and wise y-
 20 nough to conduyte an² hy matier, if it please you / wherfore y pray
 with a^H my herte in especia^H, that ye wi^Ht assente to my desire
 with-oute breking it / and helpe me to execute it / and here nowe
 what y haue thought / I knowe wele, as y haue seide, that for
 24 no thinge, my lorde, nor alle they of his reaume, fro the grettist
 estate to the porest degré, ne wol not consente that y shold departe
 so ferre fro them / but a^H that sha^Ht not restrayne me / if y may
 haue the power, & any that will helpe to conduyte me in this
 28 werke, y shalt departe oute of this reaume right honestly acom- ^{to go to}
 payned, not as a kynge, but as a knyght / and for this y haue goode
 y-nough, & garnyssh wele y-nough / And y wold that "yn the name
 of som othir than of me, at som port in this reaume, fer fro this ^{Sicily.}
 32 towne, a good ship were ordeyned, wele tak-lee & vitailed, whichie
 sholde alwey be redy to departe / without houre or tyme apoynted /
 and abide there oure comyng; and yn the meane tyme, to ij. or iiij.
 of my speciaalle seruauntes & kynnesmen, & othir that haue be
 36 norisshed vp with me / vpon an othe y sha^Ht discouer myn entente /
 & y trust that at leste y sha^Ht be accompanayned with xvij. or a xx^{ti}. ^{and then I,}
 noble men / and euery man, one seruaunt with him / and at suche ^{with 16 or 20 noblemen,}
 tyme as alt shalt be redy / y shalt depart at euen out of this towne,

² MS. and

will some day that by the mornyng, if y be myssed / y shalbe to fer to be ouirtaken
go aboard and sail to Sicily, or we come to the port / and then wolt y streight to shipe / and
go vnto the Reaume of Sizile / and whan y am onys ther / y shalt
lete my lorde, my fadir, haue knowlage therof / and what causes haue 4
meued me / and y am sure whan thoos tidynges come to his know-
lage / he, and alle they of his reame, wol be right wele content to
sende suche company vnto me as may be for his honour / whiche
shalbe a grete recomforte to the reaume of Sizile / and þis be cause 8
of my goyng ; & by þis may I trust to wynne the loue of god, and
honour / without hauyng shame ; but this can y, nor may, do with-
out helpe / wherfore, myn owne cousyn & frende, I pray you teſſ
[l. lf. 52, bk.] me, heryn as ye thinke" / This yong sone of ¹warwikk heryng his 12
maister thus speke, was not so yong / but that he thought yn his
corage, that this mocion came of grete honour and gentilnes of herte.
and thus he answerd hym / "my lorde, this matier that ye meue,
procedith of an hy & noble corage / a[n]d also the mater is right grete / 16
and y alone, & but yonge / & notwithstanding, your wordes gretly
reioise me / yit dare y geue you noon other counſel than this that
y shalt sey / ye haue of yong men, thankid be god, that of their
age be right wise & discrete, & that wil be trewe vnto you as longe 20
as god wol geue them lif / ye may calle vn-to you iij. or iiij. of
them that ye thinke be moost propre to guyde this mater / and if
it please you, y wolbe with them / and what-so-euer shalt then be
concluded / and ye commaunde me to execute it, y shalt do my 24
deuoir to the vtterist of my power / and thinke neuir, sir / that,
daies of my lif, this that it hath pleased you to seye to me, shall be
opende by me to no lyuyng creature / for y knowe wele the grete
affectione, trust, and fauour, that ye shewede me, discoueryng this 28
matier that is most secrete in your herte / wherof, right humbly y
thanke your good grace / and as for my body, & alle the goodes that
y haue, if my pore company may plese you, aftir ye haue takyn a
ferme conclusion, [I] shall be redy to do you seruise as long as my 32
lif may endure" / his maister thankid him right hertily / & thought
his auise good / and on the morow full erly was steryng, sent for
suche as he wold haue / to whom he had grettist affiaunce / and
without long taryng, to abregge the matier / yn like wise as he had 36
broken to the erle of warrewikes sone, of his entente / so did he to
them that he had sent for / whiche, anoon as they herde his pleasir,
object at first, thought the matier right straunge / and seide vnto him / "that yf
they shold accompany hym yn this matier, they knewe for certayne 40

which I hope
to aid, and
also win
honour.

Will you
help?

[l. lf. 52, bk.] me, heryn as ye thinke" / This yong sone of ¹warwikk heryng his 12
maister thus speke, was not so yong / but that he thought yn his
corage, that this mocion came of grete honour and gentilnes of herte.

Lord War-
wick's son
advises
Prince Hum-
phrey

to get 3 or 4
friends to
manage the
matter,

and he will
help.

The Prince's
friends

that they durst neuir retourne to this reaume ayen / for the kynge his fadir / and that their owne fadirs wolde be the first that sholde destroie them" / and also they seide, "my lorde, whan ye come to
 4 the age of more knowlage, & haue childef, as my lorde your fadir hath / ye wolde neuir haue loue ne fauour vnto vs / but thinke that we shold be as agreeable to begnyle you of your children, as we sholde be nowe agreeable to beguyle my lord your fadir, of you,
 8 where-thorugh ye shold haue vs alwey yn hate / & mystrut" / But no[t]withstandyng alle thies wordes, he seide to them / "my
 12 frendes, doute ¹not but, in conclusion, this matier shalbe reputed to [leaf 53]
 but he
 answers their
 arguments,
 youre Honour and preise / bothe of my lorde my fadir, and of alle
 16 your frendes / for whan they here where we shalbe, there shalbe fewe yn this londe, þat haue any sone of age to bere armes / but that they shal wille they were with vs / and as for me, y shold be the moost wrecche yn erthe / if ye that haue fadirs & modirs, kynne
 20 & frendes / and grete possessions yn this reaume / which ye shold leue for the loue of me, if y sholde hate you / god neuir be pleased to geue me lif so longe / but shortly to ende it / ffor if god geue vs grace to acheue & brynge our entirprise to good conclusion / y
 24 shold be full vntrewe & right vnkynde / if euer y failed any of you, daies of my lif" / many wordes were amonges them / but at last alle
 to-gedir concludid to do & accomplishish the pleasir of their maister /
 not yn so grete nombre as they wolde haue had, for fere it sholde
 28 be knownen and discouerd / But now euery man toke his charge,
 some to ordeyne a ship & the vitailyng / some to puruay good
 horsis / and to bryng them to suche secrete places where as they
 might be dayly coursed & renne ; som puruaide for gold & siluer &
 32 for þarneys, and som for aray / so that ther lakked no thyng
 longing vnto them for a grete while / Aftir this, was eueri thing puruaide and so wele guyded / that by the day they apoynted / alle
 36 thyng was redy ther, without knowyng of any persone saue of them that delt ther-with. ¶ Now fro this day forth was Humfray of bettir chere then he had ben longe before, wherof eueri man had grete ioie, for they had ben yn sore discomfort for his sadnes / but
 40 no man durst make no questione. The tyme approched of his
 departyng ; he made iustis & turneys, and assembled his ladies and
 gentilwomen / & did so moche, that alle folkes than had more ioie of him than euir they had / thus beloued of the kynge & of alle the
 44 iij. estates of the reaume, departid this yonge gentilman out of his

and at last
 all agree to
 do as he
 wishes.

Some get the
 ship, others
 procure
 money,

and by the
 day appointed
 all is ready.

One mid-night Prince Humphrey leaves his Father's house, and goes to his ship.
[l. 53, bk.]

fadirs house aboute midnight / so secretly that he was vnperceyued / and rode so that night, that it was not possible to ouirtake him / thus, withoute makynge lenger tale, he came to the port ther as the ship abode him / and they that had the charge therof / and assone 4 as he came ther / he & his fe¹Liship in alle Haste possible entrid ther-yn, which, whan they were there, were yn nombre xvij.

They set sail. persones / of gentilmen and other. then made they to pulle vp the saile, & were withyn litle while withoute sight of the londe. 8

TNow goth Humfray and his company / god by his grace conduyte them / for they be fult ferre from their entent. The kynge of Englond, on the morowe that his sone was departed, herde thorugh his court grete noise & murmour, & askid what it myght be; but 12 noon ther was that wold or durst telle it hym / neuirthelles at laste he most knowe it / and so came his counsell to enfourme hym ther-of, and seide vnto him / "sir, it behoueth that ye knowe wherfore we are come to you / to-day be comen vnto vs many of the seruauntes 16 of my lordes youre sone / that for certayn knowe not where he is / for they haue ben at his chambre, & founde it open / and he not ther-yn / his chambrelayn yn like wise, & suche as were moost aboute hym / nor wote not where they are / for the seruauntes of 20 diuerse of them be come to vs & sey that they haue lost their maistres / thus for drede that it shold falle vnto you as it did to the kynge of ffraunce, we be come to enforme you ther-of / assone as we mysse hym / for we wote not yif ye knowe where he is or no." 24

The kynge of Englond, heryng this, knewe anoon for certayne that his sone was goon / and thought wele that he had takyn the wey to Sizile / consideryng the wordes that he at diuerse tymes had seide vnto him / and then he made diligently to seche thorugh all 28 his reaume / and whan he sawe that he might haue no tidynges of hym / he determinyd to sende notable folkes yn-to Sizile / for to knowe and enquire if any tidynges might be had ther of hym / It is to thinke / that the kynge was yn grete sorowe / & not without 32 cause / for he had no moo sonys; and if he had sorowe, ye may wele thinke þat þe quene & hir ij. doughters were not withoute / for they had suche sorow that alle folke had grete pite of them / this sorowe was not alone yn the kynges court / but the fadirs & moders, kynne 36 & frendes of the yonge lordes that were gone with hym had their parte yn like wise / & so had the surpluis of alle the reaume, & had grete drede lest the losse were withoute recoverir / as that of ffraunce had ben. **T**Now shal we leue of this grete sorowe that they made, 40

told that the Prince's room is empty:

so he knows his son has gone to Sicily.

The King grieves greatly.

& not withoute cause / for moche trouble had they that thus ¹were [1 leaf 54] departid / and ye shalt here the manere Howe. ¶ Whan Humfray and his folkes were in the see withoute the sight of any Londe of the reaume of Englund, they toke their wey towarde Sizile / and had connynge maryners to conduyte them, & faire wedir at wille / so that withyu litle while they might haue aryued in Sizile, ne had ben the fortune & tempest of the see, that neuir is sure / ffor on a day bifelle grete tempest in the see / so that the vesselt that they were yn was many tymes yn daunger to be perisshed / yn-so-moche that the maryners coude no remedy, but alſt only yn the handes of god, & lete the vesselt dryue with the wawes and the wynde, ^{A tempest rises;} ^{the ship drives;} 12 whedir as god wold conduyte it. Humfray and alle his company were in orisons and praier *with* grete deuocion, hauyng no hope but of dethe / and yn the meane while one of the maryners perceyued londe that they were ny vnto / but he knewe not the contre, for he 16 had neuir be ther / so he wente to Humfray / and to the maister maryner / and tolde it theym / whiche made grete ioie / for when they were so ny the londe, the tempest was not so rageous as it had ben in the playne see / sone aftir they aryued at londe without any 20 hurte / and it was nye a grete towne that helde of the turke that was in Sizile / and they went oute yn vessels & botes, & came to this shipe / and founde it garnysshht *with* cristen men / and when they sawe thies yonge folkes, and the good that was *with* them, they 24 were right ioiefult, and brought their prise to the towne, and departed their botee / and for it thought them a eas of nouelte / they sente ^{and given away as prisoners.} presents to their neighebors of the cristen prisoners, so that they lefte *with* them but ij., wheroft that one was Humfray / and thus 28 was thys company disseuerd / Humfray was put yn a derke prisone, ^{Prince Humfray is put in a dungeon.} and his felawe *with* hym / whiche sone aftir died / and he abode ther alſt alone, where he endured moche payne & trouble / alle oþer than he wende to fynde whan he departed oute of Englund / and 32 pitously he complayned him to god / besechyg hym humbly that this payne & prison that he was yn / might stande for part of his purgatory / for he wende neuir to escaped thens / but oure lord, that knewe the cause of his departyng / and that he was abandoned 36 for his seruise, put him not yn foryetyng / but sone aftir holpe to his delyueraunce / ²as ye shalt here / but nowe he was stille kepte there, to thentent to presente the turke with, at his retourne. The kynge, his fadir, had sente yn-to Sizile viij. or viij. of his folkes 40 aftir his departyng / & whan they were retourned / and tolde that

The King of
England's
envoys can
bear no
tidings of
Humphrey
in Sicily.

The King of
England
mourns the
loss of his
Son.

thorugh alle the reaume of Sizile they had enquiered & sought / but for certayne, yn that region had not be seyne no ship / sith the losse of the cristen armee, that was sent for their socours. & they certitied for trouthe, that ther Humfray nor his company was not / The 4 kynge of Englond, heryng thies tidynges, helde his sone as loste / and than his sorow redoubled, but it might not be amendid / and al his lif he contynued wepyng & teeres / and seide to suche as were a-boute hym / "Alas! ye may se iij. reaumes full desolate! 8 the kynge of ffraunce & y haue loste oure ij. sones / and wote not how the kynge of Scottes hath lost his also / but he hath more recomforte than we two / for his sone died knyghtly yn the seruise of god / and yet hath his fadir ij. sones alyue, which is a 12 grete recouerir to his reaume / & noon of vs two haue noon heire male / and y here sey the kynge of ffraunce lith seke in his bedde, without any remedy of his lif / whiche is comen to hym of sorow / of which is grete pite, and withoute faile he seide trouthe / for aftir 16 the departyng of his sone, hadde he neuir ioie."

The King of
France, be-
fore dying of
grief for the
loss of his
son, Prince
Philip.

As the kynge of Englond seide / and as ye haue rehersid here tofore, The kynge of ffraunce, sith the departyng of his seide sone, enioied neuir day of helthe / in so moche that 20 withyn ij. yere aftir, he departed oute of this worlde / and bifore his deth, made to come bifore him his wif and his brother, the Duc of Burgoinye / and seide vnto them in this wise / "My wif and my brother / y perceyue wele y most dye / whiche is the 24 thynge y haue moche desired / and as ye knowe wele y had a sone a ij. yere syne, and wote not yet / whethir he be a-lyue or not / to whom ye, my wif, be moder / and ye, my brother, be vncle / y haue loued you naturally as my brother / and ye haue done me 28 grete seruyse and honour, wherof y thonke you, and pray you to contynue your kinde and naturall loue vnto me aftir my deth / and to my sone, if he be a-lyue / and if he be not / y may haue no grettir ioie than to wite you kynge aftir my deth / for to you 32 sholde the reaume falle as rightfull enheritoure / wherfore y wolde that ye shold be regent and gouernour of this reaume by the space of vij. yere / and yn caas be that my sone come not / and that terme passed / I wol that ye be crowned and sacred kynge / for the abidyng 36 is long y-nough of ix yere / and y trust that ye wiH thus do / and so y pray you promyse me / for the goodes of the reaume be as wele youres, as Regent / as if ye were crowned kynge; and so shalH ye leese nomore for the tyme, but only the name of the kynge." The 40

appoints his
brother,

[¹ leaf 55.]
the Duke of
Burgundy,
Regent of
France, and
King after 9
years.

Duc of Burgoigne, that was fult wyse, worthy, and a passing good man, was knelyng afore the kynge his brother, heryng him thus speke, of right feruent loue, and of right stronge and soroufu^H 4 herte, wepte so sore / that he might vnnethe speke a worde / but as he might speke, he promysed him trewly to perfourme his desire & commaundement / Aftir alle this, and that the goode kynge of ffraunce had serchid his conscience wisely and deuoutly, he yelde The King of France dies, 8 his soule to god, and was entered as to a kynge perteyneth, and his ordynaunce doone & accomplisshed, as he had diuisid. And his Brothir, the Duc of Bourgoigne, was made Regent of ffraunce / and helde entierly, and accomplissid, alle that he had promysed his and the Duke of Burgundy becomes Regent. 12 brother, withoute contraryyng of any thinge / and had noon oþir wille ne desire, but that his Nevewe sholde come ayen / for he hadde neither wif ne childe, and he was noon of the moost yonge, wherfore he was determyned yn himself neuir to marye. He helde the 16 reaume, as long as he had the gouernaunce, yn good Iustice, pees & tranquillite. ¶ It is tyme to be stille a litle of this matier, and retourne to the sege that the Turke had set bifore fferaunt and his company.

20 L onge tyme endured they bifore the Towne without any wynnnyng / & every day there was som sawte or scarmyssh, Ferant and the Christians make daily sallies against the Turks, 24 and alwey profitable for them withyn / and so moche yn armes did Le Surnome and Athis / that of alle oþir they bare the naime / for their dedes were, as who seith, yneredible ; and so wele did Athis / that sawe Le Surnome, ther was noon to compare with hym / wherof le Surnome was as glad as he might be / and loued his honour asmoche as his owne / and he shewed wele he was not ennyous / for whan they were withdrawnen from any scarmyssh, he wolde so ioifully reherce of Athis, his felawe / that alle men ^{¶ If. 55, lk.} 1 Had grete pleasir to here him / whiche alway passed hym, & was werry mirrour and ensample to alle oþir / Thes sege dured fulle longe / and 32 many tymes sent fferaunt to the kynge of Sizile, that he sholde haue no drede for them / nor put himself yn noon aventure / for it neded not / for they had gret plente of vitaile for more than a yere / and whan they most nedes leue the place / they wolde departe to 36 the a nother of their enemyes, mangre them alle / and thus the kynge of Sizile, in trust of feraunt, abode the aventure that god wolde sende / and often made his folkes to ride to the Turkys hoste / to distourbe their vitaille / whiche aquytte them right wele / and 40 did grete damage to the Turkes, and made them right wary / and tell the King of Sicily that they are all right.

ffynally they loste moo of their folkes before that place then they had done of all the while that they were yn Sizile / and yit were they neuir the nere of the place / On a day befelle that fferaunt had sent a letter to the kynge his maister / yn suche wise as ye haue 4 herde before / the messanger was not so wise as othir had be, nor coude not þe weies so wele / so was he taken with the Turkes meyne / & brought bifore him yn-to his Tente. the Turke toke him aparte, & suche of his counself as pleased him / and made to 8 woide the remenaunt / for that he wold not the messangere shold be openly herde / lest he shold sey any thing / that shold discourage them / & whan all folkes were wided, the Turke asked hym certeinly of his tdynges / And he tolde hym suche as he knewe, with- 12 out hidyng of any thyng / yn embandonyng his lif, if it were founde othir wise / he seide that they withyn dred not the Turke and alle his power / but were rathir glad than sory of his beyng ther / for they wist for trouthe, that it was grete charge to hym / and that he 16 shold alwey lese more than wynne / and yn the meane tyme the kynge of Sizile shold fortifie his Reaume, and be daily releued with newe folkes / so that his puissaunce shalle alwey encresse. The Turke asked the messanger if he had any letters / and he seide 20 "ye" / as he that durst not deny it / and forthwith toke theym hym / the Turke opend them, and founde them aftir suche forme as ye haue herde before this. whan the messangere had be wele enquired / and answerde and seide like as he knewe / whiche was 24 alwey to the honoure ¹of the cristen : then was He delyuerd to one that shold kepe him wele and surely / the Turke abode stille with his counself / and they diuised many thinges to-gedre of thies matier / & they thought wele they loste tyme / and therfore toke 28 they this conclusione / that on the morowe the Turke sholde assemble alle his counselle / and the Capteynes / and seid to them that were there with hym / that they shold auise them wele that night of this grete matier, & on the morow to shewe him their best 32 aduise & counselle / Thus departed they, and euery man to his loggyng / til on the morow the Turke sende for them / many tymes and often were they awakid by them withyn / whiche had noon othir delite nor pleasir but to trauaile them, to the annoie of the 36 turkes / and that shewde wele Le Surnome, and Athis his felowe, þat, alle the while he was withyn the place, chaungid not his harneys that Orcais had yeuen him / wherby he was wele knownen ; and also he shewde it full ny them many tymes, to their grete damage / 40

A letter of
Ferant's,

and his mes-
senger, are
taken to the
Sultan,

who is told
that they
don't at all
fear him.

[1 leaf 56]

The Sultan
calls a Coun-
cil to discuss
the slow pro-
gress of the
Siege,

and the
damage that
Prince Philip
and Prince
David do
the Turks.

for the Turke woldo often tyme sey / “se there my sones prisonere ! here may ye se the profit of his delyuerauance / my herte gaf me neuir othir wise / he is the flour & choise of alle them withyn / one 4 reserved / that dothe vs meruailous grete hurt / by them ij. is alle the losse we haue.” Now this night passid / on the morowe came the Turkes counselle to hym, and alle the Capteynes he had sent for, and the Turke declared the matier him self / yn this wise, seyng 8 vnto them / “ffaire lordes, it is nigh the space of a yere sith we The Sultan
tells his
Council that
their year's
siege has
been of no
use. leide the sege bifore this place / wheryn it semeth me to be as ferre from hawyng it as the first day we came here / the damages that we haue had, aswele of them without the place, as of them withyn / be 12 without nombre / for we haue lost here, of the best of oure company / & yit if it appered that we might haue it be length of tyme, y sholde holde my peyne wele emploied ; but we cannot, as fer as y se / this night passed, was taken by my folkes one of their 16 messangers, beryng letters to their kynge / whiche, yn the presence of diuerse suche as be here present, y hane examyned, & founde him trewe, seyng aftir the content of his letters / whiche letters, se here yn my hande / & y wolle they be redde yn presence of you 20 ¹alle, because ye may auise what is to do / and that ye may counselle [¹ ff. 56, bk.] me to my honour / and so y pray you do” / thies letters, were opende and redde by a Secretary of the Turkes / and were of such matier as ye haue herd to-fore / and aftir they were redde, he seide 24 ayen vnto them / “ye se the termys, and how the matier stondes ; I perceyue that, sethe oure comyng yn-to this reanme, oure tyme hath not gretly emploied / neuirtheles, or y sholde departe with shame / y had leuer dye / and if we wolle any moo folkes, we nede 28 but to sende for them / but me semeth that we be y-nough, bothe for theym withyn & for them without, In-asmoche as we haue ben so long vnfoughten with / Also the harde ceason of wynter ap- ays Winter
is coming on, procheth / and it shold be full ilt for any oure folkes to labor in-to 32 this cuntre frome so fer, and also it shold be fulle grete charge & dispence / and fulle harde for vs to gete vitaile / for the kynge of Sizile diffendith it vs daily yn alle that he may / Now, alle thies things considered, I haue assembled you alle, to haue your good 36 advise and counselle, whether it be behofful for vs to sende for moo people or not / So I pray you that eche of you counselle me aswele as ye can.” Aftir that he had seide thies wordes / there were many of theym that eche behelde othir / and thought wele yn their 40 mynde that the Turke was very that the sege endured so louge /

wherof they were glad, for it sore annoied theim, their beyng there so longe / In asmoche as they sawe be no meane to be nerre the wynnyng of the place than thei were the first day they came ther / and daily sith had they hadde grete losse and damage, aswelt doon 4 by theym *withyn* the place as by theym *without* / they had lost many of their next frendes and of the moost worthy of their company / Some other preised moche the Turke their maister / and thonght if he reised the sege / it shold be to his shame / and yet 8 they sawe wele he lost his tyme, and had grete charge aboue nought / wherof they abassht theym moche / And in especialt, how the kynge of Sizile but litle a-fore had wonne that towne with assaute / and hou they had biden there so longe space / & coude 12 not gete it; but moche preyed they them of *withyn*, of wisdome & worthynesse, thinkyng that they passed alle other that they had seen in their tyme. Thus euery man thought of the *be¹synes*

[¹ leaf 57]

All are sad.

that belonged to the Tourke, that sawe this company alle saddle and 16 pensif / knewe wele that there was cause / and thought that he had ouir lightly leide sege there / seyng the puissaunce that his enemyes had / that night & day aboue the Sege, were in suche diligence and trauaile, that they vnnethe of the host mighte haue any slepe / for 20 they were nightly distourbed of their reste, either by them *withyn* or by them *without*; so seid he to his folkes: "I pray you remembre wele thies matiers, for it nedith to take good advise; for our abidyng here is fulle noious and dangerous / & oure departyng shold be 24 shamefult / Neuirtheles, it semeth me one of thies ij. we most nedes take; but it behoueth vs to thinke what were the best meane we coude fynde / yestir even, aftir the takyng of fferauntes messanger, some of you were here *with* me / and I pray to bethinke you what 28 were best / I was not aduised than to assemble you alle, as y haue now done / and for this cause y shalt aske first of them that were than with me / for that y know wele they haue had bettir leiser of remembraunce than the remenaunt that be here" / Than asked he 32 the aduise of one of his moost preuy counsellours / and that, as he trusted, toke his matiers moost to herte / And was, as aftir his lawe, a right a notable and a wise knyght / the whiche, by the commaundement of his maister, refused not to sey his aduise, whiche 36 was this / "Sir, it is trouthe that yestir euen ye commaundid diuers of vs to remembre on this matier, & so y suppose we haue, euery man on his party / and as for me, y haue so thought on it that y slepte no slepe this night / and the more y thinke on it / the 40

Some think
the siege
shouldn't
be raised.The Sultan
calls on one
of his most
trusted
Councillors.

more me semeth it is harde and doutefult / Also your self haue opened the difficultees any man may sey in this matier, aswele of thabidyn as of goyng, and haue seide wele, as me semeth, that in
 4 noon of those ij. is neither honour nor profit / and it behoueth to auise som meane, as ye seide, to kepe your honour, and to eschewe the contrary / fforsothe my thought hath ben this night, and is yet /
 Vpon this meane with correcccion / bisching you humbly, if y say
 8 not wele, to pardone me. And this is the meane that moost may be with your honour, as me semeth / if any meane may be founde to take trews for a yere bitwene your Enemy and you / ¹ And than by honour may ye reise the seege / And this tyme hangyng, ye may
 12 leue garrisons in this Reaume / and retourne your self this wynter in-to your owne Reaume, for it is long sith ye were there / and than may ye make a newe reise, bothe of people & tresour, and than in the newe season, whan the grounde is replenyssed with
 16 corne & gresse, than may ye come with grettir power than euir ye did / for it is no doute of / whan your people and solettes se your grete desire and good entent, they wille helpe you more than euir they did / ye haue sene wele the deuoir that your Enemies haue
 20 made to haue socoure / and yet haue noon had / ner noon, y belene, shalle haue, for if any they shold haue had, ye may thinke weel, seyng the long seege that ye haue holden, they shold haue had it by this / wherfore it is to be thought that, if they be weel re-
 24 membred heron, they wol be right glad of this trews / ffor they wille thinke that, in that meane season, they shalle mowe haue some helpe of the cristen / and at the last assemble, his estates to take aduise of the guiding of his reaume. The maner hou men might
 28 come to this trews, is not yet by me wel aduised / but if it please you to conclude to this aduise, men may remembre the maner how / and come hidre to you ageyn aftir dyner / euery man to sey his aduise / Sir, suche is myn aduise at this tyme. I knowe no bettir,
 32 albeit that I am redy to be confourmed to theym that y shalt here, yif bettir counselt which right lightly may be done" / The Turke, hering his knight and right trusty Counsellor thus speke, toke his wordes right agreably / for he sawe wele that by, other meanes, with
 36 his honour might he not departe / a[n]d his abidyn was right damageable / He asked than of many other their aduise / and, for to aberge [so] the matier, eueriehon folowed the same that the knyght
 had seide / And saide that he was fulle wise / for the departing of
 40 the Turke was not possible by noon othir meane without dishonour /

This Coun-
cillor advises
[1 lf. 57, bk.]
a Truce for a
year with the
Christians;

and then a
fresh attack
with more
men;

the way to
get the Truce
should be
further
discust.

The rest of
the Council
agree.

and dred moche that they might not gete the trews with their honour & pleasir. The Turke, that saw this conclusion yn nombre of opinions, & alle one / saide to them / “yet of the maner hou this trews might be / we nor noon of you haue spoken / wherfore y wolt 4 that, at iij. after non, eche of you be here present / and that the meane while ye remembre eche one his party, how y may entre yn this matier to my honour, without shewing of any semblaunt of drede ; and if the ¹meane might be founde, that it might be half by 8 their Request.” Thus eueri man departed til after dyner / and at the houre of iij. assembled there agein / and there shewed many resonys and opinions / but hard it was, as they thought, to fynde hou this matier shold not come of the Turke, for they coude espie no 12 drede yn their Enemyes. whan the Turke, that moche desired to haue this thinge accomplisshht, entred in-to his Tente / where as they alle were, & vnto hym did their dewte ; & whan he was set in his chaier, he made them alle to sitte downe / & than he asked of 16 him that most pleased him, thauise of how he was remembred of this matier / that they were departed on / And this was one of his Capteynes, a passing wise man of werre / whiche answerd him in this maner / “Sir, ye shal ful porly be aduertised by me / for that 20 y haue little knowlage in so high thinges / but sith that it pleasith you that y say in this matier what y haue thought and diuisid, whiche is to litle effecte in regarde of that / that thies notable knyghtes herby shalle say / Natherles, y shalt shewe as y haue 24 thought, sith that ye be concluded to the trews, if ye may haue it / & wolde it were by the desire of your Enemyes, or at the lest half by their Request, whiche is an hard thinge to be done / for ye se not yn them no maner liklyhood touching this matier / If we had 28 any prisoners, notable folkes, outher of them without or of them withyn / then were it litle maistrie to fynde the meanes by their oun request & labour / but that wi^t not be / for we haue no suche. A nothir wey there is / withyn the place there is many noble and 32 wise lordes, knyghtes and squiers of those whiche be prisoners ther / And y can thinke they haue so many prisoners there, that they wold with good wi^t be delyueraunce of som of them, for spendingy of their vitaile. Thus may ye sende vnto them for delyueraunce 36 of som of them, And in suche wise may the prisoners them self entre in langage with their maistirs, as it were of their owne mocione, for their delyueraunce / And thus, me thinketh, they may playnly touche of this matier to fferaunt, whiche, if he wi^t, may 40

(1 leaf 58)

After dinner
the Turkish
Council
reassemble,and one of
them

advises that,

in order
to make the
proposal of
the Truce
come from
the Chris-
tians,they be askt
to set free
some of their
Turkish
prisoners,
who can
suggest a
Truce.

surely breke this matier, and bring it to conclusion with the kynge
his maister / And y can thinke, seyng the grete reason that they
haue, & be closed yn this towne, they haue not had ¹their ease in [¶ lf. 58, bk.]
4 alle thinge ; and whan the saide fferaunt shall se a meane of youre
departyng, to his honour, he woff be right glad to bryngē it to that
conclusion / for his honour shall be wele saued by this meane. An
other way also, vndir your correcccion : It is longe sith that kynge ^{Or, as King}
8 fferabrace of Perce, that hath ben prisoner yn the handes of the ^{Ferabras of}
kynge of Sizile, your enemy / and yet hath there ben no speche of ^{Persia is}
his raunsome / ffor that ye trusted alway to recouer hym by
strength, whiche, as me semeth, ye are fulle fer fro / ye may sende, ^{Sultan can}
12 if it please you, to the kynge of Sizile, desiryng him to put him to ^{propose to}
finaunce / and if he wille entende ther-to / than shalle ye haue a
good colour to sende of your folkes vnto the kynge your brother,
whiche may be aduertised by them to breke this matier vnto the
16 kynge of Sizile, for a meane of his delyueraunce ; and if he wille
entende therto, ye may make a desire vnto him to haue a sauf- ^{and ask for a}
conde, for ij. or iiij. notable knyghtes of youre house to go speke ^{safe conduct}
with youre brother for his delyueraunce / And by them may your
20 brother be weel aduertised in euery thinge touchyng this matier / ^{to Envys}
And thus semeth me, by one of thies two weies ye may not faile /
but this mocion may be made as though ye knewe no thing therof / ^{and let him}
And that for the loue of youre brothir and of othir prisoners / and ^{broach the}
Truce.
24 at their grete request, ye shalle be enclynable to this trews, whiche
is, as ye shalle make semblaunt, right contrary to your pleasir. I can,
as for my parte, noon othir thing devise / yf y bettir coude, y
wolde right gladly shewe it vnto you, and to my lordes that here be /
28 yn whom y wote wele ye shalle fynde sadder aduise than yn me / I
durst not refuse to sey myn opinion, sith that it pleased you so to
ordayne and commaunde me." Thus endid he his aduise. And
the Turke asked forth of the remenaunt of his counselle that were /
32 hou it thought them of this matier / so were there many other
meanes & mocions made amonges them / but, in conclusion, the
Turke liked best the two first waies that his knight had meued / ^{The Sultan}
and saide that he coude not thinke by that / that he knewe yn
36 fferaunt, that he wold, be any cause or meane, haue a trews bitwene
hym and the kynge his maister, without that he might se it more
the profit & honour of his maister / than for his owne allegaunce
and ease / And ther²fore toke he this conclusion, to sende for a ^[¶ leaf 59]
40 sausfecondite, that his folkes might speke with firabras his brother / ^{ask for a}
^{safte-conduct,}

94 *The Turks' Proposal to ransom King Ferabras is laid before the King.*

and sends a proposal to the King of Sicily,

to ransom his brother, the King of Persia.

The Turkish messengers reach Naples.

The King of Sicily

assembles his Council, and shows them the Sultan's letters.

He appoints one advocate to argue for the ransom, and another against it.

[¹ lf. 59, bk.]

and by hym this matier to be opende / This conclusion was taken, and letters sent to the kyng of Sizile by two kynges of armes / In whiche letters was conteyned the loue that by naturall reason that he aught to his brother, the kyng of Perce, whiche at that tyme 4 was his prisoner / and had ben a grete while / and right fayn wolde he haue hym ageyn / if by any fynaunce he might haue him / And for this, if his wille were to put him to fynaunce, the Turke his brother wolde sone purvey for his delyueraunce, In asmoche as he 8 was taken in his quarelle & seruise / And for to procede in this matier, the Turke reuyred to haue sauffcondite for iij. or iiiij. notable knyghtes, of whom he sent the names yn his letters / Thus were the letters delyuerd forth / and they sped theim so weel that 12 in litle while they came to Naples, where as the kynge of Sizile was / and sone were they condited by noble folkes yn-to the place where the kynge was / and anoone was it tolde the kynge that suche folkes were comen vnto hym from the Turke. the kynge 16 made them be brought vnto him, where they founde him wele accompanied. the kynges of armes presented their letteres / and the kyng of Sizile resceyued them, and redde theim, and sith asked thofficers of armes if they had any othir thing in charge / 20 and they tolde their charge / whiche was suche yn substaunce as the letters specified. & whan he hadde hird alle their message, the kynge made them to be condite to their loggyng, and ther to be wele accompanied with alle the chere that men might make them. 24 on the morow aftir, he assembled his folkes of counselle, and many of his Capteynes that were there with them, to whom he shewed the letters that the Turke had sent hym / and the credence of the letters / wherupone he asked their counsel & aduise yn this matier / 28 and wold here it debated and concluded before him self / So there were ij. notable men bifore him to do this / that one ordeyned to susteyne the delyueraunce of his prisoner / and the tothir to contrary it / He that susteyneth the deliueraunce, shewed to the kynge 32 that this deliueraunce was profitable for hym, and the reasons why / saying that his body was not ofte ¹in daunger / the delyueraunce of kyng ffrabrace not helpe but to him / for ther was noon othir like vnto him / also he was surely accompanied / and of a long tyme 36 had not ben gretly annoied / and of liklyhood his strength sholde rather encre[se] than empeyre. And the Turkes might was daily dymynysshed and gretly damaged / wherfore him thought this deliueraunce was moost profitable to the kyng / for with his 40

raunsone sholde he be of more power to damage his enemyes / The
tothir knyght, hering what he had purposed, answerd to the con- The advocate
against the
rausom
trary, shewyng that at that tyme the Turke, whiche was brother to
4 kynge thirbrace, helde seige before the place that the kynge had
conquered vndir him / yn the whiche was enclosed the flour of
knyghthode of that Reaume, and in especialle they to whom he is
prisoner / whoos, of right, the prisoner is, and noon others / and if
8 it so fortune that the Towne were taken by strength, whiche god, of
his mercy diffende / if it were so / by the kynge of Perce, alle they
that were withyn shold be rescowed, whiche is more worth than
iiij. such fynaunces as he is able to pay / "And for to awnswere to
12 this that ye haue seide, that none suffiseth to the deliueraunce of
the saide prisoner, but the only body of the kyng; by that meane
that y say, ij. thousand noble men may be sauе & brought agein by
hym. And to come to reason / who ought so weel to be bought
16 agein by hym, as they that toke hym, whos propre prisoner he is /
forsoothe noon, as me thinketh. Also remembre weel in what
perells and in what fortunes ye haue seen the kyng here present, &
souverayn lord, be in his tyme, whiche, if he were prisoner, shold
20 be in auenture euir to be had agein, if this kynge were deliuerd /
Thies thinges considered, if y were as the kyng, for no thing shold
he be delyuered / And whan it shalle please the kyng / vpone the
debates of vs two, that be but of litle effecte to the reasons of my
24 lordes that here be, he shalle here there aduise, and to do then
as him thinkith moost to his wele" / The kynge of Sizile, heryng and that
his release
would end-
anger the
King of
Sicily.
thise debates that were made, of good wille, and by noon hate, asked
of him that spake last his aduise, whiche seide vnto him / that
28 glasy he wolde say it / sith it pleased him so to commaunde him,
whiche was this / that in no wise men ought not, nor might not that Ferant
must be con-
sulted;
entre in-to this matier without thanise and counselle of fferaunt,
whiche ¹was biseeged withyn the towne and hym, that now men [^[1 leaf 60]
32 lightly might speke with hym, for the kyng might write vnto the
Turke, that without the aduise & counselle of fferaunt & Surnome, and Prince
Philip,
who took
Ferabras
prisoner.
to whom his brother was prisoner, he wold not procede in that
matier / and he thought be thise meanes the Turke shold be weel
36 content that the kynges folkes might go speke with fferaunt. And
ij. reasons he shewed / that meued him to gif this counselle / that
one is / that fferaunt is one of the wisist knyghtes of this Reaume,
whiche appereth weel by his werkes / And by this meane, if the
40 kyng sende vnto him of his folkes, he shalle trewly be asserteyned

of the demeanyng of fferaunt and of the Towne / and therafter may he take counselle outhir of the deliueraunce of his prisoner or of the contrary / And the tothir reason that he shewed, was this / that the seid prisoner had be taken twies by the handes of Surnome, 4 in the presence of fferaunt his maister / without whom, by reason to holde trewly the right of armes, the seide prisoner might net be de- lyueraed : “suche is the ordre of right and Iustice in dedes of armes / as y haue alway vndirstande / And as yet y can thinke of the saide 8 prisoner, there hath be made no departyng bitwene them, nor noon accorde nor apoyntement / and therfore, shortly to conclude my matier / me thinkith, without their aduise it [were best] to proecede no ferther.” Thus endid he / & it thought vnto the kynge and his 12 counselle that his aduise was right good & Resonable / And then were letters writen and sent vnto the Turke, vndir suche fourme as thei were concluded by the counselle / as ye haue herde. Thus were the messangers delyueraed, and had grete giftes, and were surely con- 16 dite, vnto the kynges power / and at their retourne agen vnto the Turke, they founde the hoste gretly troubed / for greuously had they ben assailed by them withyn the Towne / and in especialle toward the Turkes loggyng / for there were made alway the grettist 20 assawtes ; and trouthe it was, that they had ben so hourely assailed sith the departing of the messangers, that they neuir might be at leiser to assemble in no counselle to-gidir / and diuers tymes wold they haue short termes of trews & comunicacione with fferaunt / 24 but he wold neuir answer hem to any suche matier, for he had no

*Letters to
this effect are
sent to the
Sultan,*

*who has in
the mean-
time been
harast by
after attacks
from Siz.*

[¶ lf. 60, bk.]

desire to dele nor trete with hem / wherof thei were ful 1soroufult. So long contynued this maner of demeanyng, that the Turkes folkes were right wery / and endured grete payne & labour / 28 fferaunt, that was fulle wise, remembred weel this, & thought weel it were little maistry to annoy them / and thought he had ben idle a gret while, and not mette with his enemyes / and so he saide to his folkes, with a merry contenaunce / “I se weel we be so presed 32 on with oure enemyes to haue a tretee, whiche lettith not but yn vs, for we may haue alle that we can resonably aske / And it is longe sith oure neigboured & frenedes herde any thing of vs, that knowe not weel where we are / therfore it is good that to-morowe we make vs 36 to be knownen” / Alle they that were yn the place were ioyfull of thise wordes, and in especialle Le Surnome and Athis / for in dedes of armes were thei neuir satisfied / and so answerd they vnto their maister, it shold be right wele done. “so helpe me god,” seide 40

*Ferant says
he will make
a grand sally
next day
Prince Philip
and Prince
David re-
joice.*

fieraunt, "I thinke to-morowe, with the helpe of god, to take such
acqueyntance amonges them, that they shalle not alle be pleased /
for it is longe sith we made theim any grete assaute / and therfore
4 go eueri man to his reste / and be vp to-morowe vpone the point of
the day / and eueri man serue god / and we shall do aftir as wel as
we may" / Thus eueri man went to reste him. And that night
made fieraunt al his small ordenaunce to be brought toward the Ferant
8 Turkes loggyng / and on that side of the Towne made he to lay his
grete Bombardes, ageinst the comyng of his enemyes / and there
made he to be kepte moo fayrer & sure watche. In the mornyng / musters his
men early,
toward the poynt of day, were his folkes assembled about him / so
12 ordeyned he a good company, as him thought sufficiaunt y nough
to discomfite the wacche that was bifore / for to wynne the Turkes
Bombardes, for they thought it was light y-nogh to do / and of the and makes
Princes
Philip and
David cap-
tains of the
first Battal-
lion.
first company he made Capteynes, Le Surnome & Athis / for wel
16 knewe he that corageously they wolde do this entirprise / And the
remenaunt of his folkes he guyded him self, for he thought the
first company shold haue nede of releef: thus ordeyned he the
assawte / And whan it was purueide, Le Surnome & Athis ordeyned
20 their folkes redy at the gate that was assigned vnto them / than
made fieraunt the yate ¹to be opende, and went out / and ascried [leaf 61]
the Turkes wacche, and they wende fulf weel to haue diffendid
them / but their diffence litle auailed / for Surnomes company and
24 Athis put as many to the swerde as they might gete, without They kill
all the Turks
they take,
takynge of any prisoners. This first company passith forth with so
grete corage & hardinesse that, er the Turke and his folkes might
be armed, thei came to his logging, killyng and sleyng alle that
28 euir mette with them / and ouirthrewe Tentes and Pavilions; and
did so moche in armes that eueri man fled fro them / whan fieraunt
sawe them passe so fer / he knewe it shold be grete auenture of and go so
far forward
that Ferant
has to march
in support.
their retourne / and therfore toke he his feliship, & went aftir them /
32 and passed by the place where the wacche had ben, and where
moche of the Turkes ordenaunce lay, whiche he made labores, bothe
men & wommen, hane in to the Towne / whil he went to releef his
first company. and this assaute dured til the sonne risyng / and
36 there was the noise and the erie so grete / that men might not haue
herde the thondre / and the Turkes drewe them alle to the Turke,
so grete a multitude that fieraunt saw wele his folkes might not
long endure there / wherfore he made to blowe retrete; and by He blows the
retreat.
40 than had his first company taken so many prisoners, that they were

almoost as many as them self / and ther were many of theim noble men / and of the Turkes counseH, suche as had ben at the comunica-
cion of the trews / whan they withdrew them / Surnome & Athis
were the last / and put their folkes & their prisoners bifore them / 4
and so moche endured they than, that it was meruaile ; and had
not fferaunt their good maister than releued them, they had neuir
retourned againe in-to the Town / and it was meruaile to wite hou
many Surnome & Athis slowe at their retrayte / thus entred they 8
in-to the Towne with alle their prisoners, to the grete damage and
losse of the Turke, & litle vnto theim. In this grete brewte and
trouble, came agein the heraldes, that had ben messangers from the
Turke vnto the kyng of Sizile / and sawe the feeldes fulle of men of 12
armes, & had herde the noise and the crie more than ij. myle
thens / This auenture turned to grete damage & displeasir to the
Turke & his company / for thei sawe weel at length, by litle & litle
their power sholde empaire / for whan they withdrawe theim they 16

[¶ lf. 61, bk.] <sup>They re-enter
Size, with all
their prison-
ers,</sup> <sup>200, and have
slain 1500
Turks.</sup> <sup>The Heralds
from the
King of Sicily
reach the
Sultan,</sup> <sup>who agrees
to the King's
request,
and gives the
safeconducts
he want.</sup> ^{2 MS. reameine.}
1knewe wele what Losse they had / for they founde of their folkes
moo then xv C. dede, and moo then ij C. prisoners taken. If the
Turke had grete sorowe, it is no question, for the losse was turned
vpon a grete party of the best of his hous / He coude not thinkne 20
that Le Surnome nor Athis were any mortalle men, but ij. thinges
sente doun by the god of the cristen / for his destruction / for him
semed, and alle othir, that there might not be so moche worthynesse
yn the body of any erthely man, as he founde in theim that day / 24
thus ranne² the renomee of them thorugh alle the hoste / Thus
whan the Turke was withdrawnen, the heraldes, that y haue tolde
you of bifore / entred in-to his Tente / and deliuerd him their
lettres, whiche he redde / and then made alle theim to come vnto 28
him, that were of his counselle / at that tymeyng present / than
made he to come afore him agein the messangers / and commaundid
theim to telle suche credence as they had from the kynge of Sizile /
and they made their report weel and wisely, as they that were 32
of grete discrecion / whiche was suche as ye haue herde before,
accordyng to thentent of the lettres / And to make shorte tale, the
Turke agreed to the request of the kyng of Sizile right gladly / and
hadde good cause / for eueri day he sawe his strenght empayre / So 36
he made the Saufconditz to be made vp for suche naines as the
heraldes had brought / and in alle haste the Saufconditz, made and
sealed, were sent agein vnto the kyng of Sizile. Ye may weel

² MS. reameine.

thinke, that whan fferaunt and his company were entred agein in-to
the Towne, they made grete ioy of the goode aventure that god had
younen theim that day. And whan he shold go to dyner, he made
4 as many knyghtes and noble men sitt at his boorde as might haue
Rome / and ij. boordes beside / amonges whiche company, Surnome
and Athis were not forgoten, of whom he had more ioie than of
any earthly men / and not without cause / for he had seen hem do

8 in armes that day yncredibly / for they had taken with their awne
handes vpone a iij.^{xx} prisoners / and alwey deliuerd hem to oþir
for to kepe / while they contynued in bataile, without hauyng any
regarde or remembranunce to conetise / as they that desired no

12 thinge but to gete worship / and to do ser vice to god in their
eristen feith / for euerich thought in his owne mynde that they
had y-nough in their owne contrees. hou be it, their ma^lners re-
sembed no thinge kynges sones ; they demeaned them liker pouere

16 gentilmen / ffor albe-it there was noon so honorable as they two /
yet for no fortune or auenture that couth befalle them / they wolde
neuir take oñ them to be knyghtes, excusyng them alway by the
symplesesse of their birthe / and they hadde reason not to take on

20 them the ordre of knyghthode / for they were knyghtes long before /
hou be it, nouther of theim vndirstode of other / what birthe they
were of / And fferaunt their maister, at his dyner, reported to them
their outrageous hardinesse, in maner blamying them of that they

24 had done that day / for in abidyng them had he almoost lost grete
part of his people / and if he coude haue thought that they wolde
thus haue be rewled, he wold rather haue lefte them kepyng the
Towne / than hane had them forth to the assaute. thei answerde

28 no thinge vnto their maister / but were al shamefast of his wordes,
and thought that a nothir tyme they wolde not do so / but when
they were in like caas agein / that purpose was alle lost and for-
gotten / Aftir dyner, fferaunt made to visite his prisoners / and

32 founde that he had a party of the grettist & moost prevy of the
Turkes counselle, wheroft he was right ioifulle, as reason was, and
made them to be kepte, eueri man aftir his worship / and thus
abideth he in his place, all ioyfulle & assured of his enemyes / til

36 that he herde tidinges of the kyng of Sizile / as ye shalle here / ye
haue here before weel vndirstande hon the Turke sent vnto the
kyng of Sizile saufcondite for iiiij. of his knyghtes to come to

40 fferaunt / This saufcondite was borne vnto the kyng by the same
heraldes that late had ben with him fro the Turke, which Sauf-

Prince Philip
and Prince
David, single-
handed, took
above 60
prisoners.

[¹ leaf 62]

But Férant
reproaches
them for their
dangerous
hardihood.

The Turkish
safeconducts
are given to
the King of
Sicily,

who sends 4
knights to
Ferant.

[¹ lf. 62, bk.]
These 4 Sici-
lian knights

tell Ferant of
the Sultan's
wish to ran-
som K. Fer-
bras,

and the
King's wish
for Ferant's
advice.

Ferant tells
the Sicilian
knights of
the prowess
of Princes
Philip and
David.

condite the kynge resceyued, and made it to be redde / & founde
that it was good & sure / Than purvaide he the iiij. knighthes to go
to fferaunt / and they toke leue of the kynge & the quene, & of their
faire daughter, & of alle the ladies & gentilwomen / & tolde them 4
whider they wente / and eche of theim made their recommenda-
cions / And faire Iolante forgate not to recommaunde hir to
Surname ; and she and alle the ladies seide amonges them / that
fferaunt was a notable knyght, and honorably had borne him, and 8
was worthy to be renomed of alle othir that they knewe / On the
morow erly the knightes departid, and spedē them so, that withyn
litol while they came to fferaunt, of whos comyng he ¹was right
ioyfuH / for they were his special frendes / & thought wele that 12
they had brought some grete tidynges / he brought them to their
loggynges / and made theim al the chere that was in his power /
& when they were rested a litol while, fferaunt and they went to
counsele in-to a chambr / and there tolde they him eueri worde, 16
hou the Turke had sent vnto the kynge of Sizile / and hou the
matier was debated bifore the kynge, for the delyueraunce of kynge
fferabrace / and the causes that bothe thies knyghtes shewed / and
hou it was determined by the kynge and alle his counsele that, 20
without thavice and agrement of him, the kynge wolde answe to
no thyng of this matier, for suche causes as had ben elegged bifore /
whiche thei declared and shewed vnto fferaunt / And whan he had
herde thise tidynges, he thought the matier was of grete peyce / 24
wherfore he wolde make no sodeyn answe, but made his delay
vpone Surnome, sayng that the matier touched him, and that he
ought to be called to this counsele / And this they apointed an
houre, at whiche tyme Le Surnome shold be ther / and fferaunt 28
seide that he was right wise, & might wele be called to counsell in
eueri matier aswele as in that / bothe for his hie wisdome & grete
vertu / and than tolde he vnto tho knightes of Sizile of the grete
worthinesse of Surnome and Athis, & hou he sawe neuir noon 32
comparable vnto them, but that Surnome passed alle other / hou be
it, Athis folowed moche the condicions of Surnome, bothe in honour
& largesse / and in habilit of his persone ; and fferaunt saide ther
was no knight in the world might avaunte him of the company of 36
Such two as he was serued with. Than he told hem hou le Sur-
name receyued Athis vnto his company / and in what maner he
came / and hou ther was in Surnome noon envie / for he wold so
gladly reporte the worthinesse and prowes of his felawe, that by his 40

maner and speche it semed he thought him self, nor noon othre,
comparable vnto him / and reputed him self right ewrous that god
had sent him suche a felawe / and than reherced he grete armes that
4 the two felawes had done duryng the sege / and the drede that
their enemyes had of theim, and of the grete comfort and hardinesse
that his company toke in theim : and thorugh their grete worthi-
nesse the Towne was double encoraged / Thies tidynges tolde he to
8 þe knyghtes of Sizile, ^[1 leaf 63] wheroft they thought grete meruaile, and
Iuged for trouthe that god had sente them this meruailous fortune,
for sauacion of the realme / And so shewed it weel ; “ for they that
no thinge were worth / thorugh theim be at this day as valiaunt as
12 men can fynde / and they that no thinge dred vs, be at this day
the moost falyng and wrecchid nacion that lyueth ; and pardt this
werke may not be without miracle.” with suche language passed
forth the day til the houre that they had taken to assemble agein
16 in counselle, at whiche tyme Le Surnome was sent for to come
amonges them / and at his comyng was the matier alle newly
reherced / like as ye herde before, seyng vnto Le Surnome, that the
kyng had gyuen them in charge to haue his aduise & agreement
20 theryn. ffraunt had weel remembred the matier / and seid ther
vnto the knyghtes, “ ye se weeles in what caas we be / and the
gretest harme that we endure, is the prisoners that ben here, þat
gretely dispende our vitaile / hou be it, y thanke god we be yet
24 resonably weel purvaide / wherfore it shalle not nede the kynge to
haue no drede of vs / but that we shalle be able to abide them
lenger than shal be their ease to lye aboute vs / & y purpose to put
those that be noble men to fynaunce / and to put the tothir to
28 dethe ; and by this meane shalle oure vitaile endure vs lenger. And
as touchyng your charge of putting kyng ffirabrace to fynaunce /
y shal sone say as y thinke / suche thinge may befallle that the
kyng wold for no thing had put him to ffynaunce. It is a faire
32 thinge whan he hath in his hande the same that is sufficient to
delyuere him / if the caas so fortune. But if it were the kynges
pleasir, vpone good apointement and good hostages, to enlarge him
for a terme / perauenture for his deliueraunce may be founde peas
36 bitwene the kyng & the Turke / The visage of man makith vertu /
for if he be present, he may more lightly fynde frenship in his
brother and other frendes / than if he be stille in prison ; for his
brother, seyng him in that daunger, shalle haue gretter pite and
40 compassione of him / than he hath now / wherfore me thinketh his

^[1 leaf 63]
The Knights
of Sicily
recognize
God's hand
in the help
sent.

Prince Philip
attends Fer-
ant's Council.

Ferant pro-
poses to let
his noble
prisoners be
ransomed, and
the others
killed.

Ferabas
must be only
enlarged for
a time.

enlargissing, surely made, shalle do but profit vnto the Realme."

[1 lf. 63, bk.] After that fferaunt had thus seide / the knyghtes wolde wite the opinion of Surnome, whiche saide: "my lorde my ¹maister, that here is, me thinkith hath taken the best way / & be thus doyng / 4 the kyng shal not be differred from his prisoner, but haue him alway stille in daunger / and if it please the kynge of his grace, I

Prince Philip thinks King Ferabras should be sworn to free all Christian prisoners in Turkish hands,
wolde of one thinge beseche him / that if king ffirabras be enlarged for any terme / that or his departyng, he be sworne be his lawe, 8 and the creance that he holdeth, that if there be any persone wit/yn the landes & possessions of his brother or of his / that hath any cristen prisoner that hath not ben in this werre / but that hath ben taken in passing or in goyng on pilgramage / that thei 12 may be delyuerd franke & quite, without constreyning them to renay their feith / and also that fro hensforth there be no more oppression nor hurt done to the poure labores & simple folkes of this lande / and in this is the Raunsome, for my part, that y wille 16 desire / As for the remenaunt, belongeth vnto my lorde my maister, that here is" / fferaunt coude passing grete thanke to Surnome, for his request / and thought weel that grete noblesse, fredom & pite, meued him to that remembraunce. The knyghtes of Sizile saide / 20

and to stop all oppression of the poor.
that suche reporte as they had founde with fferaunt & Surnome they sholde make vnto the [Turkes], & thought weel that they wold be agreeable to alle this, without contraryng of any thinge / Aftir thise wordes they went out of the chambre / and came into the halle, 24 were was many a noble man / fferaunt sent for some of his prisoners / for to wite if they wolde be brought to any ffynaunce / amonge the whiche was one or two that had ben at the conclusion that the Turke had taken in his counselle, touchynge the trews / 28 whan they came bifore fferaunt, they toke him a-part, and saide vnto him: "my lorde, if it might be done, and with your pleasir, we wolde fayne, if we might / speke with kynge ffirabras your prisoner / bothe for the meanes of his delyueraunce & oures; we 32 thinke to fynde suche a meane as shalle be grete weel vnto this Realme / and therfore remembre you / for we thinke yn this ye shal do grete service vnto the kynge your maister." fferaunt, heryng thise knyghtes thus speke, whiche by semyng were men of 36 gret honour, called vnto him the knyghtes of Sizile / and made them to reherce agein in their presence like as ²they had seide vnto him. And whan the knyghtes of Sizile had herde them / they

Some of Fferant's prisoners

ask to be allowed to talk with K. Ferabras about his ransom and their own.

[² leaf 64]

withegrave them, & counseled a litil to-gedre / and thought, seyng 40

what they had saide, there coude no thinge but weel falle of their spekyng with kyng ffirabrace / than called they agein the prisoners vnto them / and asked them what hostage they wold lay for them / 4 and they saide it sholde be harde for them to lay suche hostages as fferaunt shold be content with / but, and it pleasid him, that one of them might go to the Turke, and that othir abide in hostage, on his lif / he thought it sholde suffise / fferaunt and the knyghtes 8 accorded herto / And thus that one of theim is departed vnto the Turke, whiche was right fer thens / and tolde the Turke alle the maner how his felawe and he had done with fferaunt and with the tothir knyghtes of Sizile, that were sent to fferaunt from the kynge, 12 whiche were accorded vpon good hostages, to lete his felawe and him go to kynge ffirabrace / whan the Turke herde this, he was right glad / and thought the matier was weel bigonne to breke to his honour / for eueri man myght weel thinke, that what so euir 16 his brother or the tothir prisoners did / was for their owne deliuernunce / and not for the profit of the Turke, nor at his request / so alle thinge was concluded to the pleasir of þe knyghtes prisoners / and suche hostage delyuerner as fferaunt was content with / The 20 Turke charged his knyghtes, and praied them to employe wele this matier / and to shewe his brother playnly what case he stode yn / for he wende neuir to haue seen the Houre of his departyng, with his honour and lif / Thus departed the knyghtes, and came agein 24 to fferaunt / and in alle haste were their promyses accomplished / and they redy to departe and go with the knightes of Sizile / On the morow erly, the knightes of Sizile toke leue of fferaunt and of alle the company, to whom they seide a lowde / that it was the 28 moost honorable company that was that day vpone the erthe / & aught moost to be renomed in alle honour / saying that the kyng thanked them alle, as them that he was asmoche biholden vnto, as euir was prince vnto his suggestes, praing them alle way to contynue 32 their high & good corage / Than seide there many, with an high voice, "say vnto the kynge, oure souneray[n] lord / that for vs he 1 make no tretee nor apointement to his preiudice / for, bettir [1 ff. 64, bk.] pleasith vs this lif, with suche peyne as we haue, than euir did any 36 dauneyng Iustes or any othir disporte." The knightes answerd / "ye may be sure that god wolde gif you grace to departe out of this place with honour, and then shalle ye se the ladies, where as ye shalle be welcome / and right wele recomforted / & so haue they 40 grete cause / and wele y wote, whan ye come / we that no thing haue

They propose
as hostages
half their
number.

One Turkish
party goes to
the Sultan,
and reports
of the proceedings.

They return
to Ferant,
and start with
the Sicilian
messengers,

done in armes, shal be litil set by / but alle out cast" / Aftir thise wordes, they toke leue and departed, seyng to alle the company / that they trusted within litil while they shold here good tidinges. Than spedde they so wele their iourney, that they came sone vnto 4 the kynge, which grete desire had to here tidynges of fferaunt, & of this Towne, and of alle the company therin, & also to knowe what opinions fferaunt helde in such message as he sent hem, touchyng the delyueraunce of the Turkes Brother. It was not long aftir 8 their comyng, but the kynge made them come vnto hym / whiche tolde hym hou they had sped in alle thinges like as is a-boue rehersed / and howe they had by thavice of fferaunte / brought ij. knighthes prisoners in their company / for they thought that the 12 kynge, by heryng of their entent, might no thinge lese / And also shewed the kynge ferther of the opinion of fferaunt and of Sur nome, whiche the kynge toke right wele in gre, & thought the enlargyng of kynge ffirabrace bettir and more prope[r] for him than 16 his clere deliueraunce / Thau sent he forthe knighthes prisoners, and asked them what their entent was / & they seide / that if it pleased him, they wolde speke with kyng ffirabras. Than sent the kyng for alle his counselle / and shewed them the message of his knightes 20 prisoners / and it thought them alle, that it was best to lete them speke with kyng ffirabrace a-part, or yn what wise thei wolde / for thei thought their speche might litil hurte the kynge / but rather of lyklihode be to his pleasir & profit, seyng the eas they were yn / 24 And assone as this counselle was thus concluded, kinge ffirabrace was enformed how thies folkes were come to speke with hym / and hou the king was wele content that they shold speke with him alle at their pleasir / and that they shold abide a day or ij., or as longe 28 as it pleased him to telle him of their tidynges / and wherfore ^[1 leaf 65]¹they desired to speke with hym. kyng ffirabrace, that sith his takyng had herde no tidynges of his Brothir, nor of noon othir frende of his / was right ioyfull to here tidynges of them ; & yet 32 the more, that the kynge was pleased that he shold speke with them a-part / for he wist weel he shold be the bettir, asserteyned of alle tidynges / than were thei sone brought vnto him. when they sawe him, they salowed him, accordyng to their dewte, the teeres falling 36 downe from their visages, for pite of his longe enprisonment / And whan he espied that / he was in grete drede to here som euyl tidynges of his brothir or of his Nevewe ; & anone as they that brought them were departed / he called them vnto hym / & asked 40

and soon
reach the
King of
Sicily.

The Sicilian
Knights tell
their King of
Ferant,

and his pro-
posal that
K. Ferabras
shall be only
enlarged.

The Turkish
Messengers

are allowd
to see K.
Ferabras.

them of alle their tidynges / for seth he was first prisoner, herde he <sup>He asks for
their tidings.</sup> neuir tidynges / ffor the kyng of Sizile had so ordeyned / ffor him thought / that if men shold telle him good tidynges, for his partie it 4 was not couenable / & what so euir any man tolde him of the wele of the cristen partie, he wold not haue bileded it / but thought it had ben rather seide yn maner of avaunt / and therfore the kyng had ordeyned that no man shold telle him no tidynges / wherfore 8 he was now the more desirous to here of their tidynges, & askede them of his brothir, & of his nevewe, & of alle their armee. and they tolde him of alle the certaynte / & of the cristen flete / hou it <sup>The Turkish
Messengers
tell K. Ferab-
ras how</sup> fortuned amonges them by tempest; hou they were scaterd / & 12 many of them drowned, & a vesselle of theirs brake vpon the ryvage, <sup>Prince Or-
kays captured
Prince David,</sup> even afore the Turkes Tentes, and many of them came to londe on lyue, whiche were slain alle at their landyng, sauf one, that Orkays, the Soudans sone, toke with his owne handes, and of his delyner- 16 aunce / and how Orkays was takyn by him aftirward, & deliuered, <sup>and was then
taken by
him;</sup> as is a-fore reherced / and than they tolde him of alle the worthy- nesse of them withyn the towne / and in especial of him þat was taken by Orkays, and of his felawe, Le Surnome, whiche passeth 20 alle oþre; & tolde him of the losse that his brothir had had sith he lay aboue the Towne / aswellie by them of the centre, as of them withyn þe Towne, wherþrough his folkes might neuir be out of harneys, nor alt-moost had neuir rest / and yet were they neuer the 24 nerre, by ought they coude se, of their conquest, but rather ferther & ferther / than ^[1 ff. 65, bk.] they tolde him what direcccion had ben taken bothe by the Turke and by his counselle / and hou, if he might haue departid bifore this tyme with his honour, he had be gone long or 28 this / but he coude fynde noon oþer meane but this / Than tolde they him alle the charge that they had from the Turk vnto hym self, & of hem alle. king ffirbrace, hering thies tidinges, was <sup>K. Ferabras
is abashit,</sup> gretly abasshed, seyng that in so litel while the worlde was 32 chaunged with them / for a-boute the tyme of his takyng, their enemyes were in suche discorage that thei durst not wele be seen at no scarnyssh / yet neuertheles thies tidinges moche displeased him not / for he sawe wele therby sem profit might growe to his 36 delyuerance / whiche he desired ouir alle thing; so toke they <sup>but sees that
things may
work to set
him free.</sup> amonges them the best conclusion that they coude, to conduyte this matier to the pleasir of his brothir and to the honour of him self, and desired to haue certaine of the kyng of Siziles seruauntes, and <sup>He asks for
Sicilians to
confer with
him.</sup> 40 Counselle to speke with him / and with sche as had be sent vnto

him from his brothir / This came to the knowlage of the kynge of Sizile, and he assigned those same that he had sent bifore to fferaunt, to knowe his aduise and counselle / and whan thei were comen to kinge ffirabrace, he seide vnto them yn this manere / 4

K. Ferabras
tells the Sicilian Knights

"ffaire lordes, the cause that I haue sente vnto the kynge to speke with some of his counselle is this / ye knowe wele that y haue ben, as me thinkith, right long a prisoner, to my grete annoy / ye se here also thies two knightes, that be prisoners aswel as y / hou be it, 8 they haue not contynued so long, yet are they gretly annoyed, as it shewith wele by that y shalle shewe vnto you / they haue remembred for their deliueraunce, and haue ioyned me yn the matier with theim / for this that they thinke the Turke wille be sonner con- 12 fourmable to any resonable apointement for my wele, than for theires, by cause y am his brothir; and y shal telle you what they haue aduised me : It is, that y shold make a request to be put to ffynance, and by meane therof the Turke shold be content to take 16 trewes for half a yere, or a yere, with the kyng of Sizile & alle his / wherby the sege shold be reised, and prisoners delyuerd, aswele of one part as of othir / and by this meane bothe parties sholde ease them for that ceason / whiche, as me thinketh, sholde be a speciaH 20 wele and comfort vnto this Reaume, that hath so long contynued yn werre. ¹This are the mocions that they made vnto me, whiche

[¹ leaf 66] is to me right pleasaunt, if they coude haue the power to bring it to the same conclusione with my lord, my Brother / wheroft y haue 24 grete doute, seyng that he lith at the sege bifore his Towne, that but late was wonne from hym / Neuirtheles, if it please the kyng of Sizile to entende this matier, I wold employ me to the same entent / and require alle my frendes to giff the Turke counselle to 28 the same" / whan the knyghtes of Sizile had herd this mocione of

The Sicilians
say the King

kyng ffirabras, they seide vnto hym / "fforsothe, sir, or this tyme we haue herde the kyng, oure souuerayn Lord, say / that his entent was neuir to deliuere you tille the warres were ended bitwene the 32 Turke, your brother and him, without ye were rescowed by force / hou be it, we knowe not whether he wold be content, vpon good hostages, to enlarge you at your request, for to fynde some trety of

peas betwene your Brother and him, whiche thinge we alle, his company, [desire]. And if vpon this wele ye wille speke and charge vs, therwith, we wol make report vnto the kyng therof, and othirwise not" / Kynge ffirabrace helde longe vpon his vttir delyueraunce / But the knyghtes of Sizile wold in no wise agree thereto, seyng that 40

will only
enlarge him
for a time,

they were, alle be it they were not worthy, of the kynges counselle /
“and if we shold gif him avise of youre delyuerance, and not
assured of peas, we were not trewe vnto him ; wherfore be sure we <sup>and then only
if the war is stopped.</sup>
4 wille neuir speke therof as long as we lyue, without the warres be
ended / But if that were so, we wold right gladly employ vs to your
request / and now wille for your enlaryng, vndir suche fourme as
we haue seide you / trustyng the sonner to come therby to the weel
8 of peas / ffor we be sure ye wille more largely employ you therto, ye
beyng in daunger, than if ye were at your liberte.” ¶ Aftir alle
thies wordes, he trusted to come to his delyuerance. Natheles,
kyng ffirbrace was content that they shold speke to the kyng
12 for his enlaryng. The knyghtes seide, that with right god wille
they wold so do / And thus departed and came vnto the kyng of
Sizile, and made their report, as ye haue herde / and founde the <sup>The Sicilian
Knights re-
port to their
King.</sup>
kyng enclynable y-nough to entende to thise matiers, seyng the
16 counselle that he had hadde / and in abregging this matier without
moo wordes, they were concluded that, vpon good hostages, suche as
the kyng of Sizile was pleased with / that kyng ffirbrace was <sup>K. Ferabras
is set free
for a time,</sup>
enlarged and departed from the kyng of Sizile / of whom he toke
20 his leue, ^[¶ lf. 66, bk.] and of the quene and of their fair doughtir / & of alle the ^{ladies & gentilwommen.} The kyng made him honourably to be
condyte / And so wele sped he him / that in litil while he came to <sup>and goes to
his brother,
the Turke / whiche made him right grete chere / and so did alle the Sultan.</sup>
24 they that were there with him / this night was he gretly fested and
welcomed of his Brothir, and had moche talkyng to-gedir / for he
was a worthy knight, a passing wise man in grete matiers. So
· founde he his Brother alle of othir opinion than he lefte him /
28 a[n]d so did he alle them that he spake with ; wherof he had grete
mervaile. In litil while knewe he alle the plaisir of his brothir /
and sawe the maner of the sege / whiche thought him right
straunge. He sawe the fersnesse of them withyn the Towne / and
32 herd reported the grete damagis that they had done to the Turke
and to alle his company : the prowesse of Surnome, and Athis his
felawe, was often rehersed vnto him. Thus many tidynges herd
he / but noon to the honour of his brothir, nor of his partie, wherof
36 he was right sorowfuH, and thought wele in him self that it was
nolefull to haue a longe trews / for those folkes were discoraged in
alle pointes. Than put he him in diligence to this trews / and othir
notable folkes, and laboured it as shortly as they coude, so that the
40 trews was taken bytwene them for a yere / and whan the surtees

<sup>He works
for a Truce ;
and one is
arranged
for a year.</sup>

were made, sworne, and ensealed, the Turke departed from the
seige / & made alle prisoners to be yolden agein, aswele of one
party as of othir, saving kyng ffirbrace, whiche was but enlarged.
And for asmoche as fferaunt and his company halde moo prisoners 4
than the Turke had / he had in recompense a C. thousand bes-
auntes / and eueri besaunt worth a Doket / and, beside that, the
Turke deliuered agein ij. Townes / and deliuerd to the pouere folkes
of those Townes alle that they had lost / ¶ Now hath the Reaume 8

Prince Philip
has happily
changed the
state of
Sicily.

of Sizile endured this ij. yere yn grete peyne and mysery / But sith
the comyng of Surnome it began alle othirwise to turne. ¶ Thus
departed the seige from byfore the Towne, to the grete honour of
the kynge of Sizile, and of them wthyn. thorugh alle the Reaume 12
This trews was cried & pub[l]issed / wheroft Surnome & Athis were
right sory / for they thought a long terme to be a yere in feas /
seyng the warres be not ended ; and they purposed not to departe

[1 leaf 67]

before the ende of the warres. The kynge of ¹Sizile, that saw 16
him thus yn' feas for a yere, bithought him what he might do alle
that ceason / where of a longe while afore he had not ben idle so

The King of
Sicily sends
for Ferant,
and Princes
Philip and
David.

gretly / and so he sent for fferaunt, whom he desired moche to se /
for moche he thought him bounden vnto him / and praid him that 20
he wolde bringe with him bothe his seruauntes, for moche desired
he to se them, for the grete renome they were of ; and so did alle
they of his court, bothe ladies & gentilwomen, and knyghtes &
suyvers, & alle othir / Anon as fferaunt had resceyued his letter to 24
come to the kyng, and aftir that he had departed right largely
with the noble of his company / so that they alle were wele content /

They come,

and he joy-
fully wel-
comes them.

he wente in alle haste to the kynge / to whom it is not to be asked
if he were welcome / where at his comyng the kyng toke him in 28
his armes, seyng / "my frende, ye haue don so moche for me and
myn honour, that y am alle youres" / Than toke he Surnome in his
armes, and [had] of hym ynly grete ioy / than fferaunt shewed Athis
vnto him, of whom he had herde so moche worship / & then he in 32
like wise welcomed him fulle honourably / seyng : "what shal y
sey vnto you, faire lordes / ye thre be the right arme and diffence
of my reaume" / Aftir this, fferaunt & his company went vnto the

So do the
Queen and
the Ladies,

quene, and ladies & gentilwomen, whiche fulle honourably and ioi- 36
fully welcomed them / And moche was Athis loked on amonges
hem / for they had not sene him bifore / and they seide that god
had gyuen him grete grace / for heryng sey / his worthines was
meruailous / and his habilitie suche þat there was none comparable 40

to him, saf le Surnome, that passed al the worlde. This day passed forth in pleasir and in disporte / and euery day after they disported them with the ladies and gentilwomen yn alle honour. The kynges <sup>and Princess
Iolante.</sup>
 4 daughter, þat was so faire, as ye haue herde bifore / was right glad to haue thies gentilmen in hir company, without thinkyng of any harme or of any grete loue / hou be it, and hir fortune were to marye / perauenture she wold a sholde resemble one of them two /
 8 and in especial, Le Surnome. & if she had knownen that he had be <sup>Had Iolante
known who
Prince Philip
was, she'd
have given
him her
heart.</sup> either a kynges sone, or a grete prynce, she wolde haue gyuen hir herte vnto hym a-fore alle othir / But in asmoche as she thought he was but of smalle reputacion in regarde to hir estate, she had no
 12 suche ymaginacion, but ^[lf. 67, bk.] ^{only to be accompanied with them in alle} honorable disportes, and to make them frendly chere more than any othir / for the grete renome they were of, and for the good seruise they had done to hir fadir / Thus endured they a grete
 16 while in makyng Iustes, and turnays, and alle other disportes, for <sup>Jousts and
sports are the
day.</sup> they had no thing ellis to do / And yn euery thinge Le Surnome &
 Athis passed alle othir / Now leuyth the tale a while to speke of the kyng of Sizile and of his company / that restith them this
 20 wynter, as ye haue herde, and retourneth to speke of the Turke, of his Brother, and of their company. [Illumination : March of Sultan, Knights, &c.]

Accordyng to suche apointement as was taken, the Turke <sup>The Sultan
withdraws,
weary, to
his biggest
town in
Sicily,</sup> departed fro the seige and alle his company, & drewe him in to the gretest towne that he helde at that tyme, that he had conquered in Sizile / so wery and trauailed with the warres, that almost he might be no weryer, and so were alle his folkes, fro the moost to the leest; for, moche payne and myserie had they
 28 endured at the sege, as wele of famyne as othirwise / and the Turke thought wele, that he was escaped with his honour fro the worst bargayn that he was atte alle his lyue, by the meanes of his Brother / and no man coude sey that this trews that was taken, had
 32 be for his pleasir / or by his cause, but only by the request of his Brother and othir of his folkes that had ben prisoners / Aftir that he and his folkes were a litil rested / he concluded to leue grete garrisons / and his places wele furnysshed, and he and his Brother
 36 to retourne in-to their Contre / and seide vnto his folkes that he lefte ther / “that he wolde not faile at the ende of trews to be there agein, so wele accompayned, that he wolde ^[2 leaf 68] ^{neuir departe} thens til he had accomplished alle his pleasirs.” These titynges
 40 wele ordeyned / he departed out of Sizile, & drewe vnto his owne <sup>then garris-
sons all his
conquests
there,</sup> <sup>and goes
home.</sup>

Marches / and his brother *with him* / whan they came ther / it is no
 doute but he was honorably resceyued of alle his suggestes / for of a
 grete while he had not be *with hym*, he abode there a ceason or he
 wold speke any thyng of suche purposes as he entended / But kyng 4
 ffirabrace foraye not the couenaunt he had made at his enlargyng,
 for he had sworne vpone his lawe / that he sholde ayen alle cristen
 prisoners that were in any Londe of his brothers or his / And in
 the same towne that his Brother and he lay, was yong Humfray 8
 prisoner, the kynge of Englondes sone / hou be it, noman knewe
 what he was; & of that yonge prisoner was kyng ffirabrace
 enfourmed / and than wente he vnto the Turke, and tolde him of
 his promes that he had made at his departir out of Sizile / And 12
 the Turke asked if any prisoners were in that Towne / and he scide
 "yea" / for there had ben a vesselle takyn with xiiij. persones yn
 it / wherof they had reserued but ij., and that one of them dyde,
 and that othir is yet alyue, a yonge man so megre & seke, that, as 16
 men thought, he might lyue no while / Than the Turke sent for
 him; & whan he sawe him, he asked him of whens he was / this
 yonge Humfray, þat was so ouir come as he that neuir bi-fore had
 ben acostomed yn suche mysery & pouert / answerd with with low 20
 vois & feble, "fforsothe, sir, y am cristen, borne of the reaume of
 Englond / and my name is Ector / By fortune y arryued here / grete
 almes it had ben for them that toke me to haue put me to deth /
 but sith it pleaseth god that y endure this longe payne, y am con- 24
 tente." The turke, that sawe him megre, & alle out of likyng, was
 no thing sory therof. And notwithstandingyng / that by his owne
 counselle and his agreement / his brother had made thus promys, yet
 thought he alwey in his mynde, that asmoche as he might, his 28
 brother shold neuir fynde prisoner / but that he wolde put them to
 dethe or they came yn his brothirs handes; for if he coude knownen
 of any prisoner bi-fore his brothir / he wolde haue made him
 secretly be put to dethe / But for the symplesse & pouert of his 32
 persone, he gruggid the lesse his deliueraunce, & toke him vnto ¹his
 brother / that ful grete pite had of this yong man / & sent him
 vnto his loggyng / & made him to be eased & serued of that was
 nedefulle to hym, made him to be bayned and newe clothid of alle 36
 that longed vnto him / and wythyn little while, by the comfort
 and helpe of kyng ffirabrace, he amended / and came ayen to his
 grete bewte / so that eueri man had ioy to beholde him / kinge
 ffirabrace thought, assone as he was hole, and that he might ride, 40

There, Prince Humphrey of England lies in prison.

The Sultan sends for him;

and as he's thin and ill,

[1 lf. 68, bk.]
gives him up
to K. Fera-
bras, who

*soon gets him
into good
condition,*

that he wolde sende him yn-to the handes of cristen men / And
many tymes he wold biholde him / & thinke yn his mynde that they
were passing wele fetured / and goodly folkes of Englonde, ffaunce,
and admires his beauty.

4 & Scotland, for by they were of his marches, he remembred of Sur-
name & Athis, that he had sene at his departir out of Sizile / and
thought that Ector was moche of the same age / and if Surnome had
him, he supposed he wolde be right lothe to lete him oute of his com-
pany / And than wolde he thinke / if he had the hardinesse of one
of them / a shold not faile to do grete hurte vnto their party, if he
lynued long. Than was he somtyme yn wille not to sende him; and
than wold he thinke ayen / that he had sworn his feithe, whiche
12 he wold not breke, to dy for it / In this ferme wille contynued he,
and on a day wente to se the Turke, his brother, and brought with
him Ector / whiche aftirward he repented / for vnnethe might he
bryng hym ayein / as ye shal here / The Turke bihelde this yong
16 man that was with his brothir, & thought wele he was a straunger /
for he knewe hym not / he was so gretly chaunged & amendid sith
he sawe him / and wele he thought he semed ful like to come to
grete honour / wherfore he axed his brother what he was; and he
20 tolde him it was the cristen man that was delyuerd vnto him the
last day / “fforsothe,” seide the Turke, “I knewe him not, he is so
meruailously amendid / my hert yeueth me, if he be deliuerd, that
he shold do vs grete damage / wherfor, my brother, ther nedith
24 neuir none knowe of this matier / and y pray you, for the wele of
vs and of oure lawe, to be agreeable that he may be some night
secretly drowned / for ye knowe wele that by the comyng of one
straunger yn-to Sizile, were ye taken / and almoost to the destruc-
28 cion of vs alle / wherfore y holde youre conscience more hurte,
¹ what othe so euir ye haue made, if ye deliuere him, than to do as
.I. sey / for the grete losse of oure folkes that may come by hym /
wherfore y pray you, brother, to be agreeable to my desire / and y
32 wol take the synne on me / And as for shame, ye may noon haue /
for neuir noon shalle knowe it” / whan firbrace herde his brother
sey thus / and sawe the deth of Ector his prisoner redy, if he
socoured him not / he was so wroth and sory / that of a grete while
36 he coude not awnswere, for right moche loued he Ector; and also in
his lawe he was right trewe and a noble knyght, whiche shalle
shewe by hym yn alle his werkes. The Turke, þat sawe hym in
grete thought / and that he answerd not / asked hym ageyn /
40 “how say ye hereto, faire brother” / “fforsothe,” seide firbrace,

One day
K. Ferabas
takes Prince
Humphrey to
see the Sultan
again.

And as he
looks so well,

the Sultan
proposes to
have him
quietly
drown'd.

[¹ leaf 60]

This angers
K. Ferabas,

"I haue fere to sey any thyng that shold displesse you / and therfore was y so longe stille / but, sir, ye are mighti, and a roialle kynge, yn whom aught to be founde more trouthe than yn a meane persone. And y sey for me, I am not so mighti a kynge as ye 4
be / albeit y am your brothir and a kyng / I haue promysed my feith, such as ye knowe by youre owne agreement / and if y shold be forsworne for one only man / forsothe, my lord, it shold be noon honour to you nor me / And where as ye say, it shold neuir be 8 knownen / trewly y shold be as sorowfulle to knowe my self vntrewe as alle the worlde knewe it. what wold men sey if it were knownen that y shold put this cristen man to dethe / that was delyuered ynto my kepyng for his surete? they wolle likken me to a Bocher that 12 gressith beestes / and than putteth them to dethe / wherfore, y biseche you, my lorde, take no displeasir though y consente not herto / for if it so befelle that ye wolde put him to dethe, as ye may wele y-nough, if it please you, I make promesse to alle the 16 goodes that we bileue on / that y shal never aftir abide yn your seruice, but rather go yelde me prisoner agein, and holde my feith, and perauenture do som thinge that shalle displease you / what example shalle oure folkes take at oure dedes if, for so litil a thyng, 20 we shalle breke oure feith and oure promises" / The Turke, heryng his brother thus spekyng, saide vnto him thus / "he neuir made no such promys, but only for his wele / and as for any promys, but only for his wele / he night breke it whan he wolde / for he was 24 not sworne therto / and if it were to do agein, he wold neuir do so moche for him / And said he wold ¹sende to alle his officers thorough his reaume / that if they had any cristen men in their handes, that they shold put them to dethe / and seide that he was not bounde to 28 be sugget vnto his brother" / And whan kyng ffirbrace sawe the Turke wrothe / he answerd right humbly / seyng, "my lord, y neuir made promes but by your auctorite. And by this meane, saving your correcccion, be ye bounde as welle as I. Neuirtheles, ye 32 may do it as it pleasith you; I am not bounde to noon ympossibilitate / but y say for me, y shall trewly kepe alle that y haue promysed as longe as it is possible for me" / The pouere Ector was yn the chambre alle this while, & thought fulle litle where abounte 36 they were / for he wende fulle wele to be assured of his departyng / Sone aftir kyng ffirbrace toke leue of his brother, right sorowfull & wrothe, & thought in his mynde to kepe his prisoner as surely as he night, for he drede moche his brother / and so he had cause, for 40

and he says
that he has
sworn to free
Christian
prisoners.

If the Sultan
kills Hun-
phrey,

K. Ferabras
will at once
give himself
up to the
Christians.

[¹ lf. 69, bk.]

He will keep
his promise,
so far as he
can.

assone as he was departed / he ordeyned folkes to sle yonge Ector, The Sultan tells some of his folk to kill Prince Humphrey.

4 thought to be avenged on Ector. On the tothir party kynge ffirbras knewe his brother right cruelle / wherfore he had grete drede of his prisoner, and ordeyned that he shold haue a chambre withyn his owne loggyng / and a xvij. or xx^{ti} men to awaite aboue him / K. Ferabras sets 20 men to safeguard Prince Humfrey.

8 whiche he charged, on their lyues, to awaite wele aboue him / and to diffende him to their powers from alle daungers / and they obeid his commaundement without departyng fro hym at any tyme / Thise folkes that the Turke had youen yn commaundement

12 to slee Ector, put them in alle the deuoir they coude therto ; but they coude neuir fynde the meanes to haue him / kynge ffirbras thinkyng alwey on the tiranny of his brother, concluded in him self to sende a-wey his prisoner be night / and to make him surely to

16 be conduyte in-to some cristen lande / and for cause his goyng shold not be espied, he made tho men that he had apointed aboue Ector, to kepe stille his chambre ij. or iij. daies after he was gon, like as he had be stille there / Then tolde he vnto Ector alle thentent of his

20 brothir / and how he was displeased with hym because he wold not breke his promes / and therfore wold he sende him nowe thens / and delyuer hym to officers ^[1 leaf 70] of armes, to whom he had grete trust / & ordeyned them to ride aH the night / and to kepe the wodes on who is to start at night,

24 the dayes / than delyuered he hym to his guydes, & charged them on their lyues to brynge Ector to saufte. Than he made Ector to promyse hym that he shold yekle him prisoner to one that hight and give himself up to Prince Philip.

28 Surnome, that was seruaunt with the SenesshaH of Sizile / Ector toke leue of the kynge his maister / and offerd hym aH the seruice that he might do / so it were no preiudice vnto his feith / And whan it was night, he departed / and they that shold conduyte Humphrey starts.

him / so secretly, that they were espied of no body. ¶ Nowe

32 retourneth the tale vnto the Turke, that aH-wey contynued stille in his grete cruelte / He called them that he had commaundid to slee Ector, and asked them / “ howe is it that ye haue not done as y haue commaunded you ” / and they seide, “ that þei might not ” /

36 for eueri day was he with kynge ffirbras / & on nightes had he xx^{ti} men waityng on him / when the Turke herd this, he was gretly displeased / In so moche that in a fury he commaundid that iij. or iiiij. score of his folkes shold breke vp the dore where as Ector was /

40 and to slee him / and let for no man / this was apointed to be done

on the morow / Here-bifore ye haue herd howe kynge ffirabras made to kepe Ectours chamber, like as he had ben there, to thentent that he myght be a good wey of / or his brother knewe of his departing / ffor he knewe wele, and his brother might gete him / 4 ther shold be founde yn him non othir mercy but deth. Thus was Ector departed ij. daies bifore the Turke had made his entirprise vpon him / So the seconde day at night, they came vnto the chamber, where as they wende to finde Ector / purposyng 8 verily to haue slayne hym, not letting for noman. Thus brake they vp the dore alle sodeynly vpone them that kepte the chambre / and it was in kyng ffirabreces owne logging / wherof the crie & the noise was suche, that kyng ffirabras himself cam thider, and many 12 of his folkes with him / And whan they sawe the kinge come, they withdrew them alle, sauf x. or xij. personnes that bode stille ran-sakyng the chambre, whiche kyng ffirabras made to be hewen bifore him. These tidinges came to the Turke ; and it was tolde 16

[¹ lf. 70, bk.] him alle the maner how they ¹came in-to the Chambre / where as they founde not Ector, and howe the noise & the crie was suche, that his brother came thider, and slowe x. or xij. of his folkes / The Turke, herynge this tale, was right sorowfuH and wrroth / and sent 20 for his pryyee counself / and tolde them al the matier, without hiding of any-thyng / bothe of the wordes that were bitwixt his brother and him / and how, for displeasir therof, he wold haue put Ector to the dethe / and in what wise / and how his brother was 24 displeased / and had put x. or xij. of his folkes to dethe / which was to his grete shame and displeasir / whiche he wold not leue so / wherfore he asked their best counself and advise / ffor if he shold folowe his owne wiH / he wolde do his brother a grettir annoy and 28 displeasir than he had done him yet. They of whom he asked counself were wise, & perceyued wele by his owne tale that the

² The Sultan's
Privy Coun-
cil reproach
him

defaute was yn hym / wherfore they seide thus vnto him, " Sir, saving youre displeasir, ye haue ben with my lorde youre brother 32 to ouir hasty ; for, as vs thinkith, tho wordes that he had vnto you meued hym of fre and noble corage ; and ye haue done him a vilany / sith, in his owne loggingyng ye wolde make to slee his folkes ;

³ for his be-
haviour to
K. Ferabras.

for the prisoner was his. And to make folkes come yn be night 36 with force of armes in-to the loggingyng of so noble a kyng as he is / it semeth vs a grete offence / seyng he hath done so moche for you / we thinke he wilt take this in grete displeasir / And we drede moche, yf this matier be not the sonner appesed, grete inconvenience 40

² days after,
the Sultan's
men break
open King
Ferabras's
door,

^{but find}
Prince Hum-
phrey gone.

may growe therof / The kynge your brother is a Lorde of such
courage as ye knownen weel / and for you, and yn your werres, he
hath aventure body and goodes, and standith at this day yet
4 prisoner / his men and his sogettes haue done you goode seruice /
wherby many of them haue lost their lyues / and this is a smalle re-
warde that ye yelde him / wherfore we meruaile nought though he
be displeased / considering like as he seide vn-to you such promesse
8 as he made / to deliuere all the cristen prisoners that were in any
partie of youre Reaume / bothe by your owne pleasir & agrement /
wherfore it were litle meruaile if, for the despite that ye haue done
him / he meued werre agiest you / So moche as he hath done for
12 you a-fore this" / "By my trouthe," seide the Turke, "if ¹y coude [1 leaf 71]
thinke he wolde do so / I sholde sone deliuere the worlde of
him" / Than his counself answerd him, "Remembre, sir, what
sholde falle ther-of if ye put hym to deth / ffor he hath fair childre,
16 whiche shull not be so nigh of blode vnto you as he is / nor in
affection / whiche wolde rekke lesse to meue werre to yow-ward
than he wolde / also he is kynge of a noble & a mighti Reaume /
and wel beloued theryn / and of the moost worthy folkes that ye be
20 serued of this day, be his sogettes / and they loue him asmoche as
is possible for any sogettes to loue their Lorde / Thinke ye than to
be without werre, by sleyng of hym? nay, nay / ye may be sure /
and that were shold stike nerre you than the werres of Sizile / And
24 more to your shame & reproef." The Turke, hering thies wordes,
knewe wele that thise folkes seide hym trouthe / and than seide he
vnto them, "it behoueth to knowe howe my brother takith this
thing to hert / I trowe he wolde be wele pleased if ye went to hym /
28 and if ye thinke it be to, y am content / and that ye say vnto him,
that y knowe nothinge of alle this / and if any haue offendid hym, it
shal be wele amendid / And if he seme not myn amedes y-nough /
if he require me of Iustice / y shal do it him. And ye may sey
32 hym, that y am right sory of this auenture / and if y had knownen
it a-fore, y wold for no thinge haue ben agreeable ther-to / how be it
y was not pleased of the deliueraunce of the cristen man, ffor the
experience that y haue sene in two only men to oure grete damage /
36 I pray you do so moche if ye may, that this thinge be wele appeased /
ffor if it be ferre spoken of / there may growe litle honour therby
to either of vs bothe." They were glad whan they herde their
maister thus speke / for the matier was to hym right shamefull /
40 and they, as good seruauntes, to appease it, toke the charge on them

The Privy
Council
remind
the
Sultan of
K. Ferabras's
great ser-
vices.

They warn
him against
killing Fera-
bras.

The Sultan
asks his
Council to

apologize to
K. Ferabras
for him.

with right good wille, and departed from the Turke, and went to the kynge his brothir / whom they founde al^t redy to ride / and whan they came, they spake with hym at good leiser, and tolde hym in substance alle the wordes as ye haue herde before / And than 4
 K. Ferabras
tells the
Turkish
Council
[¹ ff. 71, bk.]
kyng ffribrace made alle his compleynte vnto them ful pitously / and seide, "my frendes, y cannot bilene that noon of you were consentyng or agreeable to do me so grete a wronge, ¹ffor y haue serued my Lord my brother, with my body, my goodes, and alle my 8 power, as longe as y might, so that y am now prisoner, and in way of destruccion / And thus, in his Towne, and of his folkes, there hath be done to me so grete Iniurye, that I am al^t abasshed to se his men come yn with force of armes, to breke vp the dore on my 12 prisoner, to haue murthred hym, as they saide, & haue hurte & wounded my folkes; and y haue none othir socour but to sau me self. fulle long shold it be, or a straunger might be sure with hym / whan y, that am his seruaunt & his brother, am yn drede of my lif, 16 & neuir did thinge that of right shold displease him / wherfore it is bettir for me to withdrawe me in-to my contre, and assay amonges my solettes to gedre my fynaunce, whiche y trust will not leue me yn this daunger / than to abide in this Towne, and be alwey in 20 thise vnykndely daungers; wherfore, my frendes, y wilt departe / and Recommaunde me to my Lord & my brother, and sey hym that y compleyne me of hym to hym self / and yet alwey y shal contynue his trewe seruaunt and brother" / Thise wordes sent he, with- 24 out longer taryng with the messangers, and toke his hors, and went his way yn-to his owne Reaume, where as he was resceyued with grete ioie / and was assured of his persone / for there was he mighty loggid / so that he had no drede of his brother / The Turkes mes- 28 sangers came vnto him agein / and told hym alle howe they had done, and what his brother had seide / and how he was departed. whan the Turke herde thise tidynges, he was yn wille to sende a company aftir his brothir, to brynge hym ageyn, wold he or not / 32 But aftir many aduisementes of his folkes, he lefte that opinion, yn trust that by some bettir meane / and with more honour, they sholde accorde.

K. Ferabras
forthwith
rides to
Persia, and
is welcomd
there.

Prince Hum-
phrey keeps
to the woods.

Now most we speke a litle of Ector, that al^t the nyght rideth / 36 and on dayes tyme kepith him close yn woodes, til he were surely conduyte in-to the Reaume of Sizile / to suche place as þey had in charge that guyded hym. And there they departed fro hym, & taught hym the way / and the Townes that he sholde 40

how badly
the Sultan
has treated
him.

He will go
home.

passe by til he came vnto the kynge. Than toke he leue of them,
 and thanked them right humbly / offryng them seruice & frendship
 for the peyne they had with hym, ful humbly recommendingyng
 4 hym vnto kynge ffirabrace, as to ^[1 leaf 72] hym that he was moost bounde
 to / of al earthly men. Thus departed he from them / and passed ^{Prince Hum-}
 thorugh the Reaume of Sizile ; and in his iournay he mette ^{phrey rides} with ^{thro' Sicily.}
 some of the kynges folkes, to whom he tolde part of his charge /
 8 and accompanied with them til he came thider as the kyng was.
 And yn his iournay, he fil yn remembraunce of the grete goodnesse
 of oure Lord, remembryng the grete ynfirmitees that god delyuered
 hym of / bothe out of prison & from the malice of the Turke /
 12 whiche he knewe weel, was by no meane that he coude make, but
 only by the grete bounte of oure Lorde, wherin he thought him ful
 vnable to do seruice vnto god / aftir the grete grace / that he had
 youen him / And than made he avowe and promysse to god / that
 16 if he lyued so longe, he shold abide in his seruice yn the Reaume ^{He rows to}
 of Sizile til god had releued it / or ellis it were vttirly lost / and yn ^{fight for it}
 the meane season, neuir to discouer what he was, to no creature.
 and thus determyned he yn hym self, fro that day forth to take in
 20 pacience what peyne or pouerte that god wold sende hym yn his
 seruice / whan he had taken this ferme purpose, he came thider as
 the kyng lay / and asked first of alle / aftir the Senesshalls loggyng,
 whiche was sone tolde him ; ffor, nexte the kyng, there was no
 24 man in al the Reaume kepte so grete an house as he did / nor was
 so moche renome / And whan he came to hym / he fonde hym at ^{He goes to}
 Dyner, & Surnome & Athis seruyng him, for he coude neuir make ^{Ferant,}
 hem do othirwise / but to be more diligent yn his seruice than any ^{Prince}
 28 othir man / that longed vnto hym / Ector is thus entred in-to the
 halle, and salowed fferaunt and alle his company / and aftir, he asked
 whiche was he that men called Le Surnome. fferaunt behelde him,
 and sawe him yonge, faire, and wele proporcioneed yn every feture /
 32 and al smylyng, saide vnto hym / "my frende, biholde, this same
 is he / ye may sey to him what it pleasith you / And if ye will
 speke with hym a-part, ye may" / "In good faith, sir," said Ector,
 "nay / y had leuer speke with him yn presence of moo folkes / for
 36 that his loos & renome sholde be knownen / and y wold y were of
 suche worthynesse that he might be enhaunsed by me ; hou be it,
 he hath little nede therof, for it is spred thoroughout alle the world."
 and than saide he to Surnome, "kyng ffirabrace, youre prisoner,
 40 that holdith hymself weel ewred ^[2 lf 72, 14.] sith his fortune is to be prisoner /"

to be taken of so noble and good handes as of youres, and accordyng to promesse, that of pite, & by trety, ye made hym to make / he recommaundith hym to you, and sendith me to you, to do with me what it pleasith you, & hath deliuerd me out of that prison / wher- 4 yn y was brought by fortune and tempest of the see / and he sendith you worde for trouthe, that yet hath he founde no moo cristen prisoners / And whom-som-euir it bifalle, wele I thanke god it is bifallen me wele nowe / and aftir, y thanke you, whom god hath 8 youen the grace to helpe me out of this daunger / wherfore, yn accomplisshyng my feith & promys, y yelde me to you" / than kneled he downe bifore him, and wold haue kissed his feet / Le Surnome, alle abasshed of the honour he did hym, toke hym vp by 12 the hande / and saide / "my frende, y thanke God that ye be delyuerd / for me thinketh it had ben grete pite if ye had ben thus lost. And for Rawsome, y shalt put you to choise, whethir ye will be felawe to Athis & me, or maistre of oure chambre / and 16 take which it pleasith you." "fforsothe," saide Ector, "I am no man of suche honour to be felawe with neither of you / But and it pleased you to take me as your seruaunt, I wol̄ desire no grettir honour / and I thinke me wele fortuned so for to be" / feraunt, 20 that sawe this yonge man stande with Surnome and Athis, thought hym-self right moche bounden to god ; for eueri day beffile hym good aventures / for he hadde grete trust in Ectors worthynesse, and was right glad that he logged with Surnome and Athis ; and 24 toke hym in reputacion as felawe to theim. Thise tidynges came to the kynge and to the quene / and to their faire doughtir as they sate at dyner / and eueri man saide, that he was wele fortuned that was sent in-to the company of Surnome. Than was tolde the 28 maner of his comyng, and howe grete ioie feraunt had therof. "fforsothe," saide the kynge / "he is happy / & hath cause to be ioifull, for his renoome is multiplied & doubled with straungers that come to his service, whiche, had not ben for his displeasir, I 32 had receyued hem long sith of my houshold / hou be it, I haue ben serued with them in his company, as wele or bettir than if they had ben abidyng with me" / As they were yn thise wordes, came yn the Seneshall and Ector with hym, whiche he brought vnto the kynge, 36 and he salowed hym right 1humbly / and the quene & hir doughtir / And than the kynge enquired hym first of the maner of his person, and aftir his deliverance, and of the tidynges of beyonde the see / and in euery thinge he answerd so wele & so wisely, that the kynge 40

Prince
Humphrey

yields him-
self to Prince
Philip,

and asks to
serve him.

Prince Hum-
phrey is
taken to the

[1 leaf 73]
King and
Queen of
Sicily, and
Princess
iolante.

and alle folkes had grete ioie to here hym / Aftir dyner was he brought vnto the ladies, whiche had grete ioie to beholde him / and so had fferaunt, whiche saide, he was a man replenysshed of all 4 beaute yn visage and body / and in wordes and maner fully assured, “and I trust fully yet to se him do as moche in dedes of armes as alle thise” / “fforsothe,” saide the folkes to fferaunt, “we leue it wele; and ye be moche bounden to god, for he hath gyuen you 8 fortune to haue noble seruauntes.” Thus contynued Ector with fferaunt and his ij. felawes, abiding the ceason of the Turkes comyng, whiche they thought right longe. The kynge made them alle ij. to be reteyned with his daughter / hou be it, their moost abidyng was 12 with fferaunt / But yet, to put them to the more honour, whan they were there as she was, they did hir dayly seruice / And eueriche did his seruice so proprely / that it shewed wele they had be norisshhed vp therin. And amonges them ij. was suche frendship / that ech 16 of them desired to honour his felaw more than himself. Now leneth to speke of the kynge of Sizile and of his company, and retourneth to the Turke, that was in his contre / as ye haue herde.

Prince Hum-
phrey stays
with Ferant
and Prince
Philip and
Prince David.

20 **A**ftir the departyng of kynge ffirbras, his Brothir, many of his solettes beganne to grucche ageinst him for the wrong 24 that he had done vnto his brothir; and moche peyne had he to appease it / And fro that day forth, neuir encreased he / ffor ffirbras, that sawe him self in daunger of prison, wold neuir after do 28 his brother seruice yn the warres, he nor noon of his solettes. And if he had not be prisoner / many folkes Iuged he wolde haue made warre ageinst his Brother him-self, for the grete vnykyndenesse he hadde shewed him / Neuirtheles it was for that tyme appesed. The 32 Turke made, all this ceason, ordinaunce for his goyng yn-to Sizile / and assembled alle his men / seyng vnto them, “my frendes, ye knowe wele howe y haue enterprised to conquere the Reaume of Sizile, and howe y haue at this day in my ¹hande, fult nigh half 36 the Reaume / and if y shold nowe leue of / it were to me grete shame / wherfore y aske nowe counselt therin / for y am affermid to go thidre / But y aske aide and comfort of my solettes and of my frendes / whiche is the cause y nowe haue assembled you” / 40 Than toke they counselt amonges them; and, in conclusion, euery man ayded the Turke aftir his power / more than euir they had done bifore / so that he coude them right grete thanke / Than mustred he his folkes, & fonde his nombre grettir than euir it was. Thus emploied he the tyme of the trews in purveaunce, that he was

After King
Ferabas's
departure,

the Sultan
never pros-
pers.

But he pre-
pares for his
fresh inva-
sion of Sicily.

^[1] II. 73, bk.]

The Sultan
resolves to
besiege
Naples,
where the
King of
Sicily is.

concluded, aftir the feste of seynt Iohne, to entre in-to the Reaume of Sizile / to make grettir warre than euir he had done bifore / This was his armes & his departyng concluded / & euery man apointed what he shold do / and him self determyned to lay seege bifore the 4 Towne of Naples, where as the kynge was, the quene & hir doughtir / and the moost of alle the noble folkes of the Reaume / seyng verrily, that if he had ones conquered that Towne, he sholde haue little besynesse to wynne the remenaunt of the Reaume / Thus thought 8 they that they had little to do, but with that Towne allone. They ordeyned also an othir grete company, beside them that shold ly at the seege, to conduyte their vitaile & ordenaunce, without distourbyng or troubllyng of them that shold abide at the seege / Than were 12 the Capteynes ordeyned that shold haue the charge of euery thinge / And when alle was wele puruayde / The Turke abode stille in peas til the tyme came that he sholde go in-to Sizile.

The King of
Sicily is told
of the Sul-
tan's prepar-
ations.

[1 leaf 74]

He organizes
his own de-
fence.

by advice of
his Council.

Now seith the tale, that the kynge of Sizile, that was fulle wise, 16 made alle diligence to knowe & enquere the purueaunce of his enemyes / & spent grete good to the same entent / and did so moche, that he had waged folkes of the Turkes owne / and knewe by them, alle suche apointement as the Turke had taken / and here-vpon he assembled his counsell / and tolde hem how he was asserteyned, and praied them eueri man to take aduise there-vpon, for it was tyme / the newe ceason approched so nigh, wherfore it was expedient to take good aduise & short, here^lvpon / and many mocions 24 were made vpon the maner of his conduyte, but no ferme purpose was takyn / This tyme ranne ouir alle of the grete ffense that the kynge of Sizile made in his Reaume to thencountre of the Turke, and howe that the trews shold breke vp at the feste of seynt Iohne / 28 and than the Turke shold come agen in-to the Reaume of Sizile with grete power / but for alle that, there was no kynge nor othir prince that any thinge disposid hym to the helpe or socours therof / Thus on a day the kynge of Sizile, to whom the matier touched 32 moost, whiche daily and hourely had it yn remembraunce, called some of his moost secrete counselle / & newly toke avice of this matier / and there-vpon euery thinge in writyng, yn suche wise as ye shal here / ffirst it was apointed to write and sende newe mes- 36 sangers to alle cristen Reaumes / wherin he had no grete trust of socour, for many tymes had he done so before / natheles, in asmoche as the matier was newer than it had ben othir tymes / for it was aftir a longe trews that the werre shold begynne agein / And also 40

that they shold not thinke in hym that he was so presumptuous /
that for the wele of the cristen feith he deyned not to requyre no
body / ffor thise causes, concluded he to sende to alle Reaumes / hou
4 be it, he had no hope but only yn god, and yn his owne power /
wherfore he purueide him as weel as he coude, *with the helpe of his*
owne folkes, to abide suche fortune as god wolde sende him / And
hou-be-it that he had tidinges that the seige sholde be leide bifore
8 what place that he were yn / yit lette not he to purvey and ordeyne
his othir places / and to sette good and sure Capitaynes in eche of
theim, and concluded fro that day forthe to fortifie alle his places /
& to purvey for alle thinge that was nedefulle to the kepyng of them,
12 for as long tyme as his power might stretche vnto. Aftir, ordeyned
he for the place that he wold abide yn him-self, the Quene and his
doughtir, and suche folkes as he wolde haue with him / Than
apointed he fferaunt & his company to abide with him / Aftir this,
16 ordeyned he, that if the seige were bifore him, a general Captayne
that shold be his lieutenaunt at large in his Reaume, whiche sholde
haue ¹power to assemble alle the garisons, what tyme it pleasid hym,
for to distourbe & trouble his enemyes / & the seide lieutenaunt
20 shold haue a certayne nombre of folkes that sholde haue none othir
charge but to accompany hym / and to go with him to suche place
as nede sholde be, for to recomforte them, as wele by power of folkes
as othir wise / if by dethe, or fortune of werre, the garrisons were
24 amynysshed / Aftir, he ordeyned that alle men shold drawe theim to
the good Townes, *with alle their goodes and catelle*, for to sustene
the garrisons / and also to thentent that their enemyes shold fynde
searste of vitaile to comfort and releue theim *with*. Thise thinges be
28 put yn writyng, than he assembled his Captaynes and his Counselle,
as many as he might / and in their presence made it to be redde /
seyng vnto them, that this was but a maner of a mocion, praing
them to take good aduise theron / and euery man to sey his opinion.
32 ¶ It was thought by them alle / that they coude take no bettir
aduise than the kyng had shewed theim / trustyng, if good were
their good Lord, the Turke shold haue wers welcomyng than he
had laste / thinkyng that, if he had not bettir yere amonges them
36 than he had laste, he shulde be right wele content to take a lenger
trews / and neuir to come again / Thise thinges thus accorded &
diligently done / messangers were sent to alle Reaumes / the Capi-
taynes named & proclaimed thorngþout alle the Reaume / that every
40 man shold take his good and his catelt, & draw him in-to goode

The King of
Sicily appeals
to other
realms for
help.

He bids
Ferant and
his men stay
in Naples.
He appoints
a Captain-
General in
the country
[¶ lf. 74, bk.]
to manage
the troops
there; and

orders all
folk into
garrison
towns.

The Sicilian
Council
agree.

Townes / for the sauacion of them and their goodes / Thus euery man entendid to his charge, and did so diligently, that yn litil
 Ferant makes Naples safe. while alle thinge was done as the kynge had ordeyned. fferaunt
 had the charge to fortifie & furnysshe the Townes that the kyng 4
 shold be ynne / and he did it so diligently and so wele / that it was impossible, if god were their good lorde, for any men to wynne it
 for many yercs / ffor ye may wele thinke / there that the kynge,
 the quene, and hir doughtir were / there lakked nouther vitaile nor 8
 ordenaunce / Thise thinges thus purveid as ye haue herde / alle the Reaume was wele recomforted, to abide suche aventure as god wold
 sende hem / The tyme drewe fast on, that the trews shold breke /
 and euery Capitayne drewe him to his garison, with suche company 12

[1 leaf 75]
 The Sicilian
 Garrisons are
 munitiond.

as was assigned hym / and kepte ¹suche rewle and ordenaunce,
 aswele of spense of vitaile as of othir thinges, as if the seige had be leyde before them / for they knewe wele it wold be long or they coude gete any more vitaile. And on the tothir partie, the Turke 16
 assembled his folkes to go in-to Sizile with grettir nombre than euir he had bifore ; he made to charge grete shippes with vitaile & ordenaunce, so that hym thought no thinge sholde faile him / He made them to be brought in-to suche places in Sizile as helde of hym / 20
 and ordeyned his folkes to conduyte hem fro thens alway to the seige, as nede shold require, like as ye haue herde bifore / his ordenaunce was so grete, that it was meruaile to se it / He and alle

The Turkish army lands
 at Capletrent,
 and marches
 to Naples.

his folkes landed at the port of Capletrent / and whan he had ben 24 there a while, he toke his iournay toward Naples, to lay seege there ; for there was the kyng alle at his ease, redy purueid ageinst his comyng / whan the kyng vndirstode thise tidinges, he was alle recomforted, trustyng verrily in the helpe of god, and thought right 28 longe aftir the Turkes comyng / But of alle othir, Ector was moost ioifull of their comyng / ffor, daies of his lif, he had neuir sene bataile nor none assemble in armes / and alle his desire was to folowe Surnome & Athis, to se the worthines that he had herde speke of theim, 32 and to take ensample at theim ; for wele he wist that there was noon

The 3 French,
 Scotch, and
 English
 Princes are
 like brothers.

so moche renomed in the Reaume as they / And thise iij. loued to gedir as they had be bretheren / ffor neuir had they but one loggyng, one purs, and one wille / and neuir was there amonges them angry 36 word / Surnome & Athis had grete desire to wite how Ector sholde demene him in the werres, for that he was so perfite in alle othir thinges ; and he purveide, so that he was right wele horsed and armed / and eche of them iij. promysed feith & trouthe to othir / 40

and bicame brethern in armes / ye may wele thinke that the ladies
 and gentilwomen, whan they sawe hem in this case / were not wele
 assured when they herd the belle of the wacche, for the comyng of
 4 the Turke : they wepte ful sorrowfully / and every man recomforted
 them / and brought them to suche places where they might se the
 puyssance come / and if the grete drede that they had of the werre
 had not be / it had ben a good sight to see / ffor the Eyre and the
 8 erthe resplendisshed with the Baners of gold, and of siluer, and of
 Cootes of armes / & ¹of bright harneis / & the riche abilementis
 they had for their horses. So many folkes there were / that the
 Ladies and gentilwomen wende there had not ben so grete a power
 12 in alle the world, and had more feer than euir they had / ffor it
 semed them the Towne might neuir endure againt them / And
 thus came this company in iij. partis, for to beseige and enclose the
 Towne. *withyn* the Towne was there a vij. or viij. thousand feight-
 16 ing men / And for as moche as they were there *with* the ladies /
 they desired to do some thinge at the bigynnyng that myght recom-
 forte theym / and concluded that on the next morowe, yn the morn-
 yng, they wolde visite their neigboros. ¶ Now y shall telle you
 20 of the Turke, howe he did : he remembred him of the [seige] that
 he had layde bifore fferaunt / and how in loggyng them he had a
 grete skarmyssh, and lost many of his folkes / wherefore he ordeyned
 that euyer day shold be a grete company arredied to horsbak /
 24 waityng on a Captayne / to drawe sodeinly to what part nede sholde
 require / And there were iij. grete puissaunces, as ye haue herde, in
 iij. parties of the Towne / And of that one, was Orkays cheff ; and
 of the tothir, the kynge of Luby ; and of the iij^d. the Turke himself.
 28 ¶ Now cometh the day that the sawte sholde be made. for asmoche
 as the Turke knewe ful wele the[re] were many folkes *withyn*, he
 wold not begynne the saute till the sonne were vp. fferaunt, that
 was fulle wise and wele vndirstandyng in suche matiers, saide to the
 32 kynge, "sir, please it you to stande at the gate / and lete no man
 go oute, but suche as I wylt / whiche y shull put alle bifore me" /
 And than he apointed suche as shold come with hym ; and for drede
 he had of Surnome and of his felawes, he made them to promesse
 36 & swere that they shold withdrawe them assone as they herde blowe
 the retrayte / Thus alle thing ordeyned / he departed out of the
 Towne with ij. thousand feighters / and did so moche, or the cry
 arose that they were amonges the kyng of Lubyes Tentes / and ouir
 40 ranne many of his folkes / the erie and the noise arose thorough alle

The Sicilian
ladies watch
the fine ap-
proach of
the Turkish
army,
[1. ff. 75, bk.]

in 3 Divi-
sions.

The Sultan
orders a
regiment a
Horse to be
always ready
when needed.

Ferant sallies
out of Naples
with 2000
men,
against the
Turkish 2nd
Division.

the hoste / and than they that had the charge to a-waite on suche
sodeyn cries, were redy anone with the kynge of Luby / and came
quikly on fferaunt and on his company, In so moche that by force
it behoueth hem to withdrawe / and there were some of his folkes 4
taken / wherof Surnome was right heuy and sory / and he [and] his

[¹ leaf 76] felawes retourned ¹agein to rescowe them / and neuir bifore had he
aquytte him so wele as he did there / ffor by the noble prowesse of
hym & his company, their enemyes were fayn to withdrawe them 8
agein toward their tentes. All this encountryng shewed wele the
worthines of Ector / that neuir vnto this day was sene in suche

Prince Hum-
phrey and
Princes
Philip and
David fight
valiantly.

case / They iij. to-gedir did so in armes, that it was merauale to
thinke / and it semed by Ector that he had ben alwey brought vp 12
in that crafte / the feeld a-boute them was al steyned and couerd
with blode / and with ded folkes, In so moche that fferaunt was alle
abassed / & entendid to no thinge but to beholde the hardynesse of

The Turkish
3rd and 1st
Divisions
attack Fer-
ant's men.

his iij. seruauntes. And as they were thus feighting, came the 16
Turkes power and his sones / vnto the Kynge of Luby / and than
they came so sore vp-on the cristen men that they put them alle out
of aray / whan fferaunt sawe this, he sent vnto the kyng for a
thousand men moo to socoure them, to helpe to withdrawe them. 20
Than made he to blowe the retrayte / and the iij. felawes, by force
of Armes, were deparate eche fro othir / and Surnome was enclosed
among so many / that hou-be-it he defendid him right valiauntly /

Prince Philip
is taken
prisoner.

yet was he taken be might / for our many folkes were on hym / and 24
was anone had out of the prees / seyng fferaunt his maister / that
at that tyme wold haue ben ded / ffor he knewe weel that alle the
gold in Sizile might not bye him agein, and he might not helpe
him / for he and his company were so sore ouirsette / that with 28

The Sicilians
retire,

grete peyne they recured agein in-to the Towne / and had lefte
behinde them the chief of alle their werre / ¶ But now here wheron
fferaunt aduised him / he toke al the folkes of armes that were
with the kyng at the gate / and sodeinly went out at the gate that 32
was ageinst Orkays tentes, for he sawe him vngarnyssh of alle his
folkes / and bitwene his loggyng and the Turkes was a ryuer / and
there was no brigge ouir it / but a litil passage / where might not
come past ij. horses or iij. on front / and yit with grete peyne he 36
ordeyned a good company to kepe that passage / for by none othir
wey coude Orkays haue no socoure / Thus was fferaunt, with grete
part of puyssance of the Towne, come to Orkays tentes / and there

[² lf. 76, bk.] ²endured the bataile fulle long amonges them / By that tyme was 40

but make a
fresh sally
against the
camp of the
Turkish 1st
Division.

Athis and Ector enfourmed of the takyng of their ffelawe / whom they held in part for their maister / for whos sake they had suche sorowe that it was meruaile to wite / fferaunt ascried vnto them / 4 "my frendes, now it is tyme that eche of you put peyne to the rescouse of his trewe felawe, which rescue can not be without takyng of Orkays, sone vnto the Turke; now shalt be seen who shalt do wele; for trewly, if one of you were in suche daunger / the 8 good Surnome wolde put him in grete deuoir / the ij. felawes lefte their sorowe / and, as they that had ben oute of their wittes, aventuret them forth amonges the presse, without casting of any perilt or drede of any daunger; there was neuir man sawe ij. men do so 12 moche in one day in Armes as they did / they were so besy in euery place, that their enemyes thought they sawe noon oþir men but them, so moche they dred them / fferaunt folowed them alwey, and had as leef be ded, *without he might haue day to rescowe his yonge 16 seruaunt / he had at the leest in his company .v. thousand feighters, which were of fult good corage / and, by their strength and power, yn short tyme was Orkays and alle his company put to playne discomfiture / and Orkays takyn prisoner by the handes of Ector, that* capture the Sultan's son, *presented him anon to fferaunt, whiche was right glad of his takyng, trustyng therby to recouer Surnome. The meane tyme that this noise and crye was, the Turke sent many of his folkes on horsbak to the rescous of his sone / wherby he thought him sure y-nough / 24 But they that were apointed by fferaunt to abide at the passage, kepte it so wele, that noo might passe there / and at the diffience was grete mortalite of the Turkes. whan fferaunt had done this iournay, and sawe Orkays in his handes in saufte / and that his 28 folkes had take suche pillage as they might easily bere *with them / and had set fyre in the remenaunt / he made to blowe the retrayte / and withdrewe them in-to the Towne / hauyng prisoners withoute* pillage and burn his Camp, and retire to Naples. *nombre / but, ouir alle oþir, he was glad of the takyng of Orkays / 32 whan they were entred agen into the Towne / the kyng was enformed of the takyng of Surnome, and so were the ladies & gentilwomen / and the tidynges spred thorugh alle the Town, wherof the 1sorowe and complaýnt began as moche as if the kyng had ben 36 ded. And the kyng himself was so sory, that noman might comforde him / hou-be-it he had the Turkes sone yn his handes / for he helde him so crault and felonous, that he had leuer lete his sone dye than deliuere Surnome, by whom he had hadde so many losses and 40 hurtes / Natheles he concluded to sende vnto the Turke an heraule* [leaf 77]*

A Sicilian
Herald is
sent to the
Sultan.

The Sultan

determines

to put Prince
Philip to
death.

[¹ lf. 77, bk.]

He scratches
the Prince's
face, and says
he'll see him
hanged after
dinner.

The Sicilians
sorrow for
Prince
Philip.

of Armes, to certifie him of the takyng of his sone, willyng him to entrete Surnome none oþer wise than he wolde haue his sone entretid. [Illumination: Surnome bleeding, in a shirt; gallows; sally from the Town.]

Nowe retourne we to the Turke, that aftir the distresse that 4 he had vpone fferaunt and his folkes, and that Surnome was brought vnto hym / and that he knewe werily it was the same by whome he had hadde so many tymes losse & hurtes ; and at that tyme he knewe no thing of the takynge of his sone / 8 And whan Surnome was brought a-fore him / he thought for ioie his worthiness was doubled / and behilde him, and sawe him so personable and amyable / and so wele assured, that he hadde meruaile to beholde hym / and concluded in him self / that he 12 wold neuir slepe til he had taken on him cruelle veniaunce, and saide vnto him / “ Thou vntrew cristен man, thyn vnhappy coming in-to this lande hathe done me more damage than did the puyssance of cristen kynges : I shal neuir slepe / or y se the ded bifore 16 myn yen.” Thus Surnome, hering his deth / with humble corage content to abide it, for the pleasir of god / answerd agein vnto the Turke, seyng, “ O turk, by my dethe shalt thou not be kyng of Sizile / for there is many more worthy than euer I was, yn the 20 seruice of the kynge ; wherfore y knowe wele my dethe shalt be litil damage to cristен ; ¹and therfore y am to endure suche peyne and torment as thou wilt deuyse, whiche y shal receyue in ioie” / The Turke, for angre, might no more here him speke, but ranne on 24 him / and scratte him in the visage / and made him to be voided out of his sight / and commaunded that gallowes shold be made anonoon ; & concluded, that aftir he had dyned, he wold go hym self to se him hanged / They of the Towne withyn, seing thies galowes 28 adressing, enfourmed the kynge therof / And than bigan the sorowe more than bifore, thoroughout all the Towne / for they knewe wele it was made for Surnomes sake / There might ye se ladies and gentilwomen wepe and sorowe / but ouir alle other sorowed Iolant, 32 the kynges daughter. There was the beaute, bounte, witte & worthiness of Surnome, many tymes remembred & complayned that day / & euery body thought that, at the houre of his dethe, alle the vertues of the worlde sholde be lost / The kyng was alle out of 36 mesure / as he that had lost only by Surnome alle the ioy he had in this worlde / thinkyng that, after his dethe, he wold no lenger lyue / Ector also, and Athis, were so fer from alle reason, that, for men wold not lete them go out at the gate, they wold haue lepte 40

oir the walles / It is alwey saide that a mannys witte ys neuir
vndirstond til at a grete nede. fferaunt, that neuir was dispurneid,
made hastily a paire of galowes to be set vpon the walles, yn the
Turkes sight, and euen before his loggyng, as though he wold make
Orkays dye ther-one / And yit, notwithstandingyng þat, fferaunt put
yn aduenture him self and alle that were in the towne, reseruyng
the kyng / and a fewe that waited on him / & thought werrily alle
to dye, or to rescowe his seruaunt / and to this apointed alle his
folkes, and in especialt Ector and Athis, whiche fift to his fete for
ioy / humbly thankyng / And yet, notwithstandingyng the grete sorow
that he had, he comfortyng them, seyng / “what, we hane yit no
tidynges of the messanger that went to the Turke. I hane trust in
god, and also know wele the loue that a ffadir hath to his childe /
wherby he wol neuir be consentingyng to the dethe of his sone / And
that the prise that hath be made by you this day, my frende Ector,
at youre nowe comyng, shalt be the sauacion of youre felawe” /
Many turkes sawe thies galowes yn makyng on the Towne walle /
and anone tolde it to the Turke,¹ whiche streeched him vp at the [1 leaf 78]
boorde, and saide / “Lete them hange whom they can gete ; for
there is none shall lette me to hange this that y haue” / And euen
at the same tyme came yn the heralde from the kynge of Sizile,
with the message þat ye haue herde tofore / The Turke, hering
this, was gretely ameruailed / and coude not bileyue it / for he had
herde no worde therof bifore / wherfore he saide al wrothly to the
messangers / “If the kynge, and they of his company, coude by their
language sauie the lif of their man / they had wele lerned to speke /
But, as for my sone, that is so vnhappily lost, y wolt not respite
the lif of this / but the rather delyuere hym to the dethe” / And
than made he to brynge him to se Surnome, that was redy to go to
his dethe / and the rope aboute his nekke / and whan he sawe him
in this cas, he was so sory that vnnethe he might stonde on his
fete / but Surnome comforted him, and saide / “I pray you,
recommaunde me to the kynge & to the quene / and to my faire
lady, their doughtir / to whom y haue euir ben trewe seruaunt /
and recommaunde me to fferaunt, my good maister / and to my ij.
felawes / and sey I praied them not to compleyn nor sorowe my
dethe, for y trust verrily in the mercy of god to dye wele /
Natheles, pray them to pray for me” / Than he toke hym by the
hande, the teeres yn his yeen / and bade hym farewеле / and praied
his ij. felawes also to take his dethe agracably / thus the messanger

Ferant sets a
gallows on
the walls of
Naples, as
if for the
Sultan's son.

The Sultan
declares he'll
hang Prince
Philip,

and let his
own son die.

departed, & came to the towne / and tolde the kynge and fferaunt how he hadde founde him. And whan they herde this report, it touched their hertes so nygh / that they thought they sawe Surnome bisore them / in the same cace that the messanger had seen hym / 4 and after they had wepte & compleyned / euery man concluded either to dye or to rescowe him / Two hundred men were ordeyned to go to thise Iuyse / and a M^t. to renne on them that kepte the place, and ij. M^t. redy to socour them / if nede were / and the 8 kynge redy, in his owne persone, at the gate with iij. M^t. to releef them / at their comyng yn agein, if nede were. And thus was euery thinge ordeyned and redy / and Ector and Athis were de-lyuered the charge / whiche toke it on them with right goode 12

[¶ lf. 78, bk.] corage / Surnome, ¹on that othir side, that abode no thinge but dethe, compleyned his fadir & his modir, and them of his reaume / and compleyned his contre, that shold stonde withoute heyre / Aftrir, he compleyned the kynge of Sizile, the quene and their 16 doughtir, his maister and his ij. felawes / prayng god right hertily to comfort them, and sende them al^t good auenture, and in especia^t that his faire lady shol neuir come in the handes of tho mys-creauntes. Aftrir this, he praied god to haue mercy & pite on his 20 soule, seyng that in his seruice he shold nowe take the dethe / humbly besechyng hym, of his grace, to receyue his soule, / and of his grete mercy to pardone alle his offences. ¶ Whan the Turke had dyned, he herde tidynges that his sones loggyng was alle ouir- 24 throwen and brent / a[nd] moo than x. or xij. M^t. men slayne / and his sone taken prisoner, and brought in-to the towne, and the moost part of the grete lordes and noble men of his company / If the Turke were soroufu^t, it is no question / and, for the grete angir, 28 forgetith al^t fadirl^y loue, and the seruyce of alle those lordes and noble men that were taken prisoners / and forgetith also his owne brother / that was prisoner to hym that he had than in daungere, by whom he myght haue had his brother agein, or his sone / but 32 than alle was forgoten / And thus, as a wood man furiously puttith the boorde fro him, without aduise, or settynge any ordre to the dede of Iustice that he sholde do / and asked alle hastily where was the prisoner / and men brought him forth ; and he toke hym by the 36 Rope that was aboute his nekke, and drewe hym so hard that, if folkes had not taken him awey, he had strangled hym / but his folkes toke him from him / and seide / “sir, this bilongeth not to you to do / lete the hangman do his office, sith ye be so fere forth 40

**The Sicilian
chiefs swear
to rescue
Prince
Philip, or
die.**

**[¶ lf. 78, bk.]
Philip
laments his
parents,
and France,**

**and prays
God to have
pity on his
soul.**

The Sultan

**nearly
strangles
Prince
Philip.**

that no reason may menue you / we be kynne and frendes to them at this day, that by your cruelte we shal se dye / and your self be cause therof, and also of the dethe of youre owne sone / ffor, be assertayned, they withyn hane no suche drede / but assone as this man is ded / he and alle they shalle dy bifore your yen / And whan your pleasir shal in this be fulfilled / your sorowe euir aftir shalbe out of mesure / and then shal be to late ¹to repente, for it shalbe passid remedy / Also your brother, or his plegges, shalle dye with sorow and shame" / But of alle that euir they seide vnto him, he roght not / and sware by his goddes, if they spake any more, he shold make them alle to dy an euyl deth / and toke a grete staff yn 12 his hande / and made them cary forth the prisoner to the gallowes / and euir layde on him so grete strokes, that made him alle blody / now sent he forth so woodly this prisoner, that he had but fewe folkes aboute him / and yit they that were in his company were in 16 suche sorowe and distresse, that they had as leef dye / as lyue / for their kyn and their frendes, that they sawe in suche daunger withyn the Towne / and for that cause there was the more vnsure guydyng in this matier / The wacche of the Towne sawe the multitude of 20 folkes comyng / and Surnome amonges them, ledde like a theef; and the folkes couerd al the felde / they went & tolde the kynge & fferaunt, whiche wepte for pitie that Surnome was so pitously entretiid / Surnome bihelde the Towne, wherin he had hadde so 24 moche pleasir & ioie, thinkyng neuir to come ther more / for he loked aftir no thinge but dethe / often recommaundid vnto god alle them that were withyn the Towne / and whan they were come nere the gallowes, Ector and Athis, that were apointed to go to the 28 Iuyse, toke their company with theim, and went thider as fast as their horses might renne, fore drede that they sholde come to late / the Turke, seyng this auenture, cried many tymes that men shold kille the prisoner, but there was noon that coude fynde in his herte 32 so to do; and there durst they not abide, for they were alle out of array / And at that tyme, were slain and taken many grete lordes of the Turkes partie / whan Ector & Athis, whiche had the charge to rescowe their felaw / fonde him allone, with his visage all blody, 36 of the strokes that the Turke had youen him on the hede / they wende he had ben hurte to the dethe / and were so sorowfull, that vnnethe they might speke one worde / Natheles, they set him vpon horsbak / and brought him agen in-to the Towne, without any 40 encombranunce or hurt of any cristien man, and vnto the grete losse ^{ront and kill the Turks,} ^{rescue Prince Philip,} ^{and bring him into Naples,}

<sup>The Sultan's
folk reprove
him,</sup>^[1 leaf 79]^{but he threatens them,}<sup>and beats
Prince Philip
till he's all
bloody.</sup><sup>The Sicilians
see Prince
Philip led to
the gallows.</sup><sup>Prince David
and Prince
Humphrey
sally out,</sup>^{the Turks,}<sup>rescue Prince
Philip,</sup>

[¹ lf. 79, bk.] & damage of the turkes. And ¹whan they were comyn in-to the Towne, they had grete drede of thurt Surnome had on his hede / for they wist not wele yit how it was with him / Than Ector and Athis brought him to loggyng, and sawe that he was right seke, and 4
 sore diseased / for his nekke was gretly swolne / and alle the skynne of / with the streynyng of the rope / and his shuldres also were blac with the strokes of the staff that he had / and in his hede he had a grete stroke, whiche was alle blody and swolne / and his 8 visage was all to-scrag / The kynge made to sende for alle his surgeons, & made them to serche hym / whiche saide that he was sore hurt / but they sawe no drede of dethe yn hym / but that he shold be heled withyn litil while / The kynge and his company 12 was ioifull of this tidynges; and then was tolde to Surnome the grete worthinessse and prowes of Ector that day / and also the grete armes that he and Athis had done to rescowe hym, and yn what auenture fferaunt, their good maister, had put hym that day / whiche 16 seemed to be bettir content with his dethe than to lyue / & how Ector had taken with his hande the Turkes sone / And alle this was tolde him to reioice hym / ffor euery man knewe wele þat the preise and grete renome of his noble maister, and of his ij. felawes, 20 was one of the grettist ioies that he coude haue / All thisse wordes were seide vnto hym by t.l.e kyng, whiche was come to visithe him / And Surnome answerd hym, & saide / "sir, y thanke god and you / that it pleasid your grace, for so pore a man as y am, to parte oute 24 of your towne / and put yourself yn daunger / whiche y neuir coude deserue / But y shaſſ put me in deuoir alwey to do you the bettir seruice" / And thus departed the kynge fro hym, and came to his owne loggyng / and there mette with hym the quene, hir 28 doughtir, & alle the ladies, whiche were right sorowfull of the hurt of Surnome. but the kyng tolde them for tronthe that he was in noo perill of dethe / wherof they were as ioifult as they might be / ffor there was noon erthly man so moche biloued of euery body in 32 alle honour as he was, and in especialle of alle them of that Reaume / for sith his comyng, the reaume was more furnysshed of noble men than euir it was bifore / and he neuir did ne seide thinge that sholde displease any body / Thus by ²hym daily encresed their 36 ioie / But alle oþerwise went it yn the Turkes hoste / for he was so troubled at that tyme, that he was half in dispeire / and roght not to haue slayn hym self, to haue ben oute of his grete sorowe / whan he was with-drawen & retourned in-to his tente / and knewe for 40

hurt and bleeding.

But the
Sicilian
surgeons say
he'll soon be
well.He is told of
the valour
of Princes
David and
Humphrey,and the
capture of
Orceys.The ladies
grieve over
Prince
Philip's
wounds.[² leaf 80]

certayne þat his prisoner was deliuered / and what outrageous losse ^{The Sultan} he had of the moost notable of his counselle, that were dede & taken, and wele a xij. or xiiij. hundred men slayne beside / and of 4 the cristen, not one hurt at that tyme / And also howe his sone was prisoner, whiche might haue ben deliuered hym ageyn / had not be his outrageous pride / And at the takyng of his sone, slayne the same day .x. or xij. M^t men. Remembryng alt this, he was ^{so is sad at all his losses.} soroufult that he wist not what for to do / but sent in alle haste for his counselle, and for his Capteynes / and praied them to gif him their best aduise. And if bifore dyner he were hote and tempestous / now is he colde and sobre / for he hath had a sharpe showre 12 to cole him with / There was noon of his folkes that bemoned him / ^{His folk hate him.} but in their hertes delly hated hym / and dispreised hym / and seide amonges themself, that there was neuir cruelt man in the ende had honour nor glory ; and they thought wele their goddes wolde 16 punysshe him for his cruelte / and for thys cause they were alle discouraged / Natheles they aduised them, by alle weies they coude, to kepe their honour yn that they had to do / And sent for the puissaunce that they had ordeyned to conduyte the vitailles & other 20 purueaunce for the hoste, and logged them where as Orkays had ben discomfite, & made ij. or iiij. brigges ouir the watir / and thus was that quarter furnysshed agein / But for alle that, they were more in drede of them *withyn* / than they *withyn* were of theym / 24 The Captayne, that the kyng of Sizile had ordeyned to be his lieftenaunt thorugh his reaume, knewe for certayne that this grete armee, that shold conduyte his vitale, were than at the seege, and might not departe thens / wherfore he thought their vitaile shold 28 come to them *with* litil ease, if he might / and than assembled he a good company togedir / and daily troubled them, bothe in takyng ^[1 ff. 50, bk.] fro them their vitaile, and soleyn ^{The Sicilian Captain-general daily harasses the Turks.} assautes, comyng on them in the night / and put them in suche trouble that they were very of their 32 lyues. In this wise endured the seege aboue a iiij. monethes / In this meane eason was Surnome alle hole, and came to se the ladies, as he had ben accostomed to do. And the kynge thought, as his bien venu / and for to rejoice the company, to make a Banket, where 36 the ladies and gentilwomen shold be / and the Turkes sone / & a grete part of the noble men that were prisoners / for he wold reherce vnto them the cruelte of their maister, And also to make Surnome to telle of his aventur. Thus ordeyned he this Banket / 40 and sent for his Capteynes, the renomed, & in esspecial for fferaunt

& for his ij. seruauntes, whiche ij. serued the ladies at this Banket / hou be it, the kynge wold haue had them to sitte downe / There sate downe the kynge & the quene, and bitwene the quene & faire Iolante was sette Orkays, that ful gladly bihelde this faire 4 lady / And if he had ben lorde of alle the worlde at that tyme, he knewe no woman that he wold so fayn haue had to his wif / and thought yn his mynde, by meane of mariage bitwene them two, the peas might be made / and or he wolde leue hir, he wolde take the 8 cristen lawe / and fro that day forth abode he in this thought / like as ye shalle here. many othir prisoners were sette at the kynges boorde, that gretely bihelde his persone and his demeanyng / so they did the quene and hir doughtir / fferaunt was set at the 12 kynges boorde, with many othis folkes of honour, that sate ther also. whan the kynge had seten ther a while / and ben mery amonges

At the King's command, Prince Philip tells how the Sultan had him bound to a post, them ; he fille in question with Surnome of his hurtes, and com-
maundid hym to telle the trouthe how it was. Surnome durst not 16
disobey the kynges commaundement, but tolde of his takyng, & of
the Othe the Turke made assone as he was brought bifore hym /
that he sholde neuir slepe or he were put to dethe in his presence /
Aftir, how he made bynde hym to a poste / and putte a rope aboute 20
his nekke / and tolde howe the messanger seide vnto him, and
what answer he had / and how-be-it that he was not worthy to
qwite suche a prisoner as Orkays, yet was he offred for his deliuern-
aunce / Aftir, tolde he how the Turkes ¹folkes blamed him for 24

drede of the dethe of Orkays / and howe the kynge sent to the
Turke, & sware, if that he put him to dethe, that Orkays and alle
the other prisoners sholde be hanged / And than, with grete ire and
cruelte, he put the boorde fro hym, and came to him ther as he 28
stode bounden / and drewe the rope so fast, that was aboute his
nek / that he had strangild him, had not his folkes cried on him /
and seide that it was the hangmans office, and contrary to the
honour of so grete a prince to do so foul a dede / and whan he 32
herde the speche of his folkes, he vnbonde him him-self / and
deliuerd him to the hangman / and gaf him ij. strokes with a grete

and then nearly strangled him,
and beat him on the head. staff bitwene the shuldres / and one on the hede / and conduyte
him him-self vnto the gallowes, he and his folkes vnarmed & 36
without any ordenaunce, ffor the whiche cause they might make no
resistence at his rescous. ¶ In heryng this tale, euery man wept
for pite, bothe Orkays and all the tothir prisoners. Aftir his tale
was ended, the kynge spake to Athis, and seide, "ye were prisoner 40

at the distresse of the armee of the kyng of Scottes sone / telle ye
the manere now of *your takyng*." Athis was alle shamefast / but he
durst not disobey the kynges commaundement, and seide / "sir, it
4 is trewe þat by tempest of wedir, the vesselle that y was yn, brake,
even bifore the Turkes hoste / wherby the moost part of the folkes
þerin were drowned, sauf viij. or viij. that gate the lande / wherof
y was one, purposing to haue yolden vs vnto the mercy of the
8 Turke, thinkyng verrily that god hat done moche for vs to bringe
vs to lande so nere him, for we trusted to fynde mercy yn hym /
and when he sawe vs in this case, he cried with high voice / "sle
tho cristen traitours!" then were they alle slayne, sauf y / whiche
12 was to grete a pite / ffor amonges them was slayne the good Erle ^{and Earl}
Douglas, that was a noble man and a wise / and whan I sawe this ^{Douglas} slain;
pitous aventure, y withdrew me toward a litil Rok, and set my
bak ther-against / defending my self as wele as y coude, ^[1 ff. 81, bk.] ^{how Prince}
16 all-mighti god of his mercy, as he that abode no thing but dethe /
And as y was yn this daunger / the Turke cried ahh-wey to put me
to dethe / my lord Orkays was ther present, and meved with pite,
toke me in-to his handes, ¹and assured me for than / y shold not ^{Orcays} rescued him,
20 dye / his fadir toke this to grete displeasir, and wold nedis haute ^{and sent him}
put me to dethe, But Orkays did so moche that he put me in
saftee. Aftirwarde, agen his fadir required hym that y might dye,
but he wolde neuir agree thereto / but did so moche, whethir his
24 fadir was pleased or not / that he delyuerd me / and made me to ^{to Ferant.}
be surely conduynte vnto fferaunt, with whom y haue contynued in
seruice sith that tyme" / Aftir this tale tolde / euery man bihelde
Orkays, and thought it was an honorable dede of hym / Than the
28 kynge commaunded Ector to telle by what fortune he was taken,
whiche was right shamefast to telle his tale / natholes he bigan, and
seide thus / "Sir, it is trewe that in my right grete youthe y desired ^{Then Prince}
to se the houre that y might be yn *your seruice* / for the honour of ^{Humphrey}
32 god principally, and to mayntene the feith; and for the grete weeles
that euery man rehersed of you, of the quene, & my lady your
doughtir / wherfore it happened me to gete in-to a vesselle with
notable men, that were therin / and by fortune of tempest we
36 aryued yn a lande that helde of the Turke / and y suppose that ^{his ship was}
oure seruice was not to god agreeable / So we were taken & brought
bifore the lord of the Towne / and for-asmoche as we were cristen,
they thought it a nouelte / and they presentid of the company in-to
40 diuorse places, and kepte stille with them my fellawe and me / and ^{driven to a}
shore,

he dide in prison / And at the tyme of my deliueraunce, y thought
 fulle litil of my lif / But that it fortuned that my maister and felawe,
 Surnome, made his prisoner, kynge ffirabras, to promyse that he
 shold sende agein alle cristen men that by fortune had be taken in the 4
 warres in any landes of his brothers or his / And he, remembryng
 his promyse whan he came home, vndirstode that y was prisoner yn
 the same Towne that the Turke was yn that tyme / and he asked me
 of him / than was y brought bifore hem bothe / & the Turke, seyng 8
 me so megre & pore, toke litil hede of me / but lete me delyuered to
 kynge ffirabras / whiche made me be so wle cherisshed and taken
 hede vnto / that withyn litil while y recouered, and wex in good
 plite / than on a day went y to the Turke, and y waited on hym / 12
 and was alle newe araid & ¹wle recouered / and he bihelde me, and
 knewe me not / and asked his brother what y was / and he seide that
 y was the cristen man that was deliuering out of prison but late / than
 wold he haue put me to dethe / and seide that, by the worthynesse 16
 of one man / his saide brother had be taken / and the noblesse & the
 eorage of the Sezilians was by hym redoubled / and by an othir
 man, that his sone had deliueringd, he had taken so grete hurte, that
 it was meruaile to thinke; And his hert gaf him, if y departed, 20
 that y shold do him grete damage / and thus in no wise wolde he
 be agreeable to my delyueraunce / and so fille they at wordes / In so
 moche that kynge ffirabras sware that he had leuir dye than to
 false his promys / than he deliuering me by night / and made me to 24
 be surely conduyute vnto this reaume / where y haue abiden euir
 sith / and aftir my departyng thens, the Turke sent of his folkes to
 breke vp the chambre where as he wende y had ben, to put me to
 dethe, in despite of his brothir. But y thanke god & good kynge 28
 ffirabras / y was out of his daunger / ffor y wote wele, and y had
 ben in his handes, he wold haue had litil pite on me / that wold
 not haue pite of the dethe of his owne sone / and of so many
 notable men, asmoche as to deliuere one persone for the sauacione 32
 of them alle" / Alle they þat were there of the Turkes meyne, knewe
 wele thies tales were trewe, wherof they were gretly encombed and
 abasshed of the cruelle & tyrannous disposicion of their maister.
 Than spake the kyng to Orkays, & seide / "Sir, ye must now telle 36
 your tale" / then saide Orkays, smylingly / "sir, my tale shall sone
 be tolde / for y had neuir othir fortune of warre but suche as ye
 knowe, sauf one whiche y wolt not reherce for my praise / but for
 the praise of them that haue deserued it / trouthe it was, alle that 40

and how,
thro' Prince
Philip's
charge to
K. Ferabras,

he was given
to that king,

[¹ leaf 82]

and by him
set free and
sent to Sicily.

The King of
Sicily bids
Orkays tell
his tale.

Athis hath seide / It was my fortune to delyuere him agiest the Prince
 will of my fadir / and conduyte him surely vnto sferaunt / and the Orcays says
he did free
Prince David,
 next day it happened they made a grete assante on my loggings,
 4 where as were many folkes slayn / and prisoners taken out of
 nombre, wher-of y was one, and fift in the handes of Athis, that and was then
captured, and
set at liberty
by him.
 had ben my prisoner / and whan he was in the Towne, he remembred
 y had done somwhat for him / and yn grete haste ledde me thorugh
 8 the towne / and lete me oute at ¹the gate that was ageynst my [l. 82, l. 1.]
 fadirs loggyng / and there deliuered me, seyng vnto me / ' I can no
 bettir horse you, nor harneise you, to your pleasir than ye be / and
 if y coude, ye may be sure y wolde / therfore ye shalle haue your
 12 owne still' / and thus departed y fro hym / and came to my fadir,
 whiche seide, y ought to blame no man of this fortune but my self /
 by the deliueraunce of hym that he was no thinge agreeable vnto /
 than tolde y hym of my deliueraunce / and by whom it was, whiche
 16 was a thinge, as who seith, impossible for hym to bileyue / & howe
 be it, he sawe me deliuered, and knewe wele that I was delyuered
 by hym that y had sauad before / yet repented hym that he had
 not put him to dethe / And at suche tyme as y toke Athis, y knewe
 20 him not but by his dedes, which shewed wele him to be a noble
 man / But whan he toke me, he knewe for certayne that y was the Orcays
praises
Prince David.
 Turkes sone / and what good he might haue had by me / yet was
 he of so noble corage, that he forgate al couetise, and deliuered
 24 me" / Than might folkes se howe basshfult Athis was, to here his
 praise, and also for drede he shold be shent / The kynge, the ladies,
 and alle the company behelde him, which loked alle rede, and sore
 abasshed / than asked him the kynge / " what / Athis made ye this
 28 deliueraunce" / and kneeled downe alle shamefastly, and seide / "ffor-
 sothe sir, yea / wherof y ery you mercy, ffor y coude in no wise David con-
fesses his
fault against
the King in
setting
Orcays free;
 put him in aduenture that had sauad my lif / and if yn this matier
 y haue offendid ageinst youre grace, or ageinst my lorde my
 32 maister / y bische you bothe of pardone / and offre my self to
 what punysshment it pleasith either of you to apointe / for y had
 leuer a dyde, than by me he sholde haue ben in daunger of his lif."
 Orkays repented him sore of this that he had tolde / for he sawe
 36 wele by Athis þat he was both abasshed and adred / The kyng
 perceyued wele that Orkays and Athis were bothe abasshed, and
 seide to Orkays, "ye haue tolde me of the fredom of Athis / and
 me semeth ye drede that y shold con him mangre / but forsothe, y
 40 do not / I knowe wele there was offence / but the cause was so

and is at once resonable, that with alle my hert y forgif him" / Athis thanked him forgiven.

[¹ leaf 88] right humbly / and than went to his maister, & besought ¹him of pardon, whiche lightly forgaf him ; and aftir, alle his lif, loued he him the bettir for that noble dede. ¶ Aftir thies wordes, was 4

^{A Peacock is brought in, and on it the King vaws to defend his realm;} brought yn a Poo by ij. gentilwomen / And the kynge made to the Poo his advowe first / and promysed to diffende his reaume to his power / "and that, notwithstandingyng the pride and tiranny of his aduersary withoute him, he wolde neuir do tiranny nor shame to 8 prisoner[es] that were noble men or of any good disposicion / but shold kepe them yn honour and noblesse as longe as they were in his gouernaunce" / Aftir, made Orkays his avowe, and seide that, "to his power, he wolde put him in peyne to make pees bitwene the Turke 12 his fadir, & þe kynge / & if his fadir died before hym, he shold neuir, daies of his liffe, make warre with the kynge of Sizile, nor with his Reaume / but rathir yelde agein vnto him alle that his ffadir had taken fro hym / for he sawe him so wele puruaide in alle 16 goode vertues / that aboue alle oþer kynges, he desired his fauour and acqueytaunce" / but the trouthe was this / that faire yonge lady, that sate by hym, meued his hert with this pite and kyndenesse more than any oþer thinge / though he spake it not / eueri 20 man coude him grete thanke / The kynge, the quene, and their daughter thankid him moche / Aftir was the Poo borne to fferaunt, whiche sent it agein vnto the lordes and knyghtes that were prisoners, whiche made their avowes accordyng to the same that 24

^{Ferant and his Knights vow}

^{never to let the Sultan be ransomed, if they catch him.} Orkays had made. Aftir this, made fferaunt his avowe, and sware that, for the grete crueltees that he had seen without nombre in the Turkes persone, wold he neuir yelde him vnto him / and if the Turke came in his daunger, he wolde neuir put him to raunsom ; 28 and by the same avowe required he, and praidie alle them that were vndir him, that they wolde make the same promes / The Halle was fulle of noble folkes, and the Poo was brough[t] bifore them / and euery man helde vp his hande, & sware with lowde voice the same 32 promesse that fferaunt had made / The Poo was brought bifore the iij. seruauntes of fferaunt / whiche serued bifore the ladies / and they made their aduowe to god, to the ladies, and to the poo / that they shold truly kepe the same promesse / that their maister 36

[² lf. 83, bk.] made / ²Thies avowes were put in writyng by the kynges of armes / than were the lordes taken vp / and the Mynstrells came

^{A Dance winds up the Banquet.} yn / and the lordes, knyghtes and squyers, ladies and gentilwomen, daunced ther / that night was ther no tidinges of the seege / 40

Orkays bicame so amorous of this faire lady / that he coude haue
no rest / and often tymes came he, by licence of the kynge, to se the
quene & their faire daughter / In so moche that folkes pereyued
Orkays is
head over
ears in
love with
Tolante.
4 wele by his maner / that he loued hir ouir alle thinge / and folkes
seide amonges them, that it were a mete mariage if he were
christened, for therby shold the pees be sure and ferme / but without
he were christened, ther was noon of the Reaume that wold be agree-
8 able ther-vnto / This faire lady knewe wele of alle this / whiche
made no countenaunce like it / for if she had knownen Surnome, or
one of his felawes, of as noble lynage as hym, she had leuer haue
had one of theim with right litil, than him with alle the Turkes
12 landes, and in esspecial Le Surnome / for aboue alle othir she liked
But she likes
Prince Philip
best.
him best ; hou be it, there was in any of the tothir two as moche
honour as in any persone needed to be wisshed, though Surnome
passed them. ¶ Tidinges sone ranne by some prisoners, that were
16 delyuerned in that meane tyme / that the Turke was put in know-
lidge of thavowes of the Banquet / & whamme he herd them, he aduised
them weel / and pereyued by the kinges avowe that he had made,
to diffende his reaume to his power / that he wold not lightly
20 delyuere vp that Towne that he was yn / And aftir, remembred the
avowe of his sone, which was / what-so-euir he conquered in his
lif, aftir his dethe shold be delinerd agein vnto the kynge of Sizile /
Aftir this, he thought on the avowe of fferaunt and alle his / whiche
24 was more lothe vnto hym than any of the tothir / for by that sawe
he his dethe sworne, if he came in their daunger / Also he sawe his
folkes alle out of corage, and thought wele that his goddes hated
hym / on the tothir side, he sawe the maner of the sege, that was
28 daily wers for him and wers / and bettir for them that were withyn
the towne / also what scarcyte of vitaile they had / and with how
grete peyne they gate that litil that they had / Alle thise tidinges
considered, he sawe him self how he had done shamefully to his
32 brother / whiche he wist wele wold neuir be agreeable to do hym
The Sultan
hears of the
vows at the
Banquet,
¹neither ayde ne seruice. with alle thise thoughtes, he fille in suchे
sorowe and drede that he wist not wele what to do / And so he
thought to assemble his Capteynes and his counselle / and to shewe
36 them thies matiers, in suche wise that they shold not pereyue by
his maner nor his wordes, drede nor fere in him to slake their
corage, but toke this conelusion to breke with them, as though he
vndirstode them enelyned to alle his pleasir / and of high and noble
40 corage, and thought to shewe his owne maner high and feers / for
and sees that
his siege of
Naples goes
worse and
worse.
[1 leaf 84]
He calls a
Council.

wele he wist, in conclusion, that generally they alle wold gif him counselle to departe / There may no man telle the grete deuoir that the kynge of Siziles folkes did euery day / grete peyne it was to kepe them from fighting with the Turke, and many tymes went 4 they out and scarmysshed with hem / and aft-way to the damage of the Turke, wherby the kynge saw wele that the Turkes folkes had lost hert & corage / and in his ymagination thought to make a grete assaute vpone the Turkes loggyng / & concluded in his secrete 8

The King of Sicily re-solves to attack the Sultan in rear and front at once.

counselle so to do / Than sent he a seruaunt of his, that was wele spoken, secrete and wise, to his lieftenaunt, and sent hym worde at what hour he wold make thassaute vpon the Turke, warnyng hym to be there with alle the power he might make ; and that he shold 12 first set vpon the Turke ; and while he was yn hande with hym vpone the tone side, wolde he haue alle his power come oute of the towne, & sett on hym on the tothir side.

The Sultan lays his bad case before his Council :—

His Son 'll give back his conquests;

his death is sworn;

[1 lf. 84, bk.] his men are out of heart.

His Council answer :—

VE hane wele herde how the Turke was determyned to sende 16 for his counselle and alle his Capitaynes / & so he did / and whan they were bifore hym, he seide vnto them in this maner / “ ffaire lordes, the cause that y haue sent for you is this / ye knowe wele, first, the takyng of my Sone ; I suppose also, ye 20 vndirstonde thavowe that he hath made, whiche turneth me to grete displeasir / for if y were dede, the Payne that y haue taken in my conquest shold litil profite ; for his avowe is, aftir my dethe to yelde it agein / and ye knowe wele y haue no moo childreen nor 24 othir heyre than him, sauf my brother, whiche y shal not right wele accorde with ” / than seide he smylyngly / “ ye knowe wele also, how by the avowes that haue be made, my dethe is sworne / Also my aduersary hath made his avowe to diffende his lande, and 28 neuir to trete with me / ye se ¹oure conduyte, and theexploite of warre that we haue done / If y coude se you of as good corage as y haue seen you before tymes, y shold be wele comforted / but sith we came bifore this towne, I sawe no good assaute made by vs ; 32 wherfore y pray you gete agein your good corage, and I shal not leue you, but bere you company in alle daungers ” / Thus endid his wordes ; and they alle withdrewe them, and spake togodre a while ; and than, by one of the best of them, he was answerd in this wise / 36 “ Sir, we haue alle wele vndirstand your seyng / and thervpone spoken togodre / and right humbly we beseche you / of that I shal say vnto you, to take no displeasir / for it is as late to breke vnto you now as it can be / and if we had durst, we had done it long 40

sith / ye knowe, sir, the hardnesse and aduersitee that is nowe come on you / and it semeth, sauf your displeasir / that the naturall pite that a ffadir or a brother ought to haue, or a good prince, to his suggestes & seruautes, is gretly quenchid and almoost failed yn you / whiche is a grete pite and damage / and hath caused alle your frendes and seruautes to be vttirly discomfited ; we knowe wele, for thise causes haue thises avowes be made on your persone / ye 8 knowe youre sone in daunger, that might haue ben yolden unto you for a right meane man, to regarde of hym / but ye wold be thereto in no wise agreeable / but to put hym in thaventure of deth / and alle your trewe seruautes, that were prisoners with hym, and 12 alle them that ye had leyde in plegge for the kynge your brother ; yea / and perauenture his owne persone, ffor we knowe hym such / that forto suffre deth he will not breke his promes ; and that might ye perceyue wele, by the cristen man that he deliuered " / Than 16 answerd the Turke, and seide : " by that delyueraunce haue y lost my sone. But whatsoeuer hath be done bifore this tyme / be it good or euy^H, we be in such eas nowe as ye se / whiche we may not long endure without othir purueaunce : and it toucheth you alle 20 aswell as to me / and therfore y haue assembled you to haue your aduise / put out of your hertes all rancour & debates, and remembrie the matiers nowe, yn such eace as they are yn " / It seemed to them alle that were there, that debates might litil auantage / and that 24 they ¹most purvey for othir remedy, for they were in right grete [1 leaf 85] scarste of vitailes, by the kyng of Siziles lieftenaunt and his folkes, whiche dayly toke it from them. The Turke asked thavice of hym that best pleased hym the reason of / whiche saide in this wise / 28 "sir, for tho causes that haue be rehersed here / men shal not se folkes speke to-gedir a doseyn wordes, but it is of the conduyte of you / and of your hoste / and to sey the trouthe of their eorage and wille / it is no thing towardes you nor your warres / as they were 32 whan ye came hider / for euery man seith / that in youre persone, as to the guydyng of your warres, they se neither rewle nor ordenaunce ; wherby they are so discoregaged, that xxth Sizilians are worth an .C. of your folkes. Also youre vitailes faile you / and 36 wynter shall come on hastily, and ye haue not folkes y-nough to holde your sege / and for to conduyte your vitaile / wherfore the kyng of Siziles folkes distressith them dayly that conduyte it / And therfore, myn aduise shalbe this / that, or ye haue any grettir losse, 40 that ye breke vp the sege / and drawe ye aft this wynter tyme in-to ^{Your folk see neither rule nor order in your conduct of this war.} ^{You'd better break up the siege.}

suche townes of this Reaume as ye haue conquered / men shallē sey
 that this shalle not be for *your honour* / but byholde / if ye abide
 here any lenger, what honour ye may wynne therby / I dare sey, at
 last ye shal be fayn to departe, whan ye shal haue spent youre 4
 richesse, and perauenture lost many moo of *your folkes*, wherthorng,
your departyng than shal be grettir damage and more shame than
 it shold be at this day / for in defaute of vitaile, can ye not gete
 that place yet / it is so wele purveide / & by trety ye can not gete 8
 it / ffor ye knowe wele what avowe the kynge hath made ; wherfore
 ye may entende by no meane to haue it but by force ; and beholde
 hou fer ye are therfrom / for sith ye came hider, was not one of vs
 so hardy that durst thinke to approche to their walles / wherfore, 12
 alle thinges considered, with *your correccion* I am of thopinion of
your departyng.

And whan ye shalle be withdrawen in-to what
 Towne of this Reaume it shal please you / ye may sende than to
 the grete lordes of *your Reaume*, to shewe them yn what cas ye be / 16
 and make them to take aduise amonges them, and sende you suche
 counself as they thinke best / and then most they nedes helpe to
 execute ¹ suche counself as they gif you ; and from hensforth
 afferme *your self* to billeue *your counself*, and to werke by their 20
 aduise / for the moost wise that lyueth, hath nede of counself and
 aduise / and if it please you so to do / ye shal kepe that ye haue
 conquered ; for youre enemy is not mighti / And y trust, if it will
 please you to billeue *your kynne* and *counsele*, by the next somer 24

<sup>and do better
next sum-
mer.'</sup>
your honour shal be recouerd, and be in as good caas as euir it
 was." Thise wordes, herde by the Turke, displeased him no
 thinge / and so he asked the tothir folowynge, their aduises / But
 euery man was so weried and annoied, that they were of the same 28
 opinion. The Turke then concluded on this opinion, seyng / "ye
 blame that y haue not done by counsel, and yet me semeth, by
 vsyng of this counself, bothe shame & blaine shal bifalle me / but

<sup>The Sultan
agrees to
retire from
the siege in
twelve days.</sup>
 as hereyn y wol leue myn opinion / and do by *your aduise* and 32
counsele; and me thinkith it were good to knowe the day of oure
departyng." than concluded they on the xijth day folowynge / And
 that shold be in the night / euery man shold trusse his tente and
 his cariage / and euery man be on horsbak at the spryne of day / 36
 The conclusion this taken, euery man was warned that had any
 charge / but the day of their departyng was ouir longe & damage-
 able for theym / ¶ Ye haue wele herde here-bifore of thentirprise
 that the kynge of Sizile had taken, and how he had assertayned 40

*The longer
you stay,
the greater
your loss and
shame 'll be.*

*When you've
withdrawn
to one of your
towns, you
can send
home for
more help.*

[¹ lf. 85, bk.]

his lieftenaunt therof; and the messenger had quytte hym so wele, that he was entred secretly in-to the Towne agein / and reported vnto the kynge, for trouthe, that in his lieftenaunt shold 4 be no defaute / for he wold be there *with* moo than .x. thousand But the next
men / at suche houre as the kynge had commaundid him / whiche morning, at
hour was at the poynt of the day, when men might vnnethes se / break of day,
and they had taken that houre / for cause the tothir ij. puissaunces the Sicilian
8 of the Turke might not so easely come to-gedir vnto hym as if it Captain-general, with
had ben day / The day of this entirprise was on the morowe aftir
the turke had assembled his counself, as ye haue herde. This night
the kynge of Sizile made alle purueaunce for his goyng forth, as ho
12 that wold be there him-self. vndir his baner that day he herde
masse, & made alle his company do the same / and than toke he
leue of the quene and of alle the ladies, whiche he lefte fulle sore
wepyng; for grete drede had they of hym / and of his company.
16 The kynge wente downe, and came to the gates, praing alle his 1 leaf 86
folkes to quyte hem ¹wele, for if they might abate the Turkes (the King
pride / they shold from thensforth lede the remenaunt of their having
lynes in ioie and in disport, for by this meane shold ende the
20 warres / whertherough so moche cristen people had died / fferaunt,
that was bifore *with* his company, whan he shold go oute, he es-
corted in like wise his ij. seruauntes ; and they made their avowes
to god, that, shold outher dye, or be the first that shold come to the
24 Turkes tentes, and if they founde him there, they shold put them
in deuoir to accomplishis their maisters avowe / In like wise, as the
kynge hath monysshed his folkes / so did the lieftenaunt, that was
without, and nerre vnto the Turkes tentes, exorted his folkes, shew-
28 yng them that his entirprise was not for no smalle scarmyssh or
assemble / but either to destroie the Turke, or to dye in the quarelle /
eueri man promysed hym to do wele; & that for drede of dethe
they wold not lette to accomplishis the kynges pleasirs / And as
32 they were in thise wordes, they were so nygh their enemyes that
they were amonges tentes and pavilions / and came with suche attacks, and
strength and corage, that at their first comyng they hare downe alle is among the
that they mette *with*, ouirthrowing pavilions, and sleyng men so tents, slaying
36 many, that it was meruaile to se / Than was the erie and the noise
so moche, that they herd it in-to the Towne / than they opened the
gates / and fferaunt and his company went first out, and went Ferant sallies
streight vpon the Turkes wacche, whiche they lightly destroied / from Naples.
40 than came they to the Turkes loggyng / whiche they fonde fortifid /

but litil while endured it agiest them / The kynge folowed fferaunt
 with grete corage, and alle his folkes / and perceyued wele anou that
 the Turkes loggyng was wonne ; wheroft, if he were glad and ioifull,
 it is no question. The iij. felawes, that y haue spoken of before, that 4
 moche desired to accomplishl their promes, did so moche that they
 came to the Turkes tent, whereas fond hym accompayned with alle
 his folkes, that were than assembled in harneys, praying them to
 quite hem wele / when the iij. ffelawes sawe this company, they 8
 sent anoon for the kynge, whiche came fforthwith ; and whan they
 sawe the kynge nere them / they smote yn amogges their enemyes
 with suche strength and corage, that lightly they made them weye /
 for they ourthrewe alle that abode their strokes. The kynge, that 12
 was nere them, behelde hem in grete merauale, thinkyng that it was
 impossible for any mortalle bodies to haue done that they did. Thus

[¶ ff. 86, b.k.] in litil while, ¹the grete puissaunce that was aboue the Turke,
 brake, and was discomfite / than wolde he hane yolden him / but 16
 noman wolde take him. Thise iij. ffelawes, whan they sawe him
 in that caas, coude not fynde in their hertes to lay handes on him /
 and take him prisoner they might not, for their auowes ; so lette

they the fote men to slee hym / and made to smyte of his hede, & 20
 put it on a spere / And whan the kynge of Sizile sawe he had the
 ourhand of his enemyes / he made to blowe retrayte, for drede of
 the tothir ij. puissaunces / for by than was the sonne risen. And
 euery man, seing the kynges baner withdrawe / drewe them vnto 24
 him glad & ioifull, with prisoners and richesse out of nombre. Thus

The Sicilians
retire to
Naples.
The two other
Turkish
Divisions
hold together,

drewe they hem alle vnto the Towne ; for wele they wist the seige
 was ended / hou be it, they might haue had grete harme by the
 remenaunt of the Turkes folkes, seyng they were sore foughten with 28

a-fore / Thise othir ij. companyes of the Turkes were assembled
 to-gedre & embatailed for to come vnto the Turke ; but anone they
 were assertayned that he was dede, and alle his logging ourthrowen /
 and so they kepte hem stille to-gedre / they sawe the kynge with- 32
 drawe to the towne, and entred yn with alle his folkes alle at his
 pleasir. The ladies were assertayned of the grete iourney and good
 auenture, that god by his grace had youen the kynge vpon his
 enemyes : than went they to chirche, to thanke god / The kynge, 36
 whan he came to the Towne, he alight at the Chirche, and alle the
 belles of the Towne range / he and alle his folkes thonked god with
 goode herte / and made his offrynges / and aftir went to his
 loggyng / and made to purvey that his liefetaunt and alle his folkes 40

The 3 Princes
charge up to
the Sultan's
tent, and,

having sent
for the King
of Sicily,

rout the
Turks.
The Sultan
offers to
surrender,

but the foot-
soldiers cut
off his head,
and stick it
on a spear.

The Sicilians
retire to
Naples.

The two other
Turkish
Divisions
hold together,

were wele logged / They had be there but litil while, but the
wacche tolde them for trouthe that the tothir ij. compaynes of the ^{but soon} Turkes departed / Than shortly the kynge and alle his folkes went ^{retreat,}
4 to horsbake, and folowed their enemyes / and withyn short space
oniroke them / and they wold haue embatailed them / but they
were so affraied and discoraged, as they that had lost their hede /
for they abode but litil while / but toke them to flee / and than the ^{take to flight,}
8 chace bigan, whiche dured a iij. or iiiij. myle, wherin were so many ^{and are cut} slayne, that it was mernaile to thinke, for there was no diffience ^{up by the} Sicilians,
amonges them. than the kynge made his folkes to retourne agein
yn-to the ¹Towne / and made to take alle the good that was bilong- [1 leaf 85]
12 yng to the Turke and his hoste, to be departed amonges his folkes,
to every man aftir his degré / and was good innumerable, bisiide the ^{who take} ^{large booty} ^{and 2,000,000} ^{of gold.}
prisoners they had gotten / Also they fonde in the vessels that
earied gold and siluer, more than ij. Millions of golde / eueri man
16 was so wele garnyssed with oþer goodes, that they toke litil hede
therof; but by a comen assent, and with good hert, gaf it vnto the
kynge for to mayntene his warres / prouidyng that they might do
their owne pleasirs with their prisoners. The kynge with good
20 wille agreed ther-to, and sawe him by this meane riche y-nough to
mayntene his warres, and for to conquerre a nother reaume ther-to.
Of alle the goodes that were gotten there, Surnome, Athis and Ector,
were not the bettir / for eueri man knewe him self a kynges sone /
24 and thought, now the warres were ended, they had litil nedle of
good / for they shold haue good y-nough, bothe for them self, and
to make their felawes riche y-nough for euir / and thought eche of
theim, if his felowe knewe that he were a kynges sone, they had
28 ben to famylier with him. Thus had alle thies iij. kynges sones one
thought / and eche of them thought neuir to faile his felawes, but
to make them riche for euir. many folkys meruailed moche that
thise iij. toke nomore hede of good / for they toke hede of non
32 oþir thinge, but only to be wele horsid and wele armed / and wele
beseyne / & of alle this lakkid they nought at any tyme they wold
aske it. whan they were retourned agein vnto their loggings,
vnarmed & wele araid, they semed liker aungells than men / The
36 kyng of Sizile rehersed in the presence of the ladies, and of alle ^{They look} ^{like angels} ^{than men.}
theim that were there, the grete worthinesse that he had sen in
them iij. that day bifore the Turkes tente / and seide that he was
half abassid and aferde to beholde the grete noblesse of them; and
40 tolde howe they had parted the prese, and how many folkes fille

The King of
Sicily tells
of the Three
Princes'
prowess.

downe aboute them for fere of their strokes ; so many, that their horses might vnnethe hane rowme to stande in / than tolde he aftir of the dethe of the Turke ; And that, notwithstandingyng the grete crueltee that eche of theym had founde in hym / whan they sawe 4 him in wille to yelde him / there was none of theym wolde lay hande on him / but lete the fote men allone with him. Eeuery man [¶ ff. 87, bk.]¹ had grete pleasir to here the kynge reherce the Honour and noblesse of thise iij. yonge gentilmen / This night passed the kynge 8 forth in grete ioie / and on the morowe made many masses to be seide, in thanking god of their good fortune / Aftir dyner, assembled he his counselle, to take aduise vpon suche besinesse as he had to do, for he was bothe wise and worthy, and loued and dred god / 12 and for thise causes eueri man loued him, and desired to serue him. And, aftir his power, he had ben alhwey large and curtaise / and right famylier with noble folkes / wherfore he had their loue so fermely, that, for to dy, they wold leue hym in no daunger / ¶ whan 16 his counselle was assenbled, he saide amonges them in this wise / “ My trewe & kynde frendes, by whom at this day I haue hadde this high and noble fortune / wherby y may come to the recouere of alle my reaume / yet can y not leue to calle on you, to put you in 20 daunger for me / notwithstandingyng the grete damages & harmes that ye hane suffred for my sake / ye se wele, my trewe frendes & sogettes, the estate of oure enemyes, and of vs bothe / wherupon y pray you to counselle me / for the wele of cristendome and the 24 recouere of my reaume / and y am redy in what ye willle aduise me, to iubarde my body and my goodes to thaccompilishment therof, if me thinke it be leefult.” This counselle was long in takyng, for they knewe wele it was tyme and nede / wherfore they counseiled 28 the kynge to tary not, but to ouir-ride his reaume / and to conquer the townes agein, that the Turke had wonne ; ffor they thought wele, if he went shortly ther-aboute, his enemyes were yet in suche drede & discomfort, that he shold fynde litil diffence in them / 32 And they thought it needed not to telle Orkays yit the dethe of his ffadir, notwithstandingyng he had made his avowe to yelde alle agein / but they thought it shold be grettir honour for the kynge to conquer it agein by might. ¶ In this maner was it ordeyned and 36 concluded / and the kynge made alle comoners to departe, sauf only men of werre and sowdiours / This night made he redy alle things for to kepe the felde, an[d] on the morowe was alle his ordenaunce & Artilry carted redy to go forth / And the quene and hir doughtir, 40

He calls a
Council,

and asks
their advice

as to the
recovery of
his realm.

They urge
him to press
on, and re-
take all his
towns from
the Turks.

and alle hir ladies, went vnto a faire Castelle, but iiiij. myle thens.

By than was spred the tidynges of the grete victory thourgh alle his Reaume / wherof they made meruailous ioie / and yelded than-

4 1kynges to god. On the morowe, came many folkes vnto the kynge, bringyng vitaile and othir stuff / so that the kyng wende

there had not ben so many holdyng the cristen feith in a gret parte of his Reaume / Than concluded the kynge, to sende forth tidynges

8 to alle cristen princes, of the victory that god had youen him / than were messangers sent to every Reaume ; so that, withyn litil while,

this grete iournay was knownen thourgh alle cristendome / & euery prince made processions to be gon, thourgh-out his Reaume / and

12 belles to be rongen in euyer chirche, for the good aventure / &

many suche, as had take litil hede of the kyng of Sizile, or of his Reaume, and had called him an vnhappy kynge / nowe calle they hym wele vred, & repente them of their seyng / The kyng of

16 Sesile, seing his grete puissaunce, & wille of his folkes, went forth

conqueryng on his enemyes / and wanne with assayte the first towne he came vnto, whiche was the strengist of the Reaume, sauf only that / that himself had be biseged yn / but they withyn the

20 towne had lost alt corage / wherfore ther was founde litil diffisce

in them / and alle they were put to dethe, without takyng of any one prisoner / This takyng put the remenaunt of the turkes in

suehe drede / that dailly they departed out of the land / The kyng

24 of Luby him-self, and alle his company, were goon agein in-to his owne Reaume / they that abode, were hopeles of any socour or aide

that might come to them / wherby, in litil while, what by force and

by tretee, the moost part of the Reaume was recouerd, sauf twoo or

28 thre Townes, that were nigh the see / and that was, for they thought

that they might sonner haue socour than any that was withyn the Reaume / The kyng, that was sore trauailed / and it was than

wynter, toke counselle to lete them be til somer, and than to

32 assemble his power agein / and to lay sege to them, and wynne

them / Than lefte he fferaunt in the next place þat ioyned vnto

them / for grete trust had he in him / and went home him self /

and abode the remenaunt of the wynter with the quene and his

36 faire doughtir, whom him thought tyme was to be maried / But

abone alle thing, he desired to bistowe hir to a man of grete honour

and worthinesse. ¶ Nowe shalle we leue a while of the grete warres

of Sizile, & speke of Almayne. [Illumination : on right, Messengers

40 giving a letter to a King : on left, Kings, Bishops and Lords.]

All the
Sicilians
rejoice at
the victory:
[1 leaf 88]

and news of
it is sent to
all Christian
princes.

The King
retakes from
the Turks all
their Sicilian
towns,

except 2 or 3
near the sea.

[¶ lf. 88, bk.]
The Emperor,
Frederick,
Duke of
Brunswick,

dies.

The Electors

give his
empire to
the King of
Sicily, who

thus becomes
an Emperor.

[¶ leaf 89]

The biggest
Sicilian town
in Turkish
hands

is taken

by the 3
Princes,

N that tyme had the Emperour a due of Bruswitt, named ffrederike, the whiche, for none nede that the kynge of Sizile had, nor his Reaume, wolde neuir entendre to do him aide nor soecour / And for trouthe, he was olde & beyonde the yeres to bere 4 armes / beside his age, was he as couetous as any man might be / thise ij. principalle causes letted hym to do any aide to the Reaume of Sizile / There is nobody, be he olde or yonge, but ones shalt dy / This Emperours tyme came, that nedes he most departe out of the 8 world / and lefte grete tresour behinde him, whiche, aftir his dethe, litil profited him / and in his lif did him noo worship / for it diffendid him to accomplissh suche thinges as by his dignite and office he ought to do. aftir his dethe, anone the Chesers of thempyre 12 were assembled, and aduised amonges them, whom they might make Emperour ; and concluded amonges them that the kynge of Sizile shold be it / for he had endured grete trauaile and peyne for the feith. So they purueyde in alle haste to be ascertayned of his pleasir / and 16 befillie so, that on cristmasse day the presentacion of the Empire was brought hym, whiche he resceyued fulle humbly / Thus was the kynge of Sizile Emperour, and purposed to do more seruice to god, if the cace requyred, than euir did he before hym / Than ordeyned 20 he his aray, accordyng to his estate, more rially than it had ben bifore. Whan thise tidynges were knownen thorugh the Reaume, they made grete ioie / and euery man seide, that he was moost worthy to be it, of any man that lyued / In this meane ceason, 24 Surnome and his ij. felaws asked leue of their maister to go vnto an Enterprize ; and he graunted them, and accompayned theim 28 right mighty / they tolde their maister no thing whider they went / and he enquired them not / for he trusted y-nough in their honour & wisdomes / than went they vnto a Towne, that was the biggest that was in the turkes handes / than sent they bifore of their folkes to be hidde in a wode but litil thens / and them-self went vnto the towne with suche feliship as pleased them / & scalet 32 it be night / even agaist the point of the day / & were entred vpon the walles of the maister Toure or any man espied them / than went they downe, and opened the gates / and lete the remenant come yn, that were in a busshment without. and than aroos 36 the noise and the cry thorughout the towne / and euery man wold haue goon to their harneys / but it was to late / by the noblesse of thise ij. and of their company, was the Towne sone deliuerd of alle the Turkes / for they made serche euery house, and slew as many 40

as they coude fynde withyn the Towne / Then sawe they in the <sup>and all the
Turks in it
are slain.</sup> hauen, lyng many vesselles / wherin they supposed was the richesse
of the Towne. Than made they alle thise goodes to be departed
4 amonges their company / and whan every man was rewarded &
wele logged / they made a lettir to their maister / and sent him
worde howe they hadde done / “praying hym, if it pleased hym, to
come thider, or ellis to commaunde them his pleasirs.” Whan fferaunt
8 sawe the letters, he redde them with glad chere / and perceyued
wele that his folkes had wonne Gayett, the moost stronge place <sup>This town is
Gaeta.</sup>
that was withyn the Reaume of Sizile / Than was he as ioyfull as
any man might be / and toke suche company as pleased hym, and
12 went vnto them / and, at his departyng, wrote a lettir vnto the
Emperour, shewing him alle this matier, how it was / and howe
grete a wele it was for his Reaume ; ffor as long as the turkes had
ben able to kepe that place, they might haue kepte alle the centre
16 aboue them in tribute. and withyn that lettir he had closed the
lettir that had be sent hym by his ij. seruauntes. ¶ Now leueth
the tale a while to speke of them, & retourneth to speke of Orkays.

20 **T**routhe it was, that he knewe wele that the sege was departed / <sup>The Turkish
Prince
Orcays</sup> but he knewe not in what maner / notwithstanding he en-
quered often / but noman wolde ^[1. lf. 89, bk.] tellē him, for the Emperour
had commaundid so / and so he knewe wele, sith the sege was
broken, he coude not be delyuuered without raunsome / wherfore he
24 desired to speke with the Emperour / and the Emperour went vnto
him ; to whom he seide / “sir, y knowe certaynly that þe sege þat
was this before the Towne, is no lenger / wherfore y beseche you
that ye wille entende to my delyueraunce / and y promyse you that
28 y shalt do my trewe deuoir to make the pees and accorde bitwene
my lorde my fadir, and you” / “fforsotle,” saide the Emperour /
“it is alle oþer wise than ye knowe ; but entre in-to yondir litil
chambre / and ij. or iiij. of your folkes, suche as best shalle please
32 you / and y shalt telle you suche thinges as touche you right nere” /
than went he in-to the chambre / and the Emperour called v. or vi.
of his counselle with hym / and went in to Orkais, and saide vnto
hym / “my frende, for youre wele, it behoueth that ye be aduertised
36 for suche thinges as are befallen sith ye were prisoner” / than tolde <sup>is told of the
death of his
father;</sup> he him alle holly the dethe of his fadir / the destrucción of his
folkes, what nombre was ded of them / Aftir, he tolde him the <sup>and of the
loss of the
towne.</sup> recouere of his places / and of the takyng of his last place, that
40 was wonne agein by Surnome and his felawes. Than tolde he him

the grace that god had youen him, to be chosen a diffendour of the cristen feith ; and how he was Emperour ; wherby he was bounde to mayntene & encrese the cristen lawe. Aftir he had tolde Orkais this, he seide, vpone the request that he hadde made vnto him for his 4
*Orcays is not
to be admis-
ted to ransom
till the Em-
peror has
retaken all
his Sicilian
towns.*
 delyueraunce / that he entendid not to put him to fynaunce, bifore he had by force recouerd his inheritaunce / and than he wolde be agreeable to his delyueraunce / Orkais, hering thies tidynges, by the whiche he vndirstode the dethe of his ffadir / and of many a noble 8 man that was with him / wherfore he made grete sorow & lamentacion, & so did alle suche of his folkes as he had with him / so moche that noon of hem coude speke a worde. But at laste, a wise knyght of his seid vnto him, “ My lorde ! suche be the aventures of 12 this world / there is no man can be assured here, of parfit wele / and as for this losse, ye can not recouere it by your sorowe / Wherfore the best meane of remedy is, sith it is so fortuned, now to ourpassie this sorowe / & to remembre the best waies for your self / for ye be 16

*As Orcays is
now Sultan,*
 rightfull heire vnto the Turke ; & his inheritaunce most descende vnto you / and your abidynge here shalle gretly annoie you / and litil profit vnto the Emperour that is here present. It is not Longe sith ye adnowed bifore Hym / if the Turke were dede, that ye wolde 20 delyuere vnto his handes as moche as the Turke shold leue you of this Reaume ; wherfore, it is wele done now, that ye accomplishish your auowe / and as for your delyueraunce, ye may appointe with him to his pleasir / aftir your power ” / “ Trewly,” saide Orkais, 24
[1 leaf 90]

“ that y haue promysed and auowed, y am redy to holde ” / the Emperour thankid him / “ nathelees,” he saide, “ that he purposed, neither be tretise nor apointement, to recouere no place of his owne Reaume, but like as it had ben taken fro him by force / so wolde 28 he wynne it agein, or euir that he entendid to the deliueraunce of any prisoner that he had ” / Orkais, hering this awnswere, with the remenaunt of his sorowe, was passyng heuy and pensiff, and toke leue of the Emperour / and retourned to his logging / where he 32 endured in grete sorow / til such tyme as ye shalle here-aftir here / fferaunt, as y haue seide you, did so wele, that he came saufly to the towne that his folkes had newly taken / where as his thre seruauntes ioifullly receyued him / ye may wele wite there was grete 36 ioie amonges them ; for he loued them thre as wele as they had ben his owne children. Now shall y telle you of the Turkes folkes that were retourned in-to their Cuntrees. [Illumination : Murch of Troops from a City : baggage-waggons, footmen, horsemen and Chiefs.]

*he declares
he will keep
his promise
to give up
his Sicilian
towns to the
Emperor.*

40

MAny tymes bi-fore, hadde they retourned with grete glorie, <sup>The Turks
who've gone
home beaten,</sup> semyng to them that al the world might not endure against <sup>and their
countrymen
there,</sup> them / But now is it othirwise / for they retourned with
4 heuy chere for their maister, that they had thus pitously lost for
lakke of corage. They that were in the contre abidyg, hering
this sorowfull tidings of the deth of their lorde, coursed the houre
that euir suche fleers were borne, and helde them as shamed men,
8 without honour / and they that had lost their frendes, wolde fulle
¹fayne haue putt them to deth / Thus wist they not whedir to go / [^{¶ lf. 90. bk.}] but were fayne to hide them in their houses / as they that durst
not be shewed / wisshyng that they had neuir departed out of
12 Sizile / but that they had ben slayne whan their maister was / the
sorowe was right grete ouir alle the Turkes lande, with alle his
sogettes, whan they knewe the trouthe of his deth / and that he
had but one only sone, whiche was yit prisoner / thus had they <sup>have no
comfort,</sup>
16 no recomfort / for the moost part of the grete lordes that shold helpe
to sustene them and comfort them, were dede in the company of
their lorde / natheles, at last they toke hert vnto them / and
assembled the iij. estates throughout alle the lond, to take counselle
20 and auise vpone the gouernaunce of euery contre & lordshipe / & of
the deliueraunce of their yonge lord / and as they were for this
nede assembled, came tidinges vnto them of the grete losses that
they daily had in Sizile / and of the good and stronge Towne that
24 the iij. felawes had newly conquered, as ye haue herde bifore, wher-
of they were right sorowfulle / Natheles they ordeyned vpon their
othir businesse, holdyng the Reaume of Sizile for lost / & alle the <sup>and hold
Sicily lost;</sup>
richesse that was caried thider, as is bifore rehersed / thinkyng
28 wele this losse might not be recouerd by them / wherfore they con-
cluded to take aduise vpone the remenaunt of their charge / whiche
the grettist was, to haue agen there yong Lorde that might gouerne
them / yn whom they hadde grete affiaunce / wherfore they con-
32 cluded to make a request vnto the Emperour to haue saufcondite <sup>but they wish
to ransom
Orcays.</sup>
for some of them to come to him / and purveide comnyng officers
of armes to be sent vnto the Emperour / for the request of this
saufcondite. ¶ Now leue we them with their charge, and retourne
36 to the Emperour.

This meane while the wynter passed, and the newe ceason
approche / the Emperour assembled all his counselle, and the
Capitaynes, suchie as he had moost affiaunce yn, and there
40 was speche of alle his bessynesse / and concluded that, yn the

moneth of Iune, the Emperour shold be in the felde, & his puis-
saunce, to conquerre agein the remenaunt of his places that his
enemyes helde withyn his Reaume / among alle othir that were sent
for / fferaunt was comen thider / and had lefte his iij. seruauntes 4
kepyng the places that they hadde wonne. ¹wherof the Emperour
was sore troubled that they were not come / and so was faire
Iolante that loued hem ful hertily / and in esspecialle Le Surnome,
wherfore she desired moche to se them, and so did alle othir ladies 8
and gentilwomen ; and some of them seide unto hir, to trouble hir /
for they knewe wele she desired moche to se them / that they herde
sey / that, at the takyng of the place, Le Surnome was slayne / and
the tothir ij. were wounded to the dethe ; but ther was noon that 12
wolde telle it to the Emperour, for troubllyng of him. This faire
lady, heryng thise tidynges, toke suche sorow at hir hert, that she
might neither ete ne drynke / she thought alway that she sawe
them bifore hir / doing hir suche seruice as they were wont to do / 16
and had in hir self y-nough of ymaginationcs of the beaute and
maner of their persones / and of the grete pite and damage that was
of their deth / whiche, as she thought, was incomparable / and this
thought was neuir out of hir mynde. hou be it, bifore hir fadir, 20
she couerd hir sorow as wele as she might ; But she coude not so
wele couer it, but that he perceyued hir hert was not in ease / and
he had no moo children but hir / wherfore it greued him moche
the more to see her in that / So on a day he toke hir a-part, and 24
asked hir what hir ayled / for he saw wele she was right heuy /
and she thankid his grace, and saide there was no suche thing ; for
gretely she dred to telle hym, in as moche as it was tolde hir
secretly / and also, if he shold knowe therof, she wist wele / he 28
shold make right grete sorowe. The Emperour was not content
with this answeare / but toke hir forth with hym in-to an Inner
chambre / and wold nedes wite whi it was / than kneled she downe
a-fore him / and bisought him, that what so enir she shold sey 32
vnto hym, that he wold not be troubled ther-with / nor also to
thinke in hir, that any fonde loue caused hir to haue the annoy þat
she had, but only the grete losse & damage of him and of his
Reaume / than tolde she him / how she hadde herd say that Surnome 36
sholde be slayne at the last towne that was taken / and his othir
ij. felawes wounded to the dethe / and this was it that caused hir
to be so sorowfuH, to thinke that so noble persones as they were /
and by whom grete honour and wele was come to him / and to his 40

The 3 Princes
stay at Gaeta,
[1 leaf 91]

but some
Court ladies
declare that
Philip is kild,

and David
and Hun-
phrey wound-
ed to death.

Princess
Iolante

confesses to
her father

her sorrow
for the re-
ported death
and mortal
wounds of the
3 Princes.

Reaume, sholde be now so sone ded & destroied / And whan the
 Emperour ¹herde thise tidynges / he thought verily it had ben [1 ff. 91, bk.]
 sothe / & had suche sorowe / that he lened him downe on his bed /
 4 and might not speke. he bade his daughter sende for fferaunt / she
 did so / and he came anone / and founde the Emperour liyng, his
 yen fulle of teeres / and coude not speke a worde to him / wherof
 fferaunt was meruailously abasshed / and kneled downe bifore him,
 8 biseching him to telle him / what hym ayled / for in alle his liff had
 he neuir see him in suche plite / for no losse that euir bifelle him.
 So atte laste the Emperour tolde him of thise tidinges with fulle
 grete Payne / for his hert was so sore enclosed that he might
 12 vnnethe speke / and whan fferauzt herd this, he was sore abasshed /
 so that he wist not what to thinke / for the grete loue that he had
 to his iij. seruauntes; hou be it, that he had seen them sith / and
 lefte them wele y-nough at ease / than seide he to the Emperour² /
 16 "trewly, sir, than are they dede sith my departyng / for y lefte
 them alle hole & sauf / and if it were othir-wise, y wote wele y shold
 not long endure aftir them / for y haue noon honour, but, next god,
 it cometh me of them / wher-fore it sholde be right hard and heuy
 20 to me, if it were so / to make suche chere as y do / alas! how shold
 y mow comfort an othir / and ther were no cause of comfort in my
 self" / "forsythe," saide the Emperour, "y leve you wele" /
 "trewly, sir," saide fferaunt / "the place they be yn is not to be
 24 lefte, but in the handes of right trewe and noble men; and that was
 the cause y lefte them there" / Than departed fferaunt from the
 kyng, and sent in alle haste a messanger vnto them / and praid ^{He sends for them,}
 them to come vnto hym / and to purvey, so that the towne were
 28 surely kepte / Assone as they herde thise tidynges, they were right
 ioyfull / and moche desired they to se the Emperour / and in especialle
 his faire daughter, to whom they were alle thre seruauntes /
 and thus departed they assone as they might / and withyn litil
 32 while came to fferaunt their maister / whiche was of them as ioyful
 as any man might be / and, assone as he might, brought them to the ^{and takes them to the}
 Emperour, to whom he had no thing tolde that he had sent for ^{Emperor,}
 them / and assone as the Emperour sawe them / he chaunged sore /
 36 coloures / & toke them in his armes, eche one aftir othir / and
 neuir made them suche chere as he did than / and sent them forth-
 with to his daughter / & whan she sawe them, she had suche ioie at ^{and to}
 hir hert / that she coude not ^{2a} grete while speke o worde, but ^{Iolante.}
 40 toke eche of them by the handle, and aduisyd them wele, thinkyng ^{[2 leaf 92].}

in hir self, whethir it were a dreme, or matier of trouthe / and whan
 she might speke, she seide vnto them / “fforsothe, my frendes, y
 Iolante has
 never seen
 such lifelike
 dead folks as
 the 3 Princes
 are.
 [1 MS. smyl-
 ingly.]
 4
 sawe neuir yn my lif so lify ded folkes as ye be” / and they
 answerd hir alle smylingly,¹ and saide / “fforsothe, madame, we are
 noon othirwise ded than we were wont to be” / and therwith
 came the Emperour to his daughters chambre, and tolde them what
 was reported of them / and than knewe they wele that the grete
 chere that men made them, was for that cause / and fro that day
 forth, founde they them more bounden to the Emperour and to his
 faire doughtir, and also to their maister / than they had ben bifore /
 and eche of them thought in their mynde, whan they coude se their
 ceason, they wolde meve him for the mariage of his doughtir / for 12
 they knewe noon like vnto hir in beaute / and alle othir vertues /
 ¶ Now retourne we, and speke of the goode and noble Emperoure.

THe Emperour sent for his folkes / and by than they were
 assembled / it drewe vpone suche tyme as he had concludid 16
 bifore to take the felde, and so vndirstode him self right wele
 accompayned / and his ordenaunce was grete. Than went he to
 the next place of his enemyes, and bisegid it rounde a-bonte / and
 made so sharpe assaute / that withyn litil while þe towne was 20
 wns his best
 town from
 the Turks by
 assault,
 wonne / and for to put the remenaunt in drede, that helde any
 place withyn his reaume / alle tho that were withyn that towne
 were put to dethe / And aftir that / alle tho that kepte any othir
 places were so dredefulle, that they had neither wille ne corage to 24
 holde them / but some stale their wey, and lefte the places allone /
 and some deliuert them by apointement / The Emperour taried in
 no place to speke of / til he had perfformed his conquest / and
 withyn litil while, he had his reaume holly in his hande / The 28
 Emperour thus beyng on the felde / came vnto him the same
 tyme / the kynges of armes that were sent to hym oute cf Turky,
 requiryng him for a saufcondite, like as was spoken of here to-fore /
 Themperour was conseiled to agre to this Saufcondite, in asmoche 32
 and soon has
 his whole
 realm in his
 own hands.
 He grants a
 safe-conduct
 [2 M. 92, bk.]
 for 200 Turks
 to treat for a
 truce.
 as he had accomplished his conquest / and so graunted a sauf-
 condite to CC. personnes / And 2nd than he departed his armee, &
 retourned to themperesse his wif, and apointed a day to assemble
 the estates of his Reaume, to take auise of suche besynesse as he 36
 had to do / and there abode he in ioie and rest / til suche day as
 he had taken / Now cometh this Day of metyng of his estates. And
 a litil bifore, were comen the Turkes folkes, that had noon othir
 charge but to put their yong lorde to fynaunce / and the Emperour 40

had herd them bifore the comyng of the estates. So when thise estates were comen / he made to assemble them vpon a gret day in an halle / for there were many folkes / Than, in presence of them alle, he shewed his grete besynesse : fflirst, of the demeanyng of his warres, wherof he was in no surete as yit / aftir, of the delyuerance of Orkais, and oþir prisoners that he hadde / for whiche cause the Ambassatours came to him out of Turky / aftir this, spake he of the demeanyng of the Empyre / and that, for the grete warres that he hath had / he had not yit be in no place to receyue none of the crownes that to the Empyre bilonged / “Aftir,” saide he, “that he is nowe bicome aged, and that he hath had in the warres grete payne to trauaille / wherfore it was nedefulle for hym, fro hensforth, to se the meanes somwhat to be supported and holpen / But in case of nede, to do as welle as euer he did / with the good helpe of his suggestes. but what he mente he shold shewe them, whiche was, as semed hym, to marye his doughtir to some mighti prince / by whom he might hane aide and confort to discharge him of his laborous troubles in his olde dayes / seyng also that she was of resonable yeres to be maried. Thies iiiij. thinges touched his hert right nere / Requiring / that euerich of them wold take good auise hereon / agenst suche houre as they shold mete ther agein.” Aftir thise wordes seide, the emperor departed / and they that were of his pryve counselle, spake of thise matiers / whiche thought that two the first poyntes were but one / that was, of the warres that he had hadde / and of the deliueraunce of Orkais and his oþir prisoners / for, by that one, that oþir sholde be made / As thus / they semed, seyng the Emperour had alle his reaume in his hande / that by the deliueraunce of Orkais he might haue a grete fynaunce for to helpe hym to his empyre / and by his delyueraunce, might he take a longe trewes of x. or xij. yere / and in the meane while might he receyue his crownes / and vndirstande the demeanyng of his Empyre / and what aide he might haue there / And than, this trewes ended / he might go aftir in-to the Turkes Land / and put him in deuoir to encrease the cristen feith / and in this meane tyme / he might wele entendre to the mariage of his doughtir / In this wise, as I haue seide, they auised the Emperour / whiche sone agreed to their opinion touchyng his warres / and the deliueraunce of his prisoners / and the demeanyng of his Empyre / But he thought to vse oþir auise touching the mariage of his doughtir, seyng vnto them / “Remembre ye what a valiaunt man is worth ;

[leaf 93] [leaf 93]

The Emperor asks his Council about 1. carrying on his war, 2. the ransom of Orcays, 3. managing his Empire, 4. marrying his daughter Iolante.

His Privy Council say his points 1 and 2 are only one; also that he should get money by letting Orcays be ransomed; should then visit his Empire; invade Turkey, and then marry his daughter.

The Emperor for, sith the comyng of Surnome, as moche wele is fallen to vs by his worthynesse / as if the grace of the holy gost had lighte amonges us / ffor, fro that day sith, we haue so moche be comforted and enhardlyed, that they that bifore, no-thyng were / became moost 4 worthy / and moost valiaunt / And on that othir side / oure enemyes, that were worthy an'l hardy, haue lost corage and strength. Thus may ye se, what the body of one noble man is worth / and for asmoche as ther may cowardise be loggid in the hert of a right mighti 8 kynge, aswele as in a symple persone, Therfore y wolde knowe, for the wele of you alle / hym that shuld haue my doughtir, for a noble man / for y hadde leuer she had the pore hardy / than the riche cowarle / for the wele of me, my Reaume, and of you alle .I. 12 had leuer she had one of the iij. straungers, that is to sey, Le Surnome, Ector, or Athis / if they were of roialle blode / than the moost riche kynge that at this day is livynge " / with thies wordes, alle they of his counselle were right wele content / for they sawe wele it 16 meued of grete honour / and of his corage / and moche they thought here vpon / for they thought it right straunge to knowe the corage of folkes / Natholes, one of them auised hym, & saide thus / " hou be it, that to many folkes it shold be right harde to knowe the 20 corage and noblesse of suche princes as shalle desire youre doughtir in mariage / yit it semeth to me right light to vndirstande / and y shall sey you hou / Me thinkith that alle that be here, are agreed to take long trewes / for the causes that haue be shewed / this 24 trewes enduryng / if the Emperour do make crye an high and myghty Tournay / wherin noon shalle tourney, but if he be descendid from a roialle lyne / and that he make to declare the 28 mariage of his doughtir / and that who that shal wynne the price thre daies, shal haue hir / whiche shal be a grete Payne to any one man, to haue the Renomee by iij. dayes ouir alle worthy / thus shalbe knownen the moost victorious & noble / And if so be that one man wynne not the price alle the iij. daies, then shal the Emperour 32 be at his choise / to chese for hir whiche of them pleasith him best" / And whan they had herde this opinione, they loughe / hou be it, they thought it right wele, saide / But among alle othir, the Emperour was pleased wele therwith / and was vtterly concluded to 36 shewe it bifore the iij. estates of his Reaume / and what causes meved hym / As he concluded, so he did / and shewd it vnto them / with the iij. othir poynetes bi-fore rehersed / wherof they were alle right wele content / And as for the Tournay that shold be for his 40

*One of the
Council*

*suggests a
3-days' Tournay,
by men
of royal blood
only, for
Iolante.*

[*l. ff. 93, bk.1*]

*The Emperor
adopts this
plan.*

doughtir / they thought there shold none be there / but if he were
of Roialle blode / and nere vnto the crowne / And than was it saide
amonges them / that it was pite that Surnome & his ij. felawes
4 were not of the roialle blode / and wisshed that Surnome had be so /
and had hir to his wif / Such conclusion as the Emperour had
taken bifore, was affermest amonges them. On the morowe, the
Emperour sent for the Ambassatours to come bifore hym / and
8 there they purposed for the deliueraunce of Orkais and thise oþer
prisoners, and in like wise for the deliueraunce of kynge ffirbrace ;
and there were they longe tyme / and coude in no wise accorde /
and often tyme they withdrew them, & went to Orkais, that so
12 moche desired his deliueraunce / that he rought not wele what he
did / And atte laste they brought this worde, if that the iij. estates who propose
wold so assente, that if Orkais, and kynge ffirbrace, and alle the to ransom
prisoners of their partie might be delyuered / they wolde in like Orcays,
16 wise deliuere alle the prisoners of themperours partie, if any there K. Ferabras,
were / & also gif vj. walled Townes & Castelles, suche as the and other
Emperour wold chese withyn the Turkes land, Reseruyng the Turks, by
chief Citees / and pay at one payment Vc. Mt. florences / and to releasing
20 haue trewes for iij. yere / and here they to go in-to Turky, and all their
bringe answerie again withyn iij. monethes / and than to deliuere Christian
hostage / at their comyng again, to pay this money at one payment giving up
withyn the yere / and the Townes and Castells to be deliuered 6 Turkish
24 to the Emperours Handes withyn ij. monethes astir / Hereto, at wald towns,
the last, agreed the Emperour & the iij. estates / than departid and paying
the Ambassatours / and sped them so, that withyn litil while 500,000
they came into their contre / where as, sone were alle the nobles florins, and
28 assembled / and there made they reporte, whiche was to them no making a 3-
thyngre harde nor straunge, sauff yn one poynte / whiche was, the years' truce.
deliueraunce of their Townes and places in-to their enemyes handes.
[1 leaf 91]

Neuertheles, kynge ffirbrace was there, and put him in suche K. Ferabras
32 deuoir amonges them / and made them suche exortacions, that, in gets the
conclusion, they were accorded / and whan it was thus concluded Turks to
& accorded / they that hadde the charge, therwith departed / & agree to these
withyn litil while came ther the Emperour was / and by his licence hard terms.

36 spake with Orkais / their yong lord, whiche asked them hou they
had spedde, and they tolde him alle / and howe grete peyne they
hadde for the places that shold be deliuerd / He was right ioifull
to here of his deliueraunce / and prayed them, assone as they might /

40 to make their report / Than required they to speke with them-

perour ; and he graunted, and made them to be brought bifore him and his counselle / & there made relacione, & offred to delyuere their hostage at the pleasir of themperour / themperour was content to holde his promys / and puruaide, for the honour of the Turke, to 4 holde a feste duryng iij. dayes / and made a grete tournay, and made to assemble the most parte of the ladies & gentilwomen of his Reaume / Orkais, knowyng certainly that his delyneraunce was concluded, was ioifulle / He knewe also of the feste that the Emperour 8 had ordeyned for his sake / wherfore he was the more leef to abide that day / trustyng, for the loue of faire Iolant, to do so that day / to be somewhat the more in hir grace / hopyng to haue hir to his wif ; and made request to the Emperour to haue hors & harneys & 12 habimentes for him / and xx^{ti} of his folkes / Aftir this tournay was cried / euery man desired to be ther-at / but among alle othir, Surnome and his ij. felawes put them in deuoir to be wele apointed there ; and so were they, as if they had ben knownen kynges 16 sones / as they were / and though it were vnknownen to other folkes, yit echone of them knewe in them-self / what he was, whiche made their hertes the more highly coraged to be habiled ther⁻¹aftir / Throughout the Reaume was ther none othir speche but of ioie of 20 the fest / for bifore, had they hadde but warres and trouble / Thus passed the tyme, eueri man in ioie & disport, til the ceason came that the Tournay shold be. the night afore the tournay, eueri man made his musters / as in suche cas bilongith / Than were the 24 knighthes and squiers departed / suche as shold tournay, by notable auncient knighthes & kynges of armes, & herauedes that ther-to were commytted / and they made euery man sette their kageys at their wyndowes / or at their gates ; and at a wyndowe were hanged the 28 sheldes of the ij. ffelawes / but their propre armes were not knownen therby, for in their sheldes had they nothyng but alle of one colour, & writen theron their names / eueri man merauled herof, and supposed therby that they were no gentilmen. Thise wordes came 32 bifore the ladies, whiche were right sory to here suche speche / for wele they Iugid, without grete noblesse of blood, there might not be in them suche honour & vertu / and wele thei thought that they did it by-cause they wolde not be knownen / Eche of them had in 36 colour the felde of the armes they to-bere. whan the tournay was thus ordeyned / and thies ij. had noon armes vpon their sheldes / they were constreyned to swere bifore many noble men, if they were gentilmen or not ; and toke an othe that they were gentilmen / 40

The Emperor holds a Feast and Tourney in honour of the Truce.

Princes
Philip,
David, and
Humphrey,

[¹ lf. 94, bk.]

don't show
their arms,
but have
their shields
all of one
colour.

They take an
oath that
they are
Gentlemen.

and than seide they that herde it, their werkes shewed it wele to be
so / and ech one of them trustid in him self, that the Emperour
and alle his Reaume shold knowe that he was a gentilman / Thus
4 was enery man wele content. On the morowe, bigan the tourney / At the
the ladies and gentilwomen were at the wyndowes / and they that
shold tourney, came yn / every man on his side, as they were
8 apoynted ouir even. then was the corle cut; and the trumpetes
blewe up; and euery man put him yn peyne to do wele. At this
tourney, were so many dedes of armes, and so grete strokes, that it
were to longe to write them. It were to long, to reherce the grete
noblesse and prowesse that Le Surnome and his ij. ffelawes did; also the Princes
12 Orkais, the yonge turke, it were moche to reherce the grete actes Philip,
that he did, as he that was thorough thrilled with the nedle of loue / David,
Neuirtheles, that side where the thre ffelawes were on, made alle Humphrey
othir to resort bifore them / ffor their ¹mighty strokes and high [leaf 95]
16 prowes, no man myght endure / and so wele thei did that day, that get the
oir alle othir they were renomed; & next them, Orkais had the highest
name; but he might not compare with noon of the iij. That day renown.
had Surnome the price / and whan he came to daunce with the Prince
20 ladies & gentilwomen, he and his ij. ffelawes were so richely and so
wele apointed / that as the sonne in clerenesse passith the mone &
the sterres, so they iij. oir alle othir bare the brute of that feste /
Aftir them, as y seyde bifore, Orkais in alle thing passid alle othir /
24 this feste endured iij. dayes, & euery day bare Surnome the price / Prince Philip
Neuirtheles, he wold right fayne that ech of his ffelawes had hadde is first of all.
the price of that day / Nowe is this last day accomplisht / and the
grettist soper ordeyned, that bifore had be sene / In the halle was
28 no crie, not speche, but of thies iiiij. Aftir soper, the daunces began /
and the prices were youen / euery man spake of Surnome / at eueri
price were gynen grete giftes and grete larges / a litil bifore the
Emperour shold be taken vp, a notable kyng of armes went vpone
32 a Cupbord on high / & made crie "pees" thre tymes; and than was The Truee
the trewes publishid bitwene the Emperour and the Turke for iij. between the
yere / Aftir this, made the kyng of armes an other crie, whiche was Emperour and
this / that for asmoche as the Emperour had in his tyme grete for- the Turks is
36 tunes / and that Reaume was next vnto the enemyes of the feith,
whiche hath caused him meruailous and huge warres / wherfore it proclaimed.
was nedefulle vnto him and to his Reaume to haue one that sholde
enherite aftir his daies / of grete nobles and vertu / seyng that he
40 had but one only doughtir. Therfore it was necessarie vnto him

for to allie hym with som man of grete corage / wherfore he did alle
 men to wite, that at May, come twelue month, the xv. day, shold
 begynne a tourney / and shold endure iij. daies / and that he wold
 giff his doughtir, with grete part of his Reaume, to him that best 4
 shold do tho .iij. dayes duryng / so that there shold noon tourney
 ther, but if he were of roialle blode, nigh vnto kynges. Moreouir,
 doyng them to wite / that if by one man the iij. dayes were not
 achedued and wonne / he shold not be bounde to gif his doughtir, 8
 but if it pleased him / and also ther might noon tourney there, but
 if he were cristen. This erie publissh / the kyng of armes
 descended / the daunces bigan agein / and eche man thanked god

[¹ lf. 95, bk.] in his hert, of ¹the trewes and good pees that nowe is in the 12
 Reaume. This faire yonge lady, heryng the erie of hir mariage, vexed
 alle rede & shamefast / and also it forthought hir moche, that noon
 might tourney without he were come of roialle blode / for shē sup-
 posed wele, that noon of hir iij. seruautes might be resceyued at 16
 that tourney. among alle othir, was noon more ioyfull herof than

Orcays thinks
he'll be the
man.

Orkais was / for that he thought wele / that thies iij. that passid
 him, might not be at the tourney / wherfore he trusted to haue the
 price bifore alle othir / wherby he thought him self sure to haue 20
 that fair lady to his wif, that he loued so moche / thus concluded
 he in him self to rennaye his feith and lawe / and take him to
 cristen feith / where it shewed wele, loue, of more strength than
 lawe.

Prince Philip
will go home
to France,

On the tothir side, Le Surnome, þat herde this erie, was no 24
 thing sory therof / for he thought wele to haue leiser y-nough to go
 vnto his ffadir, and retourne agein by that tyme, where he wolde
 not faile to be for alle the worlde / for there trusted he to wynne hir

and then re-
turn and win
Iolante.

that his hert moost desired / In like wise thought his .ij. felawes / 28
 for eche of them trusted that day to haue goode aventure / think-
 yng that noon of the tothir shold tourney. This thought, egal and
 like, had eche of them / the night passed / and the dispordes endid /
 eueri man went til his reste / til on the morow, that many folkes 32
 toke their leue / aftir their departyng / Orkais made alle his assur-
 ance with the Emperour, and fulfilled alle that he had promysed /

Orcays takes
leave of
Iolante, and
hopes to win
her.

and than toke his leue of him / of the Emperesse / and of their
 doughtir / to whom he seide, "I truste to se you agein at this 36
 Tourney / and I promyse you, on my trouthe, if y may haue suche
 fortune as y desire / ther can nothyng be so peynfull vnto me /
 but y wolt do for your sake / and if the Emperour your ffadir had
 not do make the erie that he did / y wolde haue spoken with him 40

bifore my departyng, in suche wise as y trust he shold haue ben
content with my request / but I wote wele, sith he hath made this
ordynaunce / he may in no wise breke it" / This faire lady was
4 alle shamefast, and no thing answerd him / thus toke he leve of hir
and of alle the tothir ladies and gentilwomen / the Emperour con-
veyed him, and did him grete honour / than toke their leve / &
many of the Emperours folkes conveyed hym forth / but ferthist of
8 alle othir, the iij. ffelawes conveyed hym / for they were moche of
an age / and alle of roialle blode / and moost comonly men seke
¹their semblable / when tyme came they sholde departe, Orkais
saide vnto them / "my faire frendes, fareweH / and y purpose to be

12 here agein at this feste, at the whiche y thynke my self right wele
vryd, that noon of you may that day tourney / Neuirtheles, if any
fortune or wele than bifalle me, y shalbe glad of youre company
bifore alle othir" / eche of them thankid him; hou be it, there was

16 noon of them but thought to endure grete Payne / or that he came
to that he wende / thus they departed from him, and retourned to
the Emperour / and so passed forth tyme, til on a day Le Surnome,
Ector, & Athis, were gon to the felde to disport them ; and Surnome

20 talkid to them of many thinges ; and amonges othir, he seide thus /
" my frendes, whan I departed out of my contre, and fro my pore
fadirs hous / my principall cause was for the renome of the warres

of this Reaume / and specially to the wele of my soule, whiche
24 every good man ought to desire / nowe is it, thankid be god, that
this Reaume is recouerd, and grete & a long trews taken ; wherfore
y purpose nowe no lenger to abide in this Reaume, but to go home

28 it is with me ; for y am sure they wote not whethir y be ded or on
lyne. and for this cause most y nedes leue your compaynes, whiche
sore forthinketh me / but that y may noon othir do." Than seide

Athis, " by my trouthe, my maister and felawe, youre departyng Prince David

32 sorowith me, and shalt sorowe me more than any earthly thing ; but,
daies of my lif, where so euer I be, I shalbe alle yores / and yit
may happe to come the houre that y shalt nowe deserue that ye
haue don for me, whiche y neither haue, nor can deserue yit / and sory

36 y am that youre contre and myn be no nerre to-gedir. Neuirtheles,
y shalt put me in deuoir to se you fulle ofte, so that y knewe where
ye dwellid, or of what folkes ye were come : and nowe y hane herd
youre entent, I shalt shewe you myn / ffor, like as seide to-fore, and

40 for the same entent, I put me in the Arme of Scotland, for the

Orkais
departs,
and the 3
Princes
escort him
far.

[1 leaf 96]

Prince Philip
tells David
and Hum-
phrey

that he
means to go
home.

Prince David

socour of this Reaume, with oþir / and now y se it in pees, my
 says he shall purpose is to drawe me in-to the Cuntry fro whens I came / ffor
 return to Scotland: now, thanked be god, the Emperour hath litil nede of my seruice."

and Prince Humphrey says he shall [¶ lf. 96, bk.] "Nowe forsothe," seid Ector to Surnome, "if your departyng 4
 aught to sorowe any body, it aught sorowe me / for by you haue y
 ben ¹saued / and ye haue accepted me in-to your company, wherof
 y thought me right happy / and so wold thinke, if in alle my lif I
 might do thing that might be your pleasir / and as long as ye had 8
 abiden here, I thought not to departe. But sith your pleasir is
 nowe to departe, I wolt no lenger abide here / but go agen in-to
 the Reaume of Englond, of whens y am; and there shalbe neuir day
 of my lyf, but my body & goodes shalbe alle yores. [Illumination.] 12

go to Eng-
land. **I**n this wise, talke the thre felawes, and diuisid the maner of
 their departyng / and howe they might haue leue / and argyud
 sore amonges them / whethir was bettir to take leue to-gedre /

They resolve to take leave of Ferant all together; or ellis eche one by hym self / But at the last, they concluded alle iij. 16
 to-gedre to take leue at their maister at ones / whan they might se
 him best at leiser. Thus withyn a day or ij. aftir, they waited on
 their maister at a soper / and aftir he had soped, they thre to-gedre
 besought him that they might speke with hym / and he, as abasshed, 20
 toke them a-part / thinkyng ther was som matier of displeasir / for
 neuir bifore had they desired to speke with him in suche wise.

and Prince Philip Le Surnome spake for them alle, seyng in this wise / "My lord !
 it is longe that we haue ben in your seruice, wherin we haue had 24
 suche wele, and so grete honour, that we can neuir suffice to deserue
 it / Natheles, in the mooste humble wise that we can, we thanke
 you," and therwith they kneled downe / and he made hem to rise
 vp agen / and Surnome tolde forth his tale, seyng, "my lord, ye se 28
 nowe the estat of this Reaume in suche cace / thankid be oure lord,
 that there is no warre, to the grete honour of the Emperour / and
 his Recommendacion is spredde through the world / ye knowe wele

[¶ leaf 97] the long ²trewes that he hath taken / wherby he hath litil nede of 32
 folkes / And we be pore gentilmen straungers, whiche gladly wille
 drawe to oure pore frendes / for evry man aught to haue naturalle
 loue to fadir & modir / and thies thinges considered, we be affermed
 & constreyned, by reasone & honour, to drawe vs home, and departe 36
 out of this cuntry / wherfore, humbly we beseche you, to licence vs
 to departe with the fauour of your good lordshippe / whiche we
 moost desire, next the Emperour" / It is not to be douted that this
 desire was as greuous at flerauntes hert / as he had felt him sore 40

tells Ferant,

and asks his
 leave for
 them to go.

hurt with a spere / and not without cause / alle his honour was by
them iij., ffor he knewe wele at this day he was the moost renomed
knyght of the world / and forthwith felle the water in his yeen /
4 and seide / “my dere frendes, wille ye leue me nowe / haue y done
any thing that shold myscontent you *with* me / no, to my knowlage /
and as for the warres of this Reaume, they ar not yet ended / trouthe
it is that there is a trews / but that shalſt not long endure / and
8 whan the warres shal begynne agein / y wold not haue lost your
company, for no good. and also whan the werres begynne / we shalle
entre in-to their Reaume, where men shalle ſe many grete dedes of
armes / and allas! ſo moche as y haue loued you / and ſo glad as

12 y haue ben to encreec your honoures / hou be ye now content to
departe fro me?” Le Surnome answerd, “my lord, we may haue
leifer y-nough to be with oure frendes / and come agein or the
warres begyrne” / whan fferaunt herd his wordes & conclusion, he

16 departed fro them, and ſeide, “that on the morowe he wolde ſpeke <sup>and promises
his answer
next day.</sup>

more with them.” It is no question if he were that night pensif
and fulf of sorow. his folkes that were aboute him, ſawe wele by
him, that he hadde herd ſom thing that pleased him not / fferaunt
20 toke his hors, and rode to the Emperour / and tolde him fulle sorrow-
fully thentent of his seruauntes / wheroft the Emperour toke right
grete sorowe & displeasir / and askid if any remedy were to with-
olde them / “trewly,” ſaid fferaunt, “nay” / “Than,” ſeid the
24 Emperour, “I ſhall make them to be required be my wif, my
doughter, and alle my ladies” / “fforſothe,” ſeide fferaunt, “alle that
botith not. But y auife me of one thing / It is ſo, that for the
grete honour ye haue don them / they be gretly bounden vnto you;

28 wherfor ^[1 lf. 97, bk.]ye may wille them, ſeyng the mariage of your doughter <sup>He advises
the Emperor
to urge the
Princes to
return for
the Iolante
Tourney next
May.</sup>

shalbe yn May come tweluenoneth, that eche of theim promyſe
you to do your pleasir to be here at that tyme; for they be your
seruauntes / and euery seruaunt aught to honour his maister / and
32 ſo may ye require them that they do at that tyme / and whan they
come agein, perauenture ye may ſo entrete them that they wille
abide ſtille *with you*” / To this counſelle agreed the Emperour / and
yn this purpose departed fferaunt fro him / and went to his loggyng /
36 and made that night as goode chere as he might / althoſt his
hert were right sorowfult / and on the morow, aftir he had dyned,
came his thre seruauntes to him agein, to know his pleasir vpon the
request they had made him the day bifore / fferaunt answerd them
40 in this wise / “my frendes, notwithstandingyng / that of your grete

goode wille and curtesy, ye haue done me such honour as to repute
you my seruauntes / Nathelies ye be not so, for y neuir held my self
worthy, nor of such honour, to haue the seruice of so noble men /
hou be it, your company hath ben to me moost ioie / and fulle fayne 4

wold y haue done you more honour / if it wold haue pleased you to
take it. Neurtheles, ye be nowe *with* the Emperour; and he had

Ferant refers
the 3 Princes
to the Em-
peror.

you in such cherte, that he hath put you vnto his daughter /

whiche is the thing in the worlde that he loueth moost / and hath 8
grete cause so to do; for she is one þat can deserue loue, and the

thanke of euery creature / and of thies two most ye take leue / and
whan ye haue leue of them, ye and y shalle agree weH y-nough" /

they answerd that they "purposed so to do / and that on the morowe, 12
with the pleasir of god, they wold go to him; and as they had

grete cause to thanke his grace of his grete honour and curtesie that
he had shewed them / whiche was impossible for them enir to

deserue" / so on the morowe they for-gate not, whan tyme was, to 16
come to do their seruice to their maistresse as they were accostomed,

whiche had herde of this matier / wherfore she was in grete trouble
and annoye / and when she sawe them bifore hir at the table, she

<sup>iolante weeps
at their in-
tended going.</sup> coude no[t] withholde the teres from hir yeen / In this dyner tyme, 20
ete she nothing that did hir good / for wondrely wele loued she
them. whan the Emperour had dyned, they iij. came to gedre be-

fore him / and, as humbly as thei coude, thankid him of the grete
wele and honour that, of his ¹grace, he had done them / and aftir 24

^[1 leaf 98] shewed him, hou "by the grace of god, and of high and good
prowesse, and of his suggestes, he had his hole Reaume feasibly;

and for that cause they alle were concluded, by his licence, nowe to
drawe agein to their cuntries; for it was longe sith they sawe their 28

frendes, or herd of them / whiche euery man of right aught to desire /
wherfore they besought the Emperour that it might please him to

gif them leve." The Emperour made them many grete desires to
abide / and grete and large offres / but by no meane coude he 32

reneue them from their purpose; and he sawe that / and in con-
clusion, he desired them to come agein to the tourney / that shold

<sup>The Emperor
begs them to
stay;</sup> be made for the mariage of his daughter / and seide vnto them / "al-

though that none of you iij. may tourney there, I shall make oþir 36

tournays and ffestes, where your worthynes shalbe showed *with* many
othir noble men / and also ye know wele it is the custome,

euery man to be redy *with* his seruice to his maister and maistresse
at any such ffeest, and ye be retcyned *with* hir / wherfore ye aught 40

<sup>and if not,
to return for
the Tourney
for Iolante.</sup>

in no wise than to faile hir" / Alle thre of one wille made hym The 3 Princes agree to come back in a year. promyse & othe, that if they were in helth and at their large, they wold not faile to be there agen at that day. On this condicoun the 4 Emperour licenced them to departe. Thus toke they leve of him / and went to the Emperesse to take their leve; wherof she was right sory / & ther toke they their leve / and went to their maistres / and tolde hir hou they had taken leve bothe of the Emperour and of 8 themperesse / and eueriche of them offred him-self to aventure body, liff, and goodes in hir seruice, for hir pleasir and honour / This yong lady answerd them with fulle sorowfulle hert / "I pray god, my frendes, conduyt you, & sende you asmoche ioye and honour as 12 eche of you is worthy to haue; and then shalle ye be largely sped / and that shalle alway be my prier" / and thus departed they out of the chambre / [alle folkes] when they herd here-of, wepte full sore, and sorowed / for wondrely wele were thies ij. felawes belouid with 16 every creature; neuirtheles it might noon othirwise be / Thies ij. felawes went to their loggynges til on the morowe / Themperour sent eche of them ij. M.t scutes and ij. coursers / and the faire lady, his daughter, sent eche of them a purs & a dyamant. In the mornynge 20 toke they leve of alle their company / and eche of them toke leve of othir / whiche departyng was ¹right sorowfull, for eche of them loued othir as bretheren. Thus leue y them, every man takyng his way / and retourne agen to the Emperour. [Illumin.: Emperor's reception.]

24 **Y**E haue herd bifore, hou the Emperour was concluded to go to Rome & to othir places / where he shold resceyue the Crownes of the Empire; and as he had concluded, so he The Emperor did, and departed toward them assone as he might, where he was 28 resceyued of alle the lordes of the Empyre / ffor his renome was so spred ouir alle the worlde, that every man desired to se him, and knowe who he was / they had him in grettir fauour than they had bifore. and the lordes askid him of the demeanyng of his warres / 32 and he tolde them the trouthe, & forgate not to reherce the noblesse of Le Surnome and his ij ffelawes / Aftir his coronacion, he toke his way to millayne, and was crowned ther agen / & from thens departed and went to Rome, and helde there a grete court, and there soioured 36 a long while, where he was resceyued of the Pope and alle the Car-dynalls with grete ioye / and whan he had contynued there as long as it pleased him, he retourned agen in-to his contre / where he made grete purneaunce againt the tourney / whiche began fast to approche. 40 & he made thorough alle the Towne, the loggynges to be apointed, and

Princess Io-lante wishes them well.

[1 lf. 98, bk.]
Each of them starts for his home.

is crownd at Milan,

and is wel-comd at Rome by the Pope.

He goes home, and prepares for the Tourney.

dressid in the best wise / and euery man applied him so wele / that alle thing was sure & redy. Euerie prince & lord that was of roialle blode, that had herd the crye of this Tournay, and knewe also the grete renoun of this faire lady for whom the tourney shold be / 4 aredyed them the moost richely that they coude, to be ther at that

[¹ leaf 99] day. But onir alle othir, Orkais, the ¹yonge Turke, had desire and Sultan Orkais wille to shewe him self at this feste. he was so sore taken with the so loves Iolante,

loue of this faire lady / that he was yn fulle wille to bileyue in the lawe of Ihesu crist / the gretist drede he had, was, hou he might bringe this aboue by the agrement of alle his suggettes / whan he was comen in-to this contre, he was receyued as to his estate belonged / and euery man had grete trust in his persone / for that 12 they sawe him alle othirwise in his maner and condicions than his ffadir had ben bi-fore. Alle thestates of his Reaume came vnto him / for eche of them desired gladly to se him / he was right large & courtaise / and moche conuersant with the noble men of his 16 Reaume / and many tymes they asked him of the warres, and of the maner of the cristen folkes, in whos handes he had long tyme bene. Orkais tolde hem the trouthe / and rathir seid more of honour, than lesse, to thentent to drawe the hertes of his people the 20 more to that bileyue / and seide verrily, "that he bileyued, that if the god that the cristen folkes worshipped, had not ben their helpe / it had ben impossible for them euir to haue recouered." Than tolde he them in what eaas the Cezilians were / and of their pore eorage / 24 and howe that, by one only man, they were sodeinlye transmuted in to the moost valiaunt nacion that at this houre was cristen / and hou aftir that, ij. othir were comen, by whom, with the helpe of the first, was the destrucczion of his ffader, & dethe of alle them of his 28 lawe, whiche thought him a thing ouir meruailous / and so moche preised he the cristen feith, that his folkes thought wele he had some pleasir therin / and some of them seide that "the cristen god was more worthi than their god that they bileyued on" / and so moche did 32 the yonge Turke by his wordes, with contynuaunce of tyme, that he sawe & knewe verrily that, suche part as he toke, the most part of his reaume wold take / wheroft he was as ioifull as he might be / and thervpone ordeyned his habilementes, the moost riche þat had 36 be seen in that reaume / & thought to take with him the grettist parte of priuies & Barons of his reaume, to thentent that they shold be cristen with him / and he trusted verrily by this dede to con-

that he
praises the
Christians

and Prince
Philip
highly,

and hopes
the Turks
will turn
Christians
with him,

and thus win
him Iolante.

40
quere this faire lady / whiche in hir tyme was very mirroure of alle

other fair ladies / Many men askid him whider he wold go, and he seide, his entent was to go the ffeest of themperour, with whom he had ben prisoner, & was in his Daunger by the places that he helde 4 in his contre. wherfore he wolde do him honour and pleasir, to thentent he might haue his places the sonner agein / ^[¶ ff. 99, bk.] and to take a Lenger trewes with him / “ for I propose nomore to Warre with him.

They that herde him, were right ioifulle of thies tidynges. they that ^{Orkais's com-} had apointed to go with him / habiled them-self as richely as they ^{companions dress} coude, and so wele, that the yong Turke thought him-self there ^{grandly for} sholde come neither kynge ne prince at that day bettir appointed ^{their visit to} than he and alle his people shold be / he puruaide so that alle thing 12 was redy longe bifore the day of his departyng ; and in his mynde he dred noman ; sith that he knewe wele the iij. seruauntes of fferaunt might not turnay, he thought him verily assured that the faire Iolant shold be his wiff. Thus passed forth the tyme alle in 16 ioie, trustyng in goode auenture. And thus shalle we leve a while of hym, and speke of the iij. ffelawes that were departed eche fro other / and every man hielde his way ^{with} grete sorowe and payne, ^{The 3 Princes} contynuellry remembryng the faire Iolant / ^{journey} whiche eche of them ^{homeward,} 20 trusted to haue to his wif, Remembryng also the bounte of the ^{each wishing} for Iolante.

Emperour and of the Emperesse / and aftir, they thought on their curtaine maister, and of the fortunes they had there / and aftir, remembred hou they shold come agein in-to that Reaume, and hou 24 the Emperour shold meruaile to se them come again, like kynges sones / and in esspeciall, fferaunt, whiche hadde reteyned them so long in seruice / and so shold their ij. ffelawes that most be there that day, whan they shalle saye how long they haue ben ffelawes 28 vnto a kynges sone / and euerich of them had his thought bie his two ffelawes. ^[Illumination: a King, or Noble, receiving and embracing a young Man.]

Nowe shall y telle you of eche of them, hou they arryued in 32 their marches. and first shalt y speke of Surnome, for he ^{Prince Phi-} was the first, that departed & lefte his fadir for the seruice of god, and also was the first that came agein in-to his contre. whan Surnome was passed out of the Reaume of Sizile, he called a yonge gentilman vnto him, that was ²with hym / and saide vnto hym / ^[¶ leaf 100] “ my frende, I shaſſ peraudentur be ashamed if ye sawe the pore place of whens y am comen / wherfore ye shalle departe home agein in-to your contre ; and y gif you my horses, sauf only that y ride on, & my harneys, and ij. C. scutes, that yit are billeſte me ; & I 40 pray you that ye abide in the Reaume of Sizile til tyme of the

^{sends back}
^{his attendant}
^{with horses}
^{and money.}

tournay / at whiche tyme y trust to be ther, with the mercy of god.
neurtheles, if ye may haue any bettir maister, or othir good fortune
in the meane tyme, y pray you leve it not for me" / This yong
gentilman, that herd his maister thus speke, thought wele it came 4
him of noble corage / and sory was to departe out of his company /
and seide vnto him / "sir, for goddes sake be not a-shamed of me /
for whoos sone that euir ye be, y had leuer be in your company
than in the company of the grettist man of the world." Surnome 8
thanked him, and saide / "I shaſt discouer me now to you / I am
a gentilman of roialle lyne; and that y trust shall be knownen or the
but is refused. Tournay be ended / But y most go now in-to such places where as
I wilt no company" / his seruaunt than departed / and thanked 12
him of his grete geftes, and retourned agein in-to Sizile / Nowe is
Le Surnome alle alone, and kepit forth his way in-to ffrance / and

^{Prince Philip within fulle litil while knewe certainly that his ffadir was ded /}
^{wheroft he was fulle sorrowfulle. also he was ascerteyned that þe 16}
qñene his moder was alyue, and his vnkle, the Duc of Burgoigne
was Regent of ffrance; with whom he thought to speke vñknowen /
and so rode he forth to Parys, with a visour bifore his face, and
acquainted him with a seruaunt of his vnkells / and besought him 20
to fynde the meane that he myght speke with him vnsayne / This
seruaunt came vnto the Regent, and seide vnto him / "my Lord,
here is a yong man in this towne that wiſt not shewe his visage,
whiche hath desired me that he might speke with you secretly" / 24
The Regent, vpon thies wordes, thought moche what it might be,
and asked, of what fassion he was / "fforsothe," seid [the] seruaunt /
"the moost goodly persone that euir y sawe" / "I shall telle the
what thou shalt do," said the Regent, "Soone in the evenyng, brynge 28
lym in-to myn Inner chambre, & there bere him company til y
may be at leyser to speke with him" / Like as he commaundid, was
it done. and at the houre apointed, this yong man was brought yn /
[¶ lf. 100, bk.] and the ¹chambre avoided / and whan the Regent knewe therof / he 32
made his seruaunt to take a light / and nomoo went in with him /

^{and, un-}
^{known at}
^{first, has an}
^{interview}
^{with his Un-}
^{cle, the Duke}
^{of Burgundy.}
And assone as Le Surnome sawe him, he did him reuerence, kepyng
alway stille the visour bifore his face / and whan he came nere
him / he tolde him the cause of his comynge was to put him in 36
knowlage that "the kynges sone of fraunce, that departed out of
the londe suche a tyme, was not ded, but in good helth / and
that he trusted for trouthe he shold withyn short tyme here
tidynges of him / and to disclose the trouthe vnto him, he came 40

him-self from the place that he was yn." whan the Regent herde thies tidynges, he shewde not the high chere of a prince, but streyned le Surnome in his Armes, and saide / "A, my frende! ye haue
 4 brought me grete ioie! sith the sorowfull losse, herd y neuir so joifulle tidynges, whichie is more than iiiij. yere passed" / and with thies wordes, the teeres ranne from his yen / bothe for ioie and pite.
 and saide, "my frende, if it please you, I pray you telle me the
 8 trouthe, hou it is with him?" Le Surnome hadde pite of his vnkelt,
 and coude no lenger kepe his visage couerd, but toke his visour
 away / and whan the Regent had auised him, and remembred the
 age of his Nevewe, and the fetures of his face / and than knewe

Prince Philip takes off his visor.

12 verrily that it was he / And for the ioie therof, so soleinly he vn-closed his hert, that he was almoost in a swoone / so that he might
 not speke / and whan his hert came to him agen / he kneled downe

• bifore him, and toke him in his armes and kissed him, so that he
 16 wette aft the visage of his nevewe with teeres that felle fro his yen,

His Uncle, the Duke of Burgundy, kisses him and weeps for joy.

and sith saide vnto hym, "allas, my lorde, and alle my ioie! where
 hane ye be so longe? / allas, myn owne lord! your sorowfull fadir
 had neuir ioie sith your departyng / grete synne hane ye for his

20 dethe / The sorowes of this Reaume that hath ben for you, ben ouir
 moche to reherce / But now shalle alle tho sorowes be chaunged into
 Ioy. Allas! how shalt my lady your modir knowe of this ioifull
 recouere? / I trowe, whan she shalle first knowe it / the chaunge

24 shalbe so sodeyn that hir hert shalt breke for ioy / My lord, y
 wote not what y shall say / or how y shall auise you of your demean-
 yng / Wille ye that y calle yn the company that is yonder in my

chambre, whiche, whan they se you, shalle haue more ioy / than alle
 28 the remenant of your Reaume haue had sith your departyng." [leaf 101]

"ffaire vngle," saide Le Surnome, "I shalle telle you alle my demean-
 yng sith my departir hens / and whan ye haue herd my tale / ye
 shalle avise me as ye thinke best / and by your counselle wiH I do" /

32 After thies wordes, began he to telle of his departyng / and of his
 comyng in-to the Reaume of Sizile, and lefte no thing vntolde, sauf
 only that he had done with his owne handes / and saide / "myn
 vngle, my departyng oute of this Reaume was for this cause / my

36 lord my ffalir, (whoos soule god pardone!) wold do noon helpe nor
 socours to the Reaume of Sizile, whiche was in way to be lost,
 which caused me to departe so allone" / and tolde his vngle so forth,

by & by, forgate not specially the ij. seruauntes that were with his
 40 maister, to reherce the worthynesse of them / and howe the warres

He tells his Uncle all his adventures.

were ended a grete parte by their prowesse / and howe the trewes holdith yit for ij. yere / and half / and howe the kynge of Sizile, for his noblesse, was chosen to be Emperour / and how he hath the fairest lady of the world to his doughtir / and the best / and of the 4 age of xvij. or xxth yeres / “and the Emperours desire is, abone alle thinges, that she be accompayned with a noble man / wherfore, to be the more certayne, he hath made erie a tourney, whiche shalbe kepte in may next comyng / and but yif one man may venquyssh the 8 Tournay iij. dayes / the Emperour shalbe at his liberte to chose the best of them, and ther may noon tourney, but if he be borne of roialle lyne, knownen & named / and forasmuche as y haue long tyme serued there vñknownen, I haue the more desire to be ther at that 12 day / ffor y shalb put me in as grete deuoir and Payne as y may endure with lif / but I come to that wele / ffor it is she that hath my hert assured in hir seruice / and long hath ben / for she is incomparable ; Wherfore I haue affirmed my self to be there / And 16 nowe, sith y vndirstond the dethe of my lord my fadir, ye shalle here myn auise. The terme is short, and but litille vnto that day / wherfore me thinkith best to be vñknownen / ye are your self yit of resonable age / and haue neither wif nor childe / and men holde 20 you heyre of this Reaume / wherfore I wolde, if it pleased you, to do so moche for me as to be at this Tournay / and to make alle folkes of this Reaume to beleue / that ye entende to haue this faire lady to your wif / if your fortune be suche / and, y pray you, were suche 24 denises as y shalb desire you ; ¹and in the meane while, y shalb kepe me in suche places as ye thinke best y may be vñknownen ; and ye shalle go in suche astate as bilongeth vnto a kyng ; and my harneys and abylementes for my body shalbe trussid forth as yours / And 28 the dayes of the tourney / y shal arme me in your pavilione / and ye shalle put a visour ouir your face, and serue me at the tourney. and at the ende therof, If I do any thing wele, alle be tymes y shalb make me to be knownen, whiche shalbe the grettir ioie to suche as 32 wold y wele did / and y trust there be none oþir there that knowe me, but wold be glad to wite me do wele” / The duc of Burgoigne, heryng alle his tale, herkened him fulle gladly, remembryng wele hou he had herde that by iij. yong men, straungers, the Reaume of Sizile 36 was gretly holpen / wherfore he thought wele, by the tale of his Nevewe, that he shold be one, wherof he was right ioyfull / and the bettir willed to go. hou be it, he thought alle folkes wold iuge his age was nothing accordyng to haue that fair lady / wherfore he 40

*and about
Princess Io-
lante,*

*and his love
for her.*

*Prince Philip
asks his Uncle
to go to the
Tourney,
as if for Io-
lante,*

[¶ lf. 101, bk.]

*and to wear
armour like
his.*

*The Duke
consents.*

praidis his Nevewe to take thaduise of vj. or viij. moo of his preuy counselle, whiche shold be nedefulle, aswele for the purveaunce of their going forth, as for any othir cause. wherto Le Surnome was
4 agreeable / and at night wold haue departed / but his vnkle wold in no wise lete him / but made the chambre to be avoided ; & þat Prince Philip
and his Uncle
sleep together. nyght lay ther to-gedir / and the Regent slepte not moche, he was so ioyfulle / he thought it shold be but a dreme / it was so Newe
8 vnto him, that he coude not wele bileyne that he sawe & herd / He rose be tymes in the mornynge / and so did the kynge / and than was called yn to the chambre alle suche as the Regent wolde name. and there was discouerd vnto them alle the matier vpone grete othes
12 & charge. there may noman thinke of more ioy than was at that tyme in that chambre. This ioy was bydewed with teeres of pite / And after, whan they vndirstode the pleasir of their yong kynge, they were alle concluded to his avise & pleasir, and made the due of
16 Burgoigne to be published thorugh the Reaume, that his entent was The Duke of
Burgundy
proclaims
that he will
go to the
Tourney, for
a wife. to go to this tourney / in asmoche he had neither wif ne childe, nor coude here no tidynges of the kynges sone / wherby the Reaume might falle in-to othir lynage, wherof many inconueniences might
20 growe / wherfore he purposed, in eschuyng of suche Inconuenience, to dispose him to be maryed. ¹Many men saide that he did wele ; [leaf 102] and som saide " nay / for he might haue ben maried to lesse charge of his Reaume & lesse iubardie of himself : what nedeth him, of his
24 age, to put him in a tourney ? The kynge of Ingland had ij. faire ladies to his daughters ; and withouten any iubardy he might chose whiche of them that pleased him " / suche argumentes were amonges the people / Nathelos, the Duc of Burgoigne toke litelle hede to suche
28 wordes / but put him in deuoir and diligence, that alle thinge was redy longe bifore the day / The yong kynge made to ordyne richesses y-nough / so that he might kepe estate incomparable there to any othir / for he trusted his fortune shold be to haue that /
32 that alle other shold faile of / ffor his hert was highly and surely set, &c. Now shalle we leve of him a while / and speke of Ector, how he did aftir his departyng from his ij. ffelawes. [Illumination.]

36 **H**E rode fulle pensif and soroufulle yn his hert, for their depart- Humphrey,
Prince of
England, yng / Also fel in remembraunce of his owne departyng out of his emtre, & how many noble mennes sones had be lost for his cause / wherfore he thought / the ffadirs wold dedly hate hym, whiche brought him in grete drede and annoye / and con- resolves to
keep un-
known till cluded in him-self that he wold not be knownen til he vndirstode

he can judge
of his wel-
come home.

He consults
a Sicilian
friend,

[l. 102, bk.]

who says
'Wait till
you get to
England, to
hear tidings.'

They reach
England,

and are told
of the King's
mortal ill-
ness.

The Realm is
in trouble,

how they take his departyng / and how they wold be content with his comyng / So fortuned, that he had a gentilman of Sizile in his company / whiche was right wise, as he had founde in his right goode counselle in diuerse thinges bifore / wherfore he thought to 4 discouere vnto him alle his matiers / and tolde him what he was, and how he was departed oute of his Reaume, & xiiij. ¹ of the grettist Lordes sones of the Reaume with him / "wherfore," saide Ector, "y am gretly in drede of the hate of their ffadirs / But what 8 so euir befall me, I most nedes be knownen there." The gentilman of Sizile was gretly abasshed whan he vndirstode his maister / he was also right glad to knowe his maister of so noble birth / sayng vnto him / "my lord, y thanke god that he hath youen me grace 12 to be nowe in *your* seruice, & .I. shalt say you what y thinke best / that ye conelude you in no thinge til ye be entred in to the Reaume of Inglonde. By than shal ye here suche tidynges, as ye shalle more surely take youre auise vpone / and, in the meane while, pluk vp ¹⁶ your herte, and take no thought; ffor y trust, at *your* comyng, the kyng and alle the Reaume shalle be so reioysed / that they shalle sette litil by the losse of the Remenaunt that were in youre company / for perauenture the kyng and the lordes shalle Iuge that they were 20 the cause and meovers of *your* going" / "The thing," saide Ector, "that y haue moost yn drede, ys, lest that the kynge haue taken suche displeasir with my departyng / that he wol not se me nowe / whan y come / nor no thinge departe with me, to appoint my self ²⁴ like his honour, to be at yondir Tournay / whiche is the place of the worlde that y desire moost to be at" / "fforsythe," saide the gentilman, "ye haue right": / And with suche talkynge passed they forth the wey, til they came in-to the Reaume of Ingland; and the 28 first Towne they came to / they mette with a grete procession / euery man goyng barfoot in their prayers, with grete deuocione, as it seemed / Ector asked the cause of this procession / and they saide for the kynge, that was so sore seke, that noman coude promyse ³² him liff / wherfore there was made generall procession thoroughout the Reaume / for of his dethe, the Reaume shold haue to grete a losse / seyng he had noon yssue a lyue but ij. doughters / wherby the Reaume shold stande in grete trouble / and likly to falle in the ³⁶ handes of straungers / whiche was grete pite / ffor the kynge had a sone, as goodly a prince toward, as any was o where / and right gretly biloued / & right wele coude deserue it, as any man a lyue of his youthe, and a iiij. yere passed he departed from hens / and ⁴⁰

many a Grete Princes sone of this Reaume with him / and neuir sith
was ¹herd no tidinges of them / wherfore the Reaume is in grete
trouble / and neuir sith had ioie / and many suche processions haue
as its Prince
has not been
heard of for
4 years.
[1 leaf 103]

4 ben made sith that tyme for him / and the kyng himself had neuir
good day sith" / Ector askid his hoste, of what age he supposed the
kynges sone was. "Be my faith, sir," saide he, "I suppose of
youre age, if he be a lyue; me thinkith y coude not bettir liken
8 hym, bothe in length and resemblaunce" / "how trowe ye," saide
Ector, "wold not the kyng be glad, and the Reaume, of his comyng
agein, if he were a lyue?" / "yis, y dare sey," saide his hoste. "The
hole Reaume wold make a fyne of half they are worth, to haue him
12 again." Thies wordes pleased Ector moche, and caused him to ride
the remenaunt of his iournay more ioyfully than he did afore / and
spedde him so, that withyn litil while he came to london / & loggid
hym yn an Inne / his visour alway bifore his face / and enquired
16 tidynges of the kyng: it was saide he was so seke that noman
coude promyse him liff / than sent he his man in-to the Towne to
enquero ferther / and made him to go vnto one of the lordes, that
had lost one of his sones with hym, & telle hym that "he was of the
20 Reaume of Sizile / and that he had late spoken with folkes that
had seen the kynge of Inglandes sone a lyue / and hole, but he is
yit prisoner" / This gentilman went forth, and did his message to
the Erle of Warrewik / and the Erle askid hym / "my ffrende, say
24 ye trouthe? may any man speke with him that hath tolde you
this?" / "fforsothe," saide the gentilman, "y trowe y wote where he
is / and I am sure he wolt iubarde his hede of that y haue saide" /
"If this be trewe," saide therle, "no fors of alle the remenaunt of
28 his company / for they were cause of his goyng" / than toke he
him by the hande, and brought him in-to a chambre nye to the
kynge / & made him tary there; and went him self in-to the kynges
chambre, and tolde the kyng hou he had founde a gentilman of
32 Sizile; and tolde him what tidinges he had brought. The kyng
made calle him yn / and herde his tale to an ende / and than he
helde vp his handes to god, sayng / "A, my blissed creatour! y
haue alway requyred thy grace, that y might se him er y dide / and
36 right so, y biseche the that y may." whan the gentilman sawe the
kyng so desirous for to se him / he toke the Erle a-part, and saide
vnto him / "sir, y shal tel you tidynges that yit shalle please you
bettir / ²sir, he is in good Helthe, for y sawe him but late, and
40 spake with him, and I am his man / and he sent me hider to
England
would give
half its wealth
to have its
Prince again.
Prince Hum-
phrey sends
news of him-
self to the
Earl of War-
wick,
who tells it
to the sick
King.
He prays that
he may see
his Son again
before he
dies.
[2 lf. 103, bk.]

knowe what men saide of him / and he hath grete desire to come
 hider agein / but he knoweth not wethir his ffelawes be dede or
 a lyue / wherfore he is in grete drede of the kynges displeasir / and
 of the evil wi^H of you, and of othir grete Lordes of this lande / 4
 whoos childre went with hym" / And whan the Erl herd this, he
 was so glad, he coude not sey a worde to the gentilman, but went
 streight to the kyng / and tolde it hym, wheroft the kyng was
 ioyfu^H as he might be, sayng vnto hym, "ffaire Cosyn, y pray you 8
 make suche purveaunce as ye thinke may be moost for his honour;
 and dispose your-self with suche company as ye thinke best to go
 for him, in what Reaume so euir he be, and brynge him vnto me
 assone as euir ye may" / Than departed therle vnto his loggyng / 12
 & this gentilman with him / and whan they were there, the gentil-
 man seid vnto him / "sir, ye nede make no grete purveaunce / for ye
 haue not right ferre to go / ye shalle nede to sadelle no hors therfore,
 but it please you, for y can bringe you thider on foote with youre 16
 ease / the fewer that come with you, y suppose, the gladder woll he
 be" / Therle herd that, and taried not, but toke this gentilman by
 the arme / and went forth, without other eompany, streight to his
 loggyng / and whan he came in-to the chambre where Ector was / 20
 he knewe him anone / and knelede downe, and toke him in his
 armes without sayng any worde / and whan he might speke, he
 saide / "A, sir! blessed be the houre of youre comyng now in-to
 this Reaume" / then he asked him hou it was with him, and of his 24
 auentures that felle him sith his departyng. Ector was in suche
 drede, that he durst say no thyng as than, sauf only that he saide,
 "I shall with right good will telle you at leyser of alle my fortunes /
 but first, y pray you, telle me som of your tidynges." Therle tolde 28
 him suche as he knewe, and what sorowe the kyng had, and alle the
 Reaume, for his departyng / seyng / "thanked be god! now, by your
 comyng, this Reaume shalbe revived in gladnesse" / thus passed
 forth the tyme; til at the last, therle saide, "sir, and it please you, 32
 y shal go to the kyng / whiche shalbe as ioyfu^H as any man erthly,
 whan he knowith how it is with you; and sone y sha^Ht brynge you
 worde of a^H his pleasir, hou he wo^Ht haue you demeaned / and toke
 his leue & departed." The gen^ltilman of Sizile brought therle agein 36
 to his Loggynge / & went agein to his maister / and tolde him alle
 hou he had don that day, and howe he had ben with the kyng /
 and what he saide; wheroft he was right iofu^H. On the tothir
 side, whan therle of Warrewik came to his loggyng / he sent for the 40

The King
 bids Lord
 Warwick
 fetch Prince
 Humphrey
 to him.

Lord War-
 wick goes to
 Humphrey,

and blesses
 the hour of
 his return.

Fynges counselle, to whom he shewed, without hidyng of anythyng, the maner of comyng of their yong prince, to thentent that thei might take auise how they shold telle it to the kynge / and so they

He then sends
for the King's
Council, and
tells them the
good news.

4 concluded alle togeder to go to the kynge, and telle it him / thus departed they to the kynge as ioyfull as they coude / and whan they came to him, they tolde him how his sone was in the Towne, in grete drede / for that / that he wist for trouthe, he had deserued 8 his grete displeasir. whan the kynge herd this, he was so ioyfull that he coude not speke a worde / and whan he might speke, he saide, "assone as it is possible, I pray you bryng him to me, for y fele that deth approchet fast / whiche y shalt resceyne more ioy- 12 fully for alle your sake / whiche haue this daie recouered an heire male to gouerne you aftir my deth; I pray god graunte him wele to do." Than departed alle the lordes, with suche company, that alle the stretes were fulle of men / and whan they came nere at Ectours 16 loggyng / his hoste aspied so moche people comyng toward his hous, and had grete drede, and came to Ector in grete haste, sayng, "sir, yf ye haue done any offence to the kynge or to his lawes 20 suppose to take you" / Ector, hering thies wordes, wist not wele what to say or to thinke, but abode stille, til the lordes came vp into his chambre, whiche did him suche reuerences as longed to his estate / and whan he sawe them, he knewe the moost part of them, 24 and welcomed them right curteisly. There was that tyme more ioy in that chambre than y can reherce to you / than tolde they Ector the sekenesse of his ffadir / and how he sent for him to come hastily to him, for he desired moche to se him bifore his deth. 28 Of thies tidynges was Ector right soroufult, and departed out of his loggyng, and toke one of the lordes by the arme / and went forth toward the kyng. The prease was so grete, that vnnethe he might passe, for every man desired to se hym / and whan ¹he came to the [1 lf. 101, lk.] 32 Court, he went streight in-to the Kynges chambre, & kneled downe by the beddes side / & whan he sawe the grete payne and sekenesse he was yn / he was in suche sorowe that he coude not speke a worde a grete while / And on the tothir side, the kyng was so glad that he 36 coude not speke / At the last, whan the yong prince might speke, he saide, "My lord, y biseche you, þat of youre grace it please you to pardon me the displeasir that y haue done you; for y haue to gretly offendid you, whiche me sore repenteth / I am redy to obey 40 what punisshment it wolt please you to put me to" / The kyng

who prays
them to bring
his Son to
him at once.

They go to
Prince Hum-
phrey,

enters his
Father's
room, kneels
by his bed,

and asks his
forgiveness.

The King
grants it.

Prince Hum-
phrey tells his
sick Father
all his ad-
ventures,

and about
his 2 fellow-
Princes,

[leaf 105]
and the com-
ing Tourney
for Princess
Iolante.

Humphrey
begs forgive-
ness of the
Nobles whose
sons he took
with him.

toke his sone by the hande, saynge, “ my sone, y pray god forgiſ it the; and for my part, y forgiſ the with alle my hert / and thanke god / that hath youen me grace, bifore my dethe, to recouere the / ye ſe thiſe noble men of whom ye had the children with you, 4 whiche yit be not retourned agein, as y vndirſtande / I committe them vnto you / and ſo do y alle theſtates of my Reaume. and, how be it, y am feble, and not like to lyue, yet haue I. grete deſire to knowe of your auentures ſith your departyng ” / Than Ector tolde 8 him of his departyng, not chargyng any oþer ther-with but himſelf / than tolde hou he and his company were taken / and hou forthwith they were departed eche from oþer / ſauē it fortuned a child of his chambre to be lefte with hym, whiche lyued but a 12 while aftir / and than tolde he the maner of his Delyuerance / whiche was caused by a yong cristen esquier, the moost goodly man, and the best assured, and the moost noble man of his handes, that euir y knewe or herd telle of / and by his prowesse he toke 16 the kynge of Perce, the Soudans Brother, by whom he was delyuered / and tolde the maner hou, as is bifore reherced / and hou that, aftir his deliueraunce, he came in-to the Reaume of Sizile / and there, was in the company of two the worshipfulle men of the 20 worlde; of their degré / of the whiche, one was the ſame gentilman by whoos meanes y was deliuered; and a-nothir one that was escaped of the armee of Scottes, whiche is an yngoodly man, and a worthy / ffor thiſe ij. men haue doon more hurt to the Turkes, than alle the 24 Reaume of Sizile / And aftir, he tolde the deſtrucción of the Turke, and hou the kyng of Sizile was chosen Emperour, and what terme of trewes was taken bytwene themperour and the yonge Turke / and than he forgate not ¹to telle of the Tournay that was cried for 28 the Emperours doughtir, and tolde the grete beaunte and bounte ſhe was of / and noon auenture he vntolde, ſauf his oune prowesse / and of his ij. ffelawes reherced he ſo moche worship / that euer man meruailed, that herd it / and whan he had ended his tale / he 32 behelde the grete princes and lordes ther / of whom he had away the ſones of / and than went he vnto them & ſeid / “ My Frendes & Cousins, y crie you mercy ! for by me are ye diſferred from your children ; for y wolt not, nor can, denye it, but that oure departyng 36 came of me, & not of them / and y trust verly in god that they be alyue / and if they ſo be, y promyſe you without faile, their Raunsone ſhalbe no charge to none of you / and y trust to haue ſuche acqueyntaunce ther, to haue them delyuerd without fyne or 40

Raunsom, if they lyue" / whom they forgaff / with right good wille / They grant
sayng / that nowe god had sent them hym, it was but litil change of
the remenaunt." Than departed he and they alle from the kyng /
4 and within litil while aftir, he decessed, and yeldid his soule to god / The King of
ffor his dethe, was alle the Reaume heuy and right sory ; but they
were gretly recomforted by the comyng of the yonge prince / and
wele they might be / for in his tyme he gouerned the Reaume fulle
8 wele & rightwisly. The obsequeyes for the kynge were done as and is buried.
belonged to his estate. And after, his sone was crowned, as of dewte Prince Hum-
he aught / and aftir his coronacion, he sent for his counselle / and phrey is
shewed them what wille he hadde to go in-to the Reaume of Sizile /
12 to put him in deuoir to haue this faire lady, trustyng to acomplissish
wele his desire, for he was sure that his ij. felawes might not be
ther-at / In asmoche as noon might tourney there, but he were
descended of roialle blode right nygh ; and that were not they /
16 whiche were the men of the word that he moost dred at that
point / if they might haue ben there / Thise lordes, whan they
vndirstode his pleasir, contraried him in no-thinge, but thought it
was right wele to do, though it were only but for to lete him to be
20 knownen in the Reaume of Sizile, where he had ben so long bi-fore /
when they were thus concluded, he purueide for his estate / and his and makes
abilementes to be made aswele and as richely as was possible for ready for the
him / and in this meane while, the gentilman of Sizile that was Iolante Tour-
24 comen with him, reherced contynuelly the vertues and the grete
worthynesse that was in his maister / and seide that he might not [i. f. 105, bk.]
faile to haue the Emperours doughtir / seyng / the tothir ij. of whom
ye haue herd, might not be there-at / and in esspeciall one that was
28 called Le Surnome, whiche was nounpareilt of the world / The
kynges purveaunce was alle redy, and abode no-thing but the tyme
of his departyng / Now is it tyme that we retourne to speke of
Athis. [Illumination: a King receives Messengers: a Cavalcade rides forth.]

32 **T**is no doute he was right heuy whan he was allone, departed Prince David
from his company, whom he loued so moche / but his of Scotland
thought was not like the tothir two, for he was not departed
against the pleasir of his fadir / but by his licence & commaunde-
36 ment; wherfore he was assured to be right welcome / Thus rode he
forth more ioyfully, and nought diseouerd to noon of his men, of
his estate, nor what he was. and whan he came in-to Scotland / reaches his
he askid tidynges of the kynge and of his children / and where he
40 shold fynde the kynge / men tolde him where the kynge was, and native land,

and hears
of his own
death.

Prince David
rides to where
his Father is.

alle his children in good helthe / sauf only for the deth of his eldest sone, that died in the cristen armee, that went in-to the Reaume of Sizile / Than rode he forth til he came to the Towne where the kynge was, & loggid him yn an Inne, vnknownen what 4 he was, of any body / than enquired he what folkes there where aboute the kynge of his counselle / Than sent he for two or thre of them / and whan they came to his loggyng, and knewe him / they had as grete ioye as coude be thought / And than said he to them / 8 “ My frendes, the cause that y sent for you, is this / I drede the grete ioie that the kynge shal haue, if he here sodeinly of my comyng / shold do him to grete an hurt / wherfore me thinketh

[1 leaf 106]

best that it be tolde him at ¹diuerse tymes and by leyser / ffirst, to 12 telle hym that y am a lyve / and in prisone / and aftir to telle him that y am escaped, and than to telle him that y am comen” / and as it was deuised, it was done. And by processe of tyme the kyng had knowlage of the comyng of his sone, wherof he was as ioyfull 16 as he might be / for he neuir loket to haue seen him a-lyue / than he sent his ij. brethern for him / and alle the lordes, knighthes, and

The King
sends his 2
other sons for
their brother,

Squiers of the Court / grete was the ioy amonges them whan they were mette / so that no sorowe was thought on. They that were 20 comen out of Sizile with him, were sore abasshed whanne they knewe their maister was the kynges sone / hou-be-it they thought alwey he was of som noble blode, he was so fulf of all goodly maners / Athis, accompanied with his two brethern, and grete 24 nombre of princes and lordes, departed from his loggyng, and went to the kynge / whom he founde in a grete halle: and whan he sawe him he kneled doun; and assone as the kynge sawe him, he ranne to hym a grete paas, and toke him in his armes without speche; & 28 whan he might speke, he welcomed him in his best maner, and

and when
David comes,
the King em-
braces him,

and bids him
tell his ad-
ventures.

This David
does.

that he sholde telle it openly / he began his tale thus / “ My lord, here be many yn your presence that can telle you of the grete fortune that befell at the port where 32 we were / and of my self y shal telle you / for y wote not what befelle of the remenaunt. The vessell where y was, smot on land bifore the Turkes baner; and alle that were theryn were drowned, sauff vj., wherof y was one / and the Erle Douglas an othir / & 36 othir iiiij. that y remembre not / and we purposed verily to haue yolden vs to the Turke / but he charged his men to sle vs / and there was the Erle Douglas slayne at my feet / and y withdrew me / and set my bak to a Roche / and the Turkes sone espied me / 40

and hadde pite on me, and commaunded alle men to come fro me,
and toke me with his owne handes, and promysed to sauе my lif /
wheroft the Turke was not pleased / and wold haue sleyne me in his
4 handes / but he defendid me right valiauntly / and for cause he was
a kynges sone / and y was his first prisoner, he delyuerd me frely /
and brought me surely in-to a cristen place, whiche was beseged
within two daies aftir / and the Captayne of the place was right a

8 a noble man & a knyght / and had in his company a man that [1 ff. 106, b.^{k.}] Prince David tells his Father about Prince Philip of France
hight Le Surnome, whiche was the floure and surmountour of alle
othir: with hym haue y bene alle the while sith the tyme of my takyng / and he deliuuerd out of the Turkes handes a yong man

12 that was named Ector, whiche dayly did so wele, that within litil and Prince Humphrey of England,
while his renome was fer knownen. This ij. and I had but one purse & one wille; for debate was neuir amonges vs." Than tolde

he hou, by the worthynesse of his ij. ffelawes, the Reaume of Sizile

16 was recouerd; & told of the batailes & grete aventurest that were duryng the werres / than tolde he of the long trewes that was taken / & forgate not to telle of the Tournay that shold be, & for whoos sake; & hou noon might tournay there, but if he were of

20 blode roialle / whan the kynge hadde herde aft his tale, he was right and about the Iolante
wele content therwith / and toke him by the hande, & drewe him apart with v. or vj. othir that he called to him, & askid his sone, by his feith, if he had not grete desire to be at this Tournay; & he

24 saide, "yis, if it pleased him." & besought him at his first comyng to which he wants to go.
to graunt him that request / "forsothe," seide the kyng / "& ye shalle go as wele acompanyed & appointed as y can make you, what so euir it cost me" / Than made the kynge grete purveaunce for his His Father makes pre-
28 goyng forth / and appointed the moost part of his noble men, & forations for him,

lusty knyghtes of his Reaume, to accompany him. In this besy tyme, such sekenesse toke the kynge, that he died. his sone was and dies.

right sorowfult, as of reason he aught / but he might not be

32 recouerd / The tyme passed, & his sorowe wele appeased / the yonge David is
kyng was crowned / & than ordeyned he his abilementes moche of Scotland,

more riche than bifore. And purposed him to departe, so that he might be ther .x. or xij. daies before the Tournay / trustyng to come

36 to this high wele, and mariage of this faire lady / and thought, whan he came there, to enquire alle aboute aftir his two felawes / and to kepe them in his company. [Illumination: Meeting of Emperor and King, &c.]

40 **F**or to abregge my matier, the tyme came that it semed the kyng of Scottes ceason to departe; and he departed out of THREE KINGS' SONS.

[1 leaf 107] his contre in grete ¹estate, alle his folkes in a lyuere / and so many lordes & knyghtes with him, that it was meruaile to se ; he had to the nombre of a M^t horses with him, or moo / he sent his her-begeours in-to Sizile before, to take vp his quarter for his loggyng / 4 more than a moneth bifore his comyng / and men meruailed moche that he came with so moche people / and delyuerd him suche log-
 King David is ging / as was accordyng to the nombre / whan tyme came, the kynge of Scottes approched, and lay but viij. myle from the Emperour. 8 and whan themperour hadde dyned, he toke his hors, with grete and noble company of princes and lordes, for alle the floure of Sizile was ther / thus departed he oute of the Towne, & mette the kynge of Scottes more then a myle thens / and whan he sawe the kynge of 12 Scottes, he thought it shold be Athis / and asked "where was the kynge" / and whan he knewe for trouthe that it was he / he toke hym in his armes, and seide / "A, sir ! ye haue done grete wrong, that thus longe ye haue hidde you from me ; for, and y had knownen 16 you to my power, y wold haue honoured you accordyng to your estate / y coude neuir haue thought, that the sone of so mighti a kynge, shold haue ben seruaunt to my Senesshalle" / fferaunt, whan he knewe Athis, that so long had ben in his seruice / and 20 sawe him nowe a kynge, humbly came to salewe him / seyng / "sir, y aught gretly to thanke god that hath youen me suche gracie, to haue the seruice of a kynge / hou be it / ye aught not to blame me, though y haue not honoured you as me aught / for fulle gladly 24 y wold, if y hadde knownen you" / Thus rode forth the knightes of Sizile and they of Scotland ; and ther was not forgoten amonges them the grete worthynesse of the kynge of Scottes, and how valiauntly he acquyte him at the takyng of the yonge Turke, & in 28 what maner he had deliuerd hym / Anone the tidynges came vnto the Emperesse, and to his doughtir, that the kynge of Scottes, that was nowe come, was Athis / that so long had ben in seruice there, whiche was to them grete meruaile / anone themperour and the 32 kynge approched the palacie / But themperour in no wise wold lete him alight there / but brought him to his owne loggyng / and assone as he was a-light there / he chaunged him / and came in to themperesse, that abode him in the halle, and hir fair doughtir, with 36 grete company of ladies & gentil²wommen / & lordes, knightes, & squyers / and whan He came in-to the halle, the Emperesse wel-comed him ioyfully / seyng vnto him / that "he was moche to blame to hide him thus long fro them / for they hal done him moche 40

met by the Emperor and the Nobles of Sicily,

is reproach for so long hiding his name,

*and is taken to his lodgings.
He goes to the Palace,*

[2 lf. 107, bk.] and is wel-comed by the Empress,

wrong / & alle by his owne cause" / he excused him, seyng, "that he had made his anowe to be vnknownen duryng the werres, sith god had youen him that grace to escape with his lif so wele as he did" / 4 than went he to this faire lady, the Emperours doughtir, & talkid with her, seyng / he shold put him in deuoir more to deserue her grace than he had done, if god wold sende him that grace & fortune / This faire lady answerd nothyng / but was alle abasshed, for there 8 was no man in the world she was so leef to haue, as one of the iij. seruauntes. But ouir alle othir, she loued best Le Surnome, if he were of birthe accordlyng vnto hirs / The kynge of Scottes excused him that tyme for sopyng with themperour / and desired his maister, King David asks Ferant and other Sicilian nobles to sup with him,

12 fferaunt, & many othir noble men of Sizile, to suppe with him at his loggyng / thus went they forth with him / Alle they of the Towne that sawe Athis in his estate, preised god, wisshing amonges them that his ij. felawes were of as noble birth and grete power as he 16 was. Aftir soper, the kyng of Scottes went agen to the ladies / whiche he founde redy to the daunces / the daunces and the sportes were there right grete / and whanne tyme was, spices & wyne were sette / and than went alle folkes to rest / and thus contynued the 20 tyme in dispordes & pleasir, and the ffeste kepte in grete estate & nobley til aftir the mariage; and euyer man lyued yn hope and desire to haue this faire lady. ¶ Now shalle we leve a while, & speke of Orkais, the yong Turke. [Illumination: Emperor and Sultan meet.]

24 **V**E haue wele herde here before, how he was determyned to be Sultan Orcays at this Tournay / and whan he sawe his tyme coueneble, he departed, so richely arayed and so wele accompanied, ¹that [leaf 108] euyer man thought that he was right wele appointed accordyng to 28 his highe estate / and litil while he spedde him so wele, he came in- lands in to the Reaume of Sizile / his herbegeours were afore, and hadde Sicily, taken vp his loggyng / whan the Emperour knewe of his comyng / he had grete meraiale / and thought werrily he shold not tournay 32 without he were first cristened; and so he supposed the Turke entendid to be / Than went he and the kynge of Scottes to mette and is wel- comd by the with him / and mette him almost at the Towne. There was Prince David, amonges them grete ioye / and eche did othir grete honour. and 36 when the Turke behelde the kynge of Scottes, he knew certainly it was the same that he had taken prisoner to-fore; and whan he remembred his worthynesse, he loste anone moche of his hope of the Tournay / wisshing that he hadle slayne hym whan he toke 40 him prisoner / but in asmoche as it was to late / he salewed the

The Sultan
and King
David talk
over their
freeing one
another.

They go to
see the
Ladies.

Orcays tells
the Emperor
that if he
can have
Iolante, he'll
turn Chris-
tian.

[1 ff. 108, bk.]
The Emperor
says he can't
stop the
Tourney for
her.

King Hum-
phrey of
England

kyng, saynge vnto him / "fforsothe, sir, whan y deliuered you, y wende fulle litil to haue hadde in myn handes the chief of the cristen armee" / "By my feith, sir," seide the kynge of Scottes, "y holde my lif of you" / Than seide the Turke, "y deliuered you / 4 not knowyng what ye were / and ye deliuered me, knowyng for certainte that y was the Turkes sone / by this, was ther gretter bounte yn you than in me; and y am more bounden to you than ye to me" / "trewly," seide the kynge of Scottes, "sauf your grace / 8 ffor y did nought for you, but that y was bounden bifore for to do / and moche more, and y coude / and ye did for me without desert of me or any othir, for my sake" / In suche communicacion rode they vnto the Towne / and the Emperour hadde grete pleasir to here 12 them / Aftir soper, the Turke and the kynge of Scottes came to se the Ladies / and so did alle othir straungers, wherof there were so many, that euery man was ameruailed / for there was no cristen nacion almoost, but there were som folkes therof / The ladies and gentil- 16 women made grete chere to the Turke / The Turke made it secretly be broken to the Emperour, that if he wolde breke of this Tournay / and gif hym his doughtir in mariage / he wolde become cristen for hir sake / but his entente was, not to be cristen vpon none 20 certaynte / and if themperour had knownen bifore his desire, with right good wille he wold haue agreed thereto / for by that meanes his Reaume, for alwey sholde haue bene in peas / neuirtheles, he praied ¹him now to remembre that the fesst of the Tournay was alle 24 redy / wherfore it was now to late to breke it / ffor the loggyng was taken vp by the herbeiuours for x. kynges and C.C. princes, and grete lordes of blode Roialle, wherfore he neither might, nor wolde, abuse so many grete princes & lordes / for he coude not do it 28 without grete maugre and a shame / But, and he hadde shewed him this whan he was prisoner, The mperour wold haue had grete ioie therof / whan the Turke herd this answere, he thought wele the mperour saide trouthe / and content him with the answere, 32 tha[n]kyng moche the mperour; and so taried ther stille, abidyng the feste / and euery day the kynge of Scottes and he, with many othir grete princes, came to disporte them with the ladies & gentil- women / Now leue we them, & retourne to the kynge of Englond.² 36

THe kynge of Englond had wele herde in what aray & grete estate the kynge of Scottes was departed to this Tournay; wherfore he accompanied him self the bettir / and appointed

² Illumination : Meeting of the Emperor and the King of England, on horseback.

him self aswele as he coude, like as ye haue herde bifore / and whan reaches
he thought hys tyme best, departed, & wittin litil while came in-to
the Reaume of Sizile / and whan themperour was assertayned he
4 was nere / he toke his hors / and in his company, the Turke & the King Hum-
kynge of Scottes, and many othir grete princes and Lordes / and phrey is met
whan they metto with the kynge of England / and was assertayned by the Em-
it was Ector, The Emperour was neuir so ameruailed / The Turke & peror, King
8 the kynge of Scottes were sore abasshed / Natholes, eche one made David, and
othir grete chere / and in esspeciale the kynge of England made Sultan
Athis grete chere, no thing wenyng he had ben kyng, nor of blode
Roialle ; but whan he knewe he was a kynge, as wele as he & the
12 next ¹neighbour that he had / eche of them made meruailous Ioie [1 leaf 109]
of othir / But ouir alle men / fferaunt had grete ioie / and helde him
self moost vrous man that lyued in his tyme / seyng two so grete
kynges that had so long contynued in his seruyce / and than came
16 he to salewe the kyng of England / and he did him alt the honour
that he coude / sayng / "myne owne maister / Lo, here your ser-
uaunt / that neuir shaſt faile you, daies of his lif / Here may ye se
two of your seruauntes : wold oure lord, the thridde were in suche
20 condicion !" than asked he if any tidinges were of him / " Trewly," No tidings
saide themperour, " nay / and therof haue y grete meruaile " / whan have been
the two kynges herd that / they were right sory / thinkyng eche heard of
in him self / they wolde gif the third part of their Reaume to haue
24 him in their company / The kynge of England thought verily, that
if he coude gete him, he wolde marye him to one of his susters /
and gif him grete possessioun. thinkyng he coude nowhere so wele
bistowe hir with that he were a gentilman / In suche thoughtes &
28 wordes, rode they to the Towne. And like as the tidynges of the
kynge of Scottes came to themperesse and to hir doughtir, came
tidynges of the kynge of England, how for trouthe it was Ector, that
so longe had be in seruice there. The Emperesse & hir doughtir, &
32 alle the ladies & gentilwomen, gretly rejoised it, and thought it was
half a miracle, for the meruaile they had therof / Themperour went
to his loggyng / and the kynge of Englund went to his / by the King Hum-
commaundement and ordynaunce of the Emperour ; and the Turke,
phrey,
36 & the kynge of Scottes, brought him there / and went agen to their
owne loggyng / and taried not there scantily til they had half soped /
but went agen to the kynge of Englund, and founde him yet stille
at soper / and fferaunt with him / than sate thei downe with hem /
40 and than talkid they of Le Surnome. a man might haue had ioie King David,
and Sultan
Orcays talk
about King
Philip.

and meruaile, to haue herd them reherce the grete noblesse & bountees of him / and for his grete renome, euery man loued him / On the tothir side was themperesse in the halle, accompayned with ladies & gentilwomen / and ther was noone othir talkyng, but of 4 the kynge of Englond, and the kyng of Scottes, hou long they had
 King Philip
is expected at
the Tournay.
 [¹ lf. 109, bk.] be amonges them vnknownen / and there was Le Surnome com- playned / and somme saide that yet he might come to this Tournay tyme y-nough / and if it were possible to him, ¹so wold he accord- 8 yng to his promys / The ladies had grete desir to se hin; but ouir alle other, themperours daughter had grete sorowe that he was not come; and praied god, Le Surnome might be of as grete blode & power as any of the ij. kynges. Aftir soper, the kyng of Englond 12 & of Scottes, & the Turke, & alle the princes, came to se the ladies / the kyng of Englond was fulle wele receyued amonges them / and questioned, wherfore he kepte him self so long vnknownen.

King Hun-
phrey justi-
fies himself
for formerly
keeping
unknown.
 Dancing
begins.
 Festivities go
on till the
Tournay.
 King Philip
of France
 [2 leaf 110]
 sends ser-
vants to
Sicily, to
get lodgings
for the Duke
of Burgundy
and his large
retinue.

he answerd & saide, that in his emprisonment, & at his deliueraunce, 16 he made suche promesse / Than saide he, "y pray god comfort Le Surnome, and sende him good auenture, where so euer he be; for, next god, y may thanke him of my lif." and sayng thies wordes, the teeres fille from his yeen / for sorow þat he hadde þat he coude 20 here no tydynge of hym / The ladies gaf him a grete preise, seyng that "Le Surnome had wele bistowed his service, that it was so wele remembred" / anoon the mynstralls playde / and the daunces began on alle partes / there knightes, ladies, & gentilwomen dauncyng; and 24 euer amonges was Surnome remembred / moost of any thing / In this festing & pleasir, abode they til the day of Tournay / Now is it tyme to speke of the kyng of ffraunce, and of his vnkle the Duc of Burgoinne. [*Illumination: Meeting of the Emperor and the King of France.*] 28

He kyng of ffraunce, þat wold be vnknownen, wolde not departe so sone as the tothir did / hou-be-it he knewe of the departyng of many kynges and princes / and in what estate and richesse the kyng of Englond & the kyng of Scottes were 32 departed yn. and many tymes was his vnkle and he in communiacion for his purueaunce; and the kyng was the best diuiser that any man coude fynde: he devised ²not as a pore caitif, but as a kyng / so that there was noon, of what estate and condicion he 36 was of / to be compared to him. Thre daies bifore, he had sent his seruauntes to take vp loggyng for the Duc of Burgoinne / enheritour and Regent of ffraunce, whiche hath in his company v. or vj. M^t horses, wherof there be vj. Dukes and xiiij. Erles, beside grete Barons 40

and noble knightes, that were in his company. He ordeyned than his vncle to take vpone him the playne armes of ffraunce, seyng, "that it ought to be so / for it shold be to him repreef to tourney in any
4 other cote armour than in his owne" / The duc of Burgoigne, whiche The Duke of Burgundy agrees to all that K. Philip proposes. intended no-thing so moche as the pleasir of his nevew, was content
with alle that he wold ordeyne / how-be-it, he tolde him that folkes
wolde speke moche therof / inasmuche as he was not crowned kynge,
8 nor bare the name therof / Neuirtheles, in conclusioun, thus it was
apointed / and thus it was done / And ther was noman in alle ffraunce
that [wold] contrary the Dukes pleasir / hou-be-it, his day was not
come, by a yere and more, of the vij. yere / and alle such murmur &
12 wordes, dred the Duc. But it was sure at the ende, what-som-euir
was saide, shold be to his grete honour / and alle thinge was arredied
thus as y haue tolde you / and the kynge departed at suche tyme King Philip starts from France.
as he might come to the Emperour a ij. nightes bifore the Tourney /
16 and whan his herbegours came afore / and asked loggyng for so
grete a nombre / themperour was abasshed, and meruailed moche /
Than they tolde him how he was Regent of ffraunce, and enheritour /
and noon but he apparaunt to be kynge / and so toke he him self /
20 Of alle this, themperour had grete meruaille / & specially, sith he was
so nere vnto him, that he had not before tyme sent noon embassat
for the mariage of his doughtir. ¶ Now cometh the tyme of the
Dukes departyng / no man may thinke the richesse that that tyme
24 was at Parys, of the grete princes that were come thider / whos
abilementes and purueaunce were to long to reherce / when alle was
redy, the Duke departed / and they that he had in his conduyte /
The kynge went alwey before or behinde / euery man praied god to
28 sende the Duc good auenture, for moche was he biloued ¹amonges [¶ lf. 110, bk.]
them ; hou-be-it they had a litil grugge vnto him now / for this,
that he bare the playne armes of ffraunce / and they praied god
they might ones se the kynges sone a lyue amonges them / for than
32 sholde he be fayne to leue thoos armes / Thus departed he, as y
telle you. The Duc spedde his Iournay so, that he came in-to the They reach Sicily,
Reaume of Sizile / and whan he fflirst entred in-to the Reaume, he
was assertayned what kynges & prynces were there / and how the
36 kyng of England was Ector ; and the kyng of Scottes was Athis / and hear of Kings Humphrey and David.
that so longe had be in seruice there. The Duc knewe thies names
wele, by reporte of his Neuewe / and had right grete ioie of them /
and assone as he might, he made relacion vnto the kyng, whiche
40 had therof a meruailous glaunesse / thinkyng in himself / that suche

auenture had neuir be seen / that ij. kynges sones vnknownen shold be daily seruauntes yn one house to a knyght / Than thought he that this entent might not be had / for he thought before to haue had them bothe yn his house / though they had coste him the half of his 4 Reaume / whiche now might not be / Than saide he to his vncle, "now shalt y ride ioyfully / for y shalt se the moost part of them that y loue" / Thus rode they til they came nere vnto the place where them-

The Emperor
sends his
Nobles to
meet the
Duke of
Burgundy.

perour was / and at the towne that he logged / next vnto themperour / 8 there mette with him many noble men / that themperour had sent vnto him ; and there dyned they with hym / and the Duc asked them many questions of the werres that had ben amonges them / and they tolde him, and also of the fortune of fferaunt, "whiche had 12 ij. kynges in his seruice / whiche were the moost noble men of the worlde sauf one, whiche was in their company, that was named Le Surnome, whiche was the ffloure, and surmounted alle othir" / & there they reherced his persone, his worthynesse, and bounte / and 16 alle the wele that coude be seid of any man / yit knewe not the Duc that it was his nevewe that was called Le Surnome. But assone as he might departe from them of Sizile / he came to his nevewe / & besought him on his feith to telle him how he was named whan he 20 was in Sizile. and the kynge, that wold not displease his vncle, tolde him that his first name was Le Despurue / but the Emperours doughtir had chaungid it, and named hym Le Surnome. And whan

King Philip
tells the Duke
his assumed
names,

[¹ leaf 111]

which the
Duke rejoices
to hear.

the Duc herde this / and knewe for trouth the it was he ¹of whom the 24 grete renome sprange so ferre / he embraced him with grete ioie. and the kyng asked him what meved him so to do ; and he tolde him the grete honour that he had herd spoken of him ; and seid so moche, that the kynge wax alle rede & shamefast / and saide, " faire 28 vncle, they that haue made this report, y suppose be my grete frendes ; but parauenture ye shalle here suche tidynges, or ye go oute of this cuntry, that happily shalle not please you so moche." The Duc in his mynde praised him moche for that awnswere, & saide / 32 " now wille ye go bifore or behinde" / " forsothe," saide the kynge,

King Philip
will now act
as a gentle-
man of his
uncle's.

" y wolt go bifore / and not fer from you, but as a gentilman of youres" / The Duc was content with his pleasir / The Emperour had alwey hope to here som tidynges of Le Surnome. The ladies 36 that had herd speke of the grete richesse, and of the grete lordes that shold come to the towne, besought themperour they might be at the wyndowes to se them come / Thumperour was agreeable. Thumperesse, & hir doughtir, and alle the ladies, went forth / whan 40

they that were in the towne herd thies tidynges / euery man appointed him self in the best wise they coude / to ride forth and mete the Duc of Burgoigne. The kynge of ffrance was araid as
4 a squier, and set on the best hors that was in alle the company / and iij. or iiiij. moo that knewe of his counselle, were araid in sute with him / and eche one a visour bifore his face / Themperour, and the yong
8 Turke, & alle the kynges & princes that were in the towne, rode
12 oute to mete the Duc of Burgoigne / and within litil way of the towne, they mette with hym ; and there was neither kniȝt nor squyer in his company, but he had outhir trapoures or horsharneys
16 of clothe of gold / or velewet embrowdird / there was neuir so grete
20 richesse seen in Sizile bifore in one day / whan the yong kynge
12 saw the kyng of Englund and the kyng of Scottes, he salewed them
a ferre ; & the hors wheron he rode was so plesaunt, that his maister
16 might guyde him as he wold / and he made ij. or iiij. lepes fulle
20 manerly / the hors was plesaunt, and the man that was on hym
moche more / he was loked on of many folkes / but noon knewe hym
[as] he passed forthe. The Emperour came to the Duc, and salued
24 him as perteyned to his estate / aftir acqueyntaunce, they rode alle
28 togedir to the towne ; and the yong kynge and his company was
alway nere vnto ¹the Duc / At their comyng in-to the Towne, was not [¶ lf. 111, bk.]
seen suche estate of richesse sith the worlde began / the wyndowes
and the stretes were alle hanged with riche clothes / and alle the
24 wyndowes fulle of ladies & gentilwomen / and whan they shold
passe by themperesse & hir faire doughtir, the yonge kynge knewe
them wele y-nough, ye may wele thinke / the cawey was to litil for
his hors & him / for alle that was possible for hym or his hors to do /
28 was done bifore the ladies ther ; and it semed to as many as bihelde
him / that he sate as easely as he had ben vpon a litil amblyng
nagge / and the ladies & gentilwomen gaff their beholding moost
vnto him / but the prese was suche, they lost the sight of him longe
32 or they wold. and whan themperour came there as the ladies lay /
he alight, and made to conduye the Duc of Burgoigne vnto his log-
ging, with many kynges & princeis ; & whan they had brought hym
there, [. . . .] Than the Duc knewe that themperour had supped /
36 and that it was tyme to se the ladies, he departed from his loggyng /
so accompanied, that it was meruaile to se / he came to themperours
paleis, where he founde themperesse accompanied with grete nombre
of ladies and gentilwomen / and so many faire, that it was a paradis
40 to biholde them / but as the sonne passeth in beaute the sterres / so,

The Duke of Burgundy is met by the Emperor and his kingly guests, &c.

The Sicilian town is magnificently adorned.

The Duke visits the Empress,

and the
lovely
Iolante,

whom he
thinks the
Nonpareil
of the world.

King Philip
looks on at
the dances.

[¹ leaf 112]
His supposed
absence is
lamented.

He resolves
to do his
best at the
Tourney,

in beaute & behaving, passeth alle othir, the faire & good Iolant. The duc salued the ladies, as to their estate belonged ; and than he felle in talkyng with this faire lady / whom he founde so wele assured in allehir behauyng that he thought his nevewe wele fortuned to haue 4 such chois / if his fortune might folow the remenaunt of his wille / for as him thought, she was nounpareil of the world / The daunces began ; the kynges and princes came to se the daunces / the halt was newe, made so grete and so plenteuous / that suche a-nothir 8 was neuir seyen / The yong kynge of ffraunce was behinde alle othir, holdyng a knight of his by the arme / and bihelde the daunces, and specially his faire lady / and besought god his fortune might be as good as his wille ; and biheld his ij. felawes disportyng them / & 12 dauncyng among the ladies / trustyng / or long to / to be knownen there, asmoche to his hertes ease / as was to any of them / There was many of themperours court that com¹pleyned sore Le Surnome, whiche he him-self might here / seyng, “ that they were nowe alle out 16 of hope / and that they thought wele that he was outhere dede or seke, seyng the promys that he had made to be there at that day / and if he were dede / it were the grettist pite of his dethe that euir was of any so pore a man in alle this worlde.” Thise wordes herde 20 many of the frenshmen ; and tolde vnto the Duc their maister, the grete lawde that this man had, whiche was named Le Surnome. and themperour him-self spake of him, and had for him right grete sorowe / & so had alle the ladies and gentilwomen. The kynge of 24 ffraunce, knowyng alle this / saide vnto suche as knewe his entente / “ if euer he had hert to do wele / it was now tyme to shewe it at this tourney / and also he wist wele, without grete paine & trauaile this grete conqueste might not be made wele ” / they smyld & seide / 28 “ they of this Reaume sey so euel of you / that we ar half in drede of your spede.” . “ Truly,” seide the kynge, “ y shal^t do aswele as y can ” / Themperour praid the Duc of Burgoigne, on the morowe to suppe with hym and alle the princes of his company / ffor he had 32 fested alle other straungers bifore / and this was the even of the tourney. The Duc graunted hym / and toke leue of him and of the ladies / and went to his loggyng / many were there that wold haue conueyed hym, but he wold not suffre them / and assone as he 36 came to his loggyng / he founde leiser to speke with his Nevewe, saing vnto him / “ that wele he had chosen / and yf there were any prowesse in him / he shold put him in payne now to do wele ; for if in his defaute he lost suche a wele / he might be sure neuer to 40

recouere the semblable" / if the kynge were amorous to-fore / his
vnkells wordes made him more ; sayng vnto him / "ffaire vncle,
myn armes shalle faile me, outhir y shalt dye in the payne / or y <sup>and win
Iolante,</sup>
4 shalt haue hir." The Duc began to laugh, and tolde him how ^{or die.}
thumperour had praied him to soper on the next day / and alle the
princes of his company / this nyght they went to rest. The kynge
of ffaunce thought euerie houre a yere / til the day of the tourney /
8 and yit was there but one day thereto. The feldre was ordeyned by <sup>The field
of Turney</sup>
thumperours commaundement, where the Tournay shold be / and ^{is settled.}
placis apointed, & deliuerd to euerie kynge and prince, to hang vp
¹theire tentes and pauilions. I had forgoten to reherce, howe that [¶ lf. 112, bk.]
12 very [¶ MS.] night was shewed vnto the yong Turke / that, but if he <sup>Sultan
Orcays,</sup>
were cristen / he might not be receyued vnto the tourney / He made
many grete doutes, lest his suggestes wold destroie him, or chace him
. out of his Realme / and than the Emperour and alle the kynges and
16 princis that were there, promised him aide, and to take his part, if <sup>being promist
help by the
Christian
Soveraigns,</sup>
any suche cause were / and in trust of their promesse, he bicame
cristen on the morow / the kynge of Englund and the kynge of
Scottes cristen him / and eche of them put othir to such worship,
20 that they wold not gyue the Turke their owne name / so that he
hight aftir neither of them, but was named Charles / also a grete <sup>and is
baptised
'Charles.'</sup>
part of his company bicame cristen. On the morow, did euerie
man set vp his Tentes & Pauylions / euery man in his owne quarter /
24 But ouir alle othir, the Duc of Burgoignes Tente bare the brute /
whiche was of the playne armes of ffaunce / and was valued at
CCC Mt. scutes. that night came the Due to soper to thumperour /
and the Emperour and the ladies made him grete chere ; and at
28 that soper, was speche of le Surnome, and was asmoche complayned
as any man might be / The Emperour seide asmoche good of him
as coude be thought / and tolde the Due that he was cause of alle
his honour / and rehersed his persone, maner, and condicions / and
32 than wisshed him as mighti a kynge as any of his ij. ffelawes / and
than saide he / "he promysed me to haue ben here agen at this
day, if he had ben a lyve and at his liberte / wherfore y thinke verily <sup>Folk think
he is dead.</sup>
he ys dede" / and in sayng thise wordes, the teeres felle from his
36 yen. whan this faire lady herde speke of the deth of Le Surnome,
she coude not kepe hir from wepyng ; and alle othir that there were, <sup>Iolante weeps
for him.</sup>
bemoned him moche. And whan the Due saugh the grete loue
that alle folkes had to his newew / and herde his grete vertues
40 rehersed, ye may be sure he had grete ioie / and saide to the

Emperour, "truly, sir, he hath wele employde his seruyse / and perauenture he may be seke without dethe; and if god wille, ye shal fulle wele se him hereaftir" / Thus, and in suche wordes, passid forth the soper / and aftir soper, the Duc, as though he were a litil 4 envious of the preise that he herde of Le Surnome, saide vnto the faire Iolante, "Madame, me thinketh / Le Surnome wele vred / for whan he was spoken of this night / ye coude not kepe you ¹from wepyng / wherfore y suppose he be more in your grace than many 8 othir" / "In good feith," quod she, "y loue him right wele; and so haue y grete cause / yf ye had in your company one that had done asnoiche for you, as Le Surnome hath done for my lord my fadir, & for me / ye had an hard hert, if ye herde speke of his dethe / and 12 were not sory" / The Duc sawe wele she was not pleased with his wordes. he was not sory, for he thought it touchid hir hert somewhat, & trustid wit/in iij. daies after / the peas shold be made. anoon aftir, he toke his leve, saing, he most that night attende to 16 his besinesse / that night came noon of the tothir Princis to the Emperour / for eche of them attendid that he had to do on the morow. The duc came to his loggyng; and assone as he might, went to the kynge his Nevewe, and tolde him what wordes he had 20 herde of him that night / and what speche was bitwene him and the Emperours doughtir, saing, "sir, now do so, that this preyse and recommendacion may contynue." he answerd, "I pray god graunt me that grace." That night went he to rest / and on the morow 24 rose vp be tymes, and went & herd masse, and than apointed them to be redy. [Illumination: the Tournay: Knights charging; Iolante, &c. looking on.]

The Duke of Burgundy
[¹ leaf 113]
talks to Iolante about his Nephew,
and thinks her heart is touched.

King Philip
prays for success.

Ten other
kings and
K. Philip,
with 205 men
of Royal
blood, make
109 on each
side in the
Tournay.

THe Princis were departed by the knightes and kynges of Armes, one ageinst a nothir / and were nombred, of kynges 28 x, beside the kyng of ffraunce, whiche was vnknownen; and of othir princes & lordes of Roialle blode, CC. and vj.; so that they were in all CC. & xvj. and on eche side,² C. & viij.; on that one side the kyng of England and the Duc of Burgoigne / & on that othir 32 side, the yonge Turke and the kyng of Scottes / The scaffold on the tothir side was where the ladies were; and this faire lady was set vp allone on hight, because euery man shold se hir. Themperour [³ lf. 113, bk.] ³was on an scaffold, accompayned with many noble men / and fferaunt the Seneshalt was with him. At the houre that the Tournay shold be, the Trumpetes blew vp / The kynges & princes came out of their pavilions, euery man armed with his helme on

² MS. on eche side and

his hede / his Cotearmour on him, his baner a-fore him, and alle
their horses couerd with their armes. The yonge Turke and the
kynge of Scottes came on the tone side / the kynge of Englund /
4 and he that men helde the Duc of Burgoigne, on the tothir side /
and whan the kynge of ffraunce came out of his paulylion / eueri
man beheld him with grete meruaile, wenyng he had ben the Duc
of Burgoigne / by cause he ware the playne armes; and there was
8 leyde grete charge vnto him in many folkes mouthis, for weryng
thies armes, he not beyng kynge. Alle thise thinges done / thei
were embatailed eche ageinst othir, the corde drawen before eche
partie / and whan tyme was, the cordes were cutt / and the Trumpetis
12 blew vp, for euery man to do his deuoir / And for to assertayne you
more of the Tournay, there was on eche side a stake / and at eche
stake two kynges of armes, with penne and Inke and paper, to
write the names of alle them that were yolden / for they shold nomore
16 Tournay / The Duc of Burgoigne was on horsbak, accompanied with
them with the visours / and had a visour alwey bifore his visage; and
they kepte them to-geder alway nere the kynge ; for grete desire had
the Duc to se his worthynesse. Suche an assemble was neuir noon
20 seen bifore / nor so many noble armes to-gedir / euery man payned
him to haue the price / The kynge of ffraunce saw where his lady
stode / and so did alle the remenaunt, whiche doubled their corage
and worthynesse. This Tournay dured longe tyme ; so moche / that
24 it was meruaile that any man might endure that / that eche of theym
did / Ouir alle othir, the kynge of ffraunce did meruailously : he ouir-
threwe men & horses, so that there was vnnethes any that durst
abide his strokes. the Emperour, and they that were in the scaffoldes,
28 were alle abasshed of the prowesse of the Duc of Burgoigne / there
was noon to be compared with him / In like wise seid the ladies,
and were ameruailed and sory that the kynge of Englund ¹and the [1 leaf 114]
kynge of Scottes were of no bettir power to encountre the Duc. It
32 is to thinke, the Duc of Burgoigne had grete ioie to se the worthy-
nesse of his Nevewe ; and so had the Frensshenen, wenyng it were
the Duc / saing amonges them / “oure maister is a meruailous noble
man ” / and so seide alle othir nacions that were there / and merauled
36 alle of him. So long endured this Tournay, til, by the Emperours
ordenaunce, the Trumpetes blewe the retrayte, that euery man shold
withdrawe him / there were not xxxⁱⁱ men on the Turkes side that
might feight / but alle were sent to the stake. There were double the
40 feighters on the kynges side of ffraunce ; for, by the scide kynge,

Sultan
Charles and
K. David are
against K.
Humphrey
and King
Philip.

The Tourney
begins.

On each side
is a stake for
the beaten
men.

King Philip
of France
does best
of all.

When the
cease is
sounded,
not 30 men
are left on
the Sultan's
side.

were sent to the stake vj. kynges and viij. Dukes, & xxij. Erles, wherof the yonge Turke was one / whence at that tyme had leuer haue dyued than lyued / The kynge of Englund and the kynge of Scottes sawe wele they coude not wynne the prycce alle daies, ffor the 4 first day the prycce was wonne fro them bothe ; wherof they were right sorowfull / than euery man drewe to his Pavilion, trist & pensiff as they might be / But the kynge of ffraunce was alle in a nother thought / for he departed with good hope, as glad and ioy- 8 fulle as he might be / and made him to be vnarmed / and his vncle coude not kepe him for takyng him in his armes / whan he remembred his grete noblesse that he had seen him do that day. Than went euery man to soper / and ouir alle the towne ranne the brute 12 on the Duc of Burgoigne / euery man seid that, sauf Le Surnome, he was the moost valiaunt man that euer they sawe / Aftir soper the ladies came in-to the halle to the daunces / and there they seide to this faire lady / “ By my feith, madame, and the Duc contynue 16 thus worthyly, ye be his / wold oure lorde he were xx^{ti} yere yonger than he is ! ” Some seid that, “ to-morow he shalbe so wery, that he shal not mowe contynue / and if he do not, the Emperour may chose whence of them best pleasith him / and if it so be / I suppose he 20 wilt knowe your wilt or he make any graunt of you ” / “ By my feithe,” seid the faire lady, “ my wilt shal be as pleasith him / and neuir other-wise shal y thynke ” / As they were in such talkyng came the kynges and the princis to Courte / but ouir alle othir was 24 the Duc of Burgoigne beholden of alle folkes ; & moche murmour [1 lf. 114, b.k.] was ther of him / somme saide “ he made a nothir to tourney¹ in his place ; for certain it was not He that was to day yn the felde / it sheweth nothing in his face ; for he ys as fressh as he was yester 28 even this tyme.” Thise wordes multiplied so moche, that the knightes and ladies had noon othir talkyng but of him / In so moche that men spake vnto themperour therof / and saide, that “ by this meanе the kynges and princes might be deceyued.” Wher- 32 fore they besought the Emperour / that on the morow, to put alle thing oute of suspcion, euery sholde departe oute of the felde vnhelmed / The Dukes folkes herde wele thise wordes that were spoken of their maister / for alle the halle was ful therof / and somme 36 of them went and tolde the Duc therof ; and how alle folkes shold go vnhelmed out of the felde / and he made countenaunce of grete displeasir / but he had right grete ioie in his thought, hou-be-it he wold telle his nevewe no thing therof. Than remembred he / how 40

King Philip
is full of
hope.

Jolante is
told that she
will be his.

The Emperor
is askt to
order that,
next day, all
Tourneyers
shall unhelm.

euery kynge bare a crowne on his helme / sauyngh the kynge of
ffraunce / than toke he leue, & went home to him / and tolde him
how many folkes spake that he bare the playne armes of ffraunce
4 that day / and was not crowned / “ wherfore it behoueth you to bere
the crowne, or ellis to bere myne armes ” / Than seid the kynge, “ I am King Philip
content to bere the crowne to-morowe ” / Thus concludid, they went agrees to
to bedde til on the morow / That mornyngh, alle the princis besought
8 the Emperour that eche one of them shold come vnhelmed before
the ladies ; and so forth euery man go streight forth to his pavilion /
Themperour agreed thereto. The Duc was ware therof be tymes in
the mornyngh / and appointed him-self right richely / and sat vpone
12 a stately Courser / his visour stille on / and whan tyme came, as the
orlenaunee was the day bifore / euery prince came out of his pavilion
afir the blowyng of the Trumpetes ; and euery man shold haue
come out vnhelmed / But the kynge of ffraunce came out alle armed /
16 his helme on his hed / and his crowne theron / whan men saw him
bere the crowne / euery man meruailed, & saide that “ he aught not
to bere it / sith he toke not on him the name of kynge ” ; euery man
spake herof / the cordes were cutte as they were the day bifore. The Second
20 The tourney dured long, wele foughten / & grete armes that day day's Tourney begins.
were seen / wher-thorugh some dyed. Ouir ^[1 leaf 115] alle othir, the Duc of
Burgoigne bare the brute / the dedes of alle the tothir that were in King Philip
the tourney, were not to be compared with his / notwithstanding
24 the moost worshipfull of the world were ther / he ouirthrewe man
and horses, he racyd of helmes fro hedes / and finally he did so in
armes, that every man fled him ; ther was not of them that were
against him whan the Trumpetes blew the retraite, passing x. that
28 might defende them ; and if the Trumpetes had taried a litil lenger,
alle they on his side sholde haue founde noon to feight with. The
kynge of Scottes was not brought to the stake that day, nor the
Turke nother / the trumpetes sowned, the listes were closed. The
32 kynge of ffaunce wende to haue passid as he did the day before /
but fferaunt came bifore him / and tolde him the crye & orden-
aunce of themperour. The Duc of Burgoigne knewe of thies
werkes, and was entred withyn the listes alle allone, wherof many
36 folkes meruailed / The kynge of ffaunce, feling thus taken, had King Philip
grete displeasir in his herte ; hou-be-it, he most nedes obeye, &
came bifore the scaffold, where as the Emperour and the ladies
were / The Due of Burgoigne alwey following him / Now cometh ^{is unhelmed} by Ferant.
40 fferaunt as nere to the scaffold as he coude, and vnlacid the helme

of him that he had in charge ; and assone as it was of his hede, that he knewe it was Le Surnome, he coude not refrayne him to kisse him / and whan the Emperour and the ladies knewe him / they made ioie out of mesure / whan the kyng of Scottes and the 4 kynge of Englund knewe that their felaw was there, they embraced him with as grete ioie as coude be thought. The Emperour coude no lenger kepe him on his scaffold, but came downe, and lepe an

The Emperor
embraces
King Philip. hors bak, and came to embrace Le Surnome, his special frende & 8 seruaunt. There was the preas aboute him out of nombre. Somme

saide, " beholde the outrage of this Duc ! This man is of ffraunce / and the Duc knoweth his worthynesse, and hath made him tourney in his place, wenying therby to haue the faire Iolant." The Duc of 12 Burgoigne toke of his visour / and required to speke with the Emperour in the presence of alle his ladies. Than came he before the Emperour, and spake so high that alle myght here him / " sir, this same that hath tournaide, is the Kynge of Fraunce " / and tolde 16

[1 ff. 115, bk.] he how he ¹departid out of ffraunce / and of the deth of his ffadir / seing that alle that he had done was by his commaundement / wherfore he bisought the Emperour of pardone. whan the Emperour knewe that he was kynge of ffraunce, he saide that god 20 was Iuste. This was anon knownen ouir alle men / and in esspecialle amonge them of ffraunce / that knewe nothing thereof afore. But

His French-
men cheer
him. than they cried with a high voice, " Nowelt !" clappingn their handes / The Emperour and ladies wepte bothe for ioie & pite ; and aboue alle 24

othir, made faire Iolant grete ioie / thinking in hir-self there was neuer womman more bounde to god / trustyng to be accompanied with him / that hir hert moost desired / Aftir this grete, ioie euery prince went to his pavilione. Themperour coude not wele leue of 28 embracyng and kissing the kynge of ffraunce. grete was the ioie amonges them / and fferaunt, whan he hadde beholde his iij. seruauntes saide that, " neuer man of his power was so mightily serued as he had ben " / whan the Emperour behelde the Duc of 32

The Emperor
praises the
Duke of
Burgundy. Burgoigne, he thought he was a passing goodly man of his yeres, seyng, " that god had wele ioyned so grete truthe and comlynnesse in o persone ; for honorably and truly he had acuyte him to his Nevewe." the kynge seid then, that " of long tyme had he knownen 36 his vncles trouthe ; for there was neuer fadir kynder to his childe / than he had alway founde his vncle to him." The kynge of Eng-land & of Scottes, the more they thought on their fortune, the more were they abasshed & ameruailed ; for they had neuer redde in 40

romans nor in Cronicles, noon like vnto theirs. The Turke, whan he sawe this, wondird also gretly in hym-self / and thought wele, by the kynge of ffraunce, the Realme of Sizile had be recouerd / ther-
 fore it was moost conuenient, & best right, that his fortune shold be to enioie it. Themperour thought this fortune a miracle¹; wherfore [<sup>[1] MS. mir-
 acle]</sup> he made alle the belles of the towne to be rongen / and toke the kynge by the hande, & brought him to the chirche / and euery man
 8 thankid god, that by his grace he had sent thise iij. kynges to their recouere, and releef of the cristen feith / and alle the straungers that herd therof, yau god a grete lawde, holdyng it for a very miracle / Frensshmen, that had recouerd their kyng / and knewe for trouthe
 12 it was the same ²that was named Le Surnome, that had done so [^{[2] leaf 116} grete a wele to the realme of Sizile, of whom the renome spred thorugh alle the world / thankid god as hertly, and with a grete ioie,
 as was possible / Than brought themperour the kyng of ffraunce to
 16 se the ladies / whiche coude not refrayne their lokes fro him while he was there, sauf the faire and good Iolant, whiche was so wele assured in every manere, whiche bihelde him with suche womman-hode and wisdom, that neither he nor noon othir shold perceyue her
 20 thought, al-be-it she had not leste pleasir to behold him / In like wise was he as wele assured, for he thought than no place nor tyme couenable to shewe that moost touchid his hert / But whan he might, he toke leve of themperour to chaunge him, and aftir soper
 24 to come agein to se the ladies. The Emperour made to speke vnto him secretly / that he and his vncle shold come suppe with the ladies / In like wise warned he the kyng of England and of Scottes. The kyng of ffraunce agreed to his commaundement
 28 without any grugge / for there was no-thinge that he desired so moche, as to be in the company of somme that shold be ther. Thus departed he, and toke fferaunt by the arme, wold he or not / and so went with him, arme in arme, thorugh the towne, til he came to
 32 his logging / where as they made grete ioie / and talked of many thinges passed / and so drove forth, til tyme came they shold go to soper to the Emperour / than departed they fro his loggyng til he came to themperour, whiche was accompanied with the kynges
 36 afore rehersed. There were set at his boorde, himself, his wif, & his doughtir, and ij. othir grete ladies / The kyng of ffraunce, of Englund, and of Scottes, and the duc of Burgoigne; and fferaunt, maugre his wille, was set there at the request of the thre kynges.
 40 At the soper, was rehersed the gouernaunce of them / how they iij.

The Emperor has all the
belles in the town rung.

He takes
King Philip
to see Iolante,

but she will
not show her
love for him.

King Philip
and his
friends

go to sup
with the
Emperor.

had ben seruauntes to fferaunt / and how they shewed them self at this tourney in suche fourme, that their first noblesse might not be forgoten in this Realme. thus passed forth the soper / And the Emperour saide to fferaunt, "that there might no mysauenture 4 befall hym, seyng such iij. seruauntes had seruid him" / & they seid, "god had sent hem grete grace to serue so good a maister as [1 lf. 116, bk.] he was / that, next themperour, there was no man lyving they¹ wolde be gladder to do honour and pleasir vnto." The soper passed forth 8 ioifully / litil was eten there, for they were alle fedde with ioie.

*The Emperor's guests
are too full
of Joy to eat.*

The Emperour behelde the kynge of ffraunce, that his faire sone shold be, and thought wele that god had accomplished alle weles in him. Themperesse thought accordyng to the same. This faire 12 lady, how moche so euer she was rejoised in hir thought, hir maner was suche that no man coude perceyue it; on the tothir side, the kynge of ffraunce, in beholdynge hir, trustid as wele to performe the ij^{de}. day as he had begone; wherþorugh he was so ravissh¹⁶ with ioie, that he neither eete ne dranke / Aftir soper, biforn the comyng¹⁷ of oþir kynges and princis / the kynge of ffraunce talked with the faire Iolante / and askid hir, by hir feith, so many noble Princis as were at this assemble / if there were not one more than a- 20 nothir in hir grace / for any thynge that he coude do / he coude perceyue by no wordes of hir / but that alle hir hert & wille was at the pleasir of hir ffadur / seyng also she was right ioyfull¹⁸ of the grete estate that he was yn, prayng god to sende him asmoche 24 honour & ioie as he coude wisshe / he thankid hir ful humbly / and askid hir / if god gaf him that fortune to come to the mariage of / if she wold not so be awsewe content as with a-nothir / she chaunged colour, & saide, "God gif hir grace to lyue no lenger 28 than she be content with hym / that pleasith hir fadir to yeue hir, were it be he, or any oþir." with thise wordes came yn many oþir kynges and princes to themperours Court. The kynge of ffraunce, of Englond, and of Scottes, went to mette them / and brought them 32 yn to the ladies ; the mynstralles pleide so many / that alle the halle resounded / the daunces began / The kynge of ffraunce toke this faire lady, his maistresse, by the hande, and daunced with hir / euery body behelde them gladly / And themperour and the Duc of 36 Burgoigne talked togodir / and behelde this goodly couple dauncyng : "fforsythe," seid the Emperour / "here is a mete couple / god, by his grace, preserue them long" / "fforsythe" / said the Duc / "If it please you to make the mariage, I trowe ye shalle displeasen"² 40

*King Philip
talks to his
love, Iolante.*

*He dances
with her;*

*and they are
thought a fit
couple.
[2] MS. dis-
please[n]*

them neither" / "fforsythe," seid themperour, "if it please the kynge
to take my doughtir / noon shall haue hir but he / By the orden-
aunce of this Tournay, no man [can] clayme hir of right / but if he
4 wynne alle the iij. daies / ^[1 leaf 117]and that can noman do but he / and
though he do not / if it please him to haue hir, I wot be right
ioyfull, ffor he hath deserued a grettir rewardre / yif it were in me
to yeue it him; for y holde myn honour and this Realme, only by
8 god and him" / euyer man that was in the halle spake of this matier /
and in their mynde gaf this faire lady to the kynge of ffraunce. Aftir
the daunces, euyer man lay downe by the ladies, and talked to-gedir /
the night came & departed them / and alle folkes went to rest / and
12 on the morow, at the houre apointed, the kynges and princes came <sup>The Third
day's Tournay begins.</sup>
to the tournay / as they did the dayes bifore / The kynge of ffraunce
was wele loked on / that day / & if he had done meruailes the ij.
daies bifore / it semed to alle folkes it was nothing in comparison <sup>King Philip
surpasses
himself.</sup>
16 to that he did the last day; for at that day there was none that
might abide his strokes; so that by than the Trumpetes blewe the
retraite, there was not one on that oþer side to feight with-alle.
Thus venguished he the Tournay by alle iij. daies / and ouir alle <sup>He is the
First;
the Kings
of England
and Scotland
next.</sup>
20 oþer next him / the kynge of Englund & the kynge of Scottes had
the preyse / At the departyng of the Tournay, the Emperour sent
to alle the kynges & princes to suppe with him that night / and their
had he ordeyned the most noble and riche soper that euer had be
24 seen there bifore / thider came all folkes; and eueri man set in
ordre / a prince alwey, and a princesse, or a grete lady / Aftir soper,
the Emperour called the moost part of the noble men that were in the
halle, reseruyng them that had tournaide / and also toke vnto hym
28 the kynges of Armes / and the notable heraldes of euyer prince that
there was, and went in-to another halle in Counselle, and made the <sup>The grand
Council</sup>
Daunces to begynne, to disport the princes the meane while / and
whan he was in his counselle, accompanied as y haue seid you / he
32 asked what he shold do / and deliuerd the ordre of the tournay; and
asked if "they knewe any man that had accomplished the trye of
this, he wold holde his promesse, without makyngh lenger tale" / It
was so clere matier, that alle, of one accord, gaf the price of alle iij.
36 daies to the kynge of ffraunce. The Emperour wolde haue the witte
& thauise of the ladies, and sent for the emperesse, & for the moost
part of the ladies / and the remenaunt abode stille at the Daunces
with his doughtir. Than asked he ^[2 if. 117, ll. 1.]their auise, as he had done of
40 the men / and anone they gaf their iugement to the kynge of <sup>all adjudge
the prize to
King Philip
of France.</sup>

ffraunce. Themperour herynge this, toke the Emperesse by the
hande, & came in-to the halle, and toke their daughtir as she was
dauncyng / bitwene them bothe, and came toward the kynge of
ffraunce ; and whan he saw them, he came to them. Than said 4
themperour, “ Right noble & valiaunt kyng ! this Tournay was
ordeyned like as ye knowe / wherof the price ys youen vnto you by
alle iij. daies / hou-be-it, this Tournay compellith you not to take my

The Emperor offers his daughter Iolante to King Philip, doughtir, but if it please you. ¶ Natheles, here y presente hir to 8
you, in kepyng my promesse / and gif you the price / & hir, if it
please you to take hir.” [illumination: 1. *Iolante offered to K. Philip*; 2. *married to him*.]

who gladly takes her, is plighted to her, and 3 days after [leaf 118] marries her. **W**HAN the kynge of ffraunce sawe this present that he moost
desired, he kneled donne, & saide, “ my lord ! of the grete 12
honour and curtesie that ye do me / of hir that is so
moche worth,—first, y thanke almighty god / and right humbly y
thanke your grace & the Emperesse / and to outrageous & ferrest
ouirseyen shold he be, that suche a present refused / and as for me, 16
I am redy to take hir / and moost glad therof of any thinge” /
Than toke he the faire maide, & kissed hir / and euery man preide
god to sende them long lif to-gedir, with moche honour and ioie /
fforthwith was an Archebisshop called, and he cnssured them / and 20
the day of mariage was apointed the thrid day / and agein that day
were cried Iustes of .xx. helnes against alle comers / at whiche day
the kynge of ffraunce and alle his company apointed them as richely
as was possible / The moost part of kynges & princis came to his 24
loggyng, to do him honour & company that day / than went they to
the Emperours loggyng / where they fonde ¹thumperesse and hir
faire doughtir / accompanied with many ladies and gentilwomen
redy to go to chirche. I can not reherce the grete richessee that was 28
that day shewed, in aray and in Iewels, amonge the princes and
princesses / for eche was araied as riche as they coude / ye may wele
thinke, the kynge of ffraunce & his company were not the werst ;
for, ful sory wold he haue ben to a wist any oþir nacion to haue 32
passed him that day / But he and his vnkle exceded in richessee,
that day, alle oþir princis that were there. whan he had seen the
faire Iolant, he went to chirche, accompanied with many a grete
prince. and after was she brought to chirche ; where they were 36
maried with grete ioie / and than retourned home agein to dyner /
whiche was as grete and as roialle, as to such folkes belonged / The
kynge of ffraunce gaf to the heraldes grete richessee, whervpone they
cried “ largesse ” thorugh the halle, as was accustomed / after the 40

boordes were taken vp / the daunces endured but a while, be cause of Dances follow; then Jousts. The Jousts in honour of K. Philip's marriage.
the Iustes / At the Iustes, for the loue of the kynge of ffrance and
of his wif, Themperour was on the vttir party, and the Duc of Bur-
4 goigne was on the Inne side, with the kynge of ffrance / These
Iustes dured til it was euen / and torche light / There were ij. C.
helmes / and there were so many ladies & gentilwommen, that there
were Scaffoldes for them on eche side the felde / there had not be
8 seen bifore, grettir Iustes than tho. That day, was many an high &
noble crye of mighti kynges and princes & grete lordes. Thus
passed the day til soper tynie / & aftir soper, began the Daunces /
And there were riche monnaynges of grete princes / & many
12 riche presentes brought to this faire lady / Thus passed forth the
night, til it was tyme to go to rest / Than was the faire Iolant
brought to bed / The kyng of ffrance taried not long aftir. Now
were there togedirs the persones of the world that moost were to
16 be preyed / the night passed / the day came / the kyng arose /
and the quene bothe, and were araid so richely that it was meraile
to beholde. The lordes came to se the kyng / the ladies & gentil-
women came to se the quene / what shal I make lenger tale / this
20 fest endured xv. daies hole ; and every day, newe Iustes & Tournay / The Feast lasts 15 days.
But ¹there was neuir ffeste in this worlde / but onys it must haue [1. ff. 118, bk.]
an ende.

24 **Y**N an Euenyng, at a grete assemble, the Turke came to
themperour, and to the tothir kynges and Princes that were
there, seyng vnto them / " My lordes, ye knowe wele that,
in trust of you / y haue lefte the lawe that I held of / and toke me
to the lawes of Ihesu crist / eche of you hath promysed me aide /
28 and withoute helpe I can not abide in myn onne Cuntry / wherupon
I require you nowe of counselle and aide " / The princes there pre- The Emperor and kings notify to the Turks that they will help him if his subjects rebel against him.
sent, knewe that he seid trouthe ; [&] remembryng their promesse /
aduised them to sende, euery prince, [a lettre] vndir his seale, to alle
32 thestates of the Turkes lande, certifying them by the same, to take his
part, if it so were that they wold rebelle agiest him / Thus concluded
they to sende messangers forth / In the meane tyme, avised him the
kynge of Englund / how he had ij. Susters of grete beaute, and of
36 resonable age to be maried ; wherfore he thought he conde not bettir
bestowe the one of theym, than on the kynge of Scottes, his next
neighbour, for the grete loue, and long acqueyntance and familiarite
that had ben bitwene them. And the tothir Suster, he thought to
40 mary to the Due of Burgoigne / But he seid, " verily he wold neuer

The Duke of Burgundy declines to marry. be maried / nor in his youthe entendid no mariage" / And whan the kynge vndirstode the awnser of the Duc, he thought to mary hir vnto the Turke / for he herd say the Turke had a Sustir of high beaute, & she wold become cristen / he thought it were a metely 4 mariage for him to mary the Turkes suster, and the Turke to mary his / Suche wordes were cast forth amonges the Princes; so that the Emperour, and the kynge of ffraunce, and the Duc of Burgoigne, that was an inly wise man, toke the besinesse vpon them / and 8 conduyte it so that thise mariages were accorded, and a messanger sent forth for the Turkes suster / And assone as she might, she came / at the commaundement of hir brothir / and whan they knewe of hir comyng / The kynge of ffraunce, the kynge of Eng- 12 lond, and the kynge of Scottes, mette with hir, & brought hir to hir logging. And whan she was alight, and they departed / the Turke shewed vnto hir the cause of hir sendyng for / and howe he ¹was become cristen / and How, if she wold Become cristen, he had 16 maried hir to right a goodly Prince, & a mighti, whiche was the kynge of Englund / But the first day, the seconde, & the third after, coude he never turne his suster / and whan he sawe it wold no bettir be, he came to the Emperour and to the kyng of ffraunce, the 20 kynge of Englund & the kynge of Scottes, and tolde them / 'how in no wise his suster and he coude accorde'; & tolde them what answers she made him / The kynge of Englund,—that be this tyme was right amorous, & supprised with hir grete beaute,—whan he 24 herd thise tidynges was right sorowfuſt / and channged colour & countenaunce so fer forth, that he had not a word to speke. This espied wele bothe themperour and the kynge of ffraunce / and than seide the kynge of ffraunce / "brynge hir to the Emperesse, to be 28 accompanied with the ladies here, to se if they be of any grettir power to chaunge hir than ye / and by this meane, may she haue some acqueyntaunce of my brother, the kyng of Englund; whiche, perauenture, may so turne hir hert, that she shal pray you of that 32 ye now pray hir." Themperour and alle they lough / The Turke saide, 'and he might by any meane, he wolde bringe hir to the Daunces to the ladies' / he did so moche, that aftir soper he brought hir. And whan she sawe so grete assemble of Princis & princesses, 36 she meruailed gretly, thinkyng she sawe never so good a sight / She salewed the Emperour and themperesse / and alle the ladies / and alle the kynges and princis / than began the daunces / where she avised wele the kynge of Englund, & thought him right a 40

Sultan
Charles' beautiful Sister

[¹ leaf 119]

refuses, at first, to give up her Faith and marry King Humphrey of England,

who is very much in love with her,

goodly knight / and a wele assured ; and there herd she y-nough ^{tho' she thinks him a goodly man.} rehersed of his noblesse & good maners. The ladies escorted hir a-
part to leve hir lawe / & eche seide the best they coude / but in no
wise counde they conuerte hir / Thus departed she to hir logging,
whan tyme was / sone aftir, came hir brothir vnto bir / and asked hir
' how she liked the company that she had seen that night.' she said,
" right wele " / he asked hir ' how she liked the kynge of Englond ' /
and her hert serued hir vnto him / she saide ' right wele, if she ^{The Sultan's Sister wants to keep her own Faith.} might kepe hir owne feith ' / othir answeres counde he noon gete of
hir / Thus departed they ; and she went to bedde that night ; [then] thought she of this goodly company she had seyne. ^[1 lf. 119, b.k.] The kynge
of Englond was not forgoten / the more she remembred him, the
bettir she liked him / hou-be-it her herte coude not agree for him,
nor noon othir, to leve hir feith / The kynge of Englond, on the
tothir side, the oftener he sawe hir, the more he loued hir / and
supposed wele in his mynde that he coude not bringe his purpose
aboute / wherfore he thought best / to depart. And on the morowe,
came vn-to the kynge of ffraunce, and tolde him his entent / The
kynge of ffraunce counseld him yit to abide / and went hir self to
the Turke, and tolde him / " ye ar likly to lese here the kynge of
Englond, for he wilt departe / for he thinkith his abidyng here
serueth him of noughe / and so thinke y also / ffor thinke ye he is
a man to be kepte so long in speche? me semeth it is wele doo, ye
go to your suster to vndirstonde hir wille / and to take of hir this
night a ferme answer / ffor it is tyme that he be answerd one way
or othir " / " By my trouthe," seide the Turke, " it is not in my
defaute / that he is so long vnanswert ; but to-morowe y shalt telle
you vttirly hir will " / Aftir this, the Turke departed, and came to
his suster, and tolde hir, " I most this night telle a playne answer
of your entent / The kynge of ffraunce, the kynge of Englond, and
othir princis that be in this towne, wille departe / for the good wille
they haue vnto you and me / they haue longe kepte them here ;
wherfore me thinkith ye deale meruailously / But y pray you now, ^{The Sultan Charles presses his Sister for a favourable answer to K. Humphrey.} say at ones howe ye wille be demeaned / whethir ye wille be agreeable
to their desire and myne ; or ellis y shalt lete them departe / and
thanke them of their good wille they haue shewed me / how be it, if
they thus departe / by you shalt y lese the moost sure & speciale
frendes y haue in this world." whan his Suster herd him thus sey /
she knewe wele of force she most discouere hir entente touchyng
his alliaunce / and was so surprised that she wist not what to say /

The Sultan's
Sister is in
great doubt.

She thought, 'if she renaide not hir feith, she shold displease hir brother / and also put him in grete daunger, & losse of his frendes' / She thought also, 'if she shold leve hir feith / and take a newe, what iubarde that shold be vnto hir soule.' Thus was she a grete while 4 without speche. hir brothir presyd sore on hir alway to haue an

[¹ leaf 120] answe / And at the laste she ¹said, "y am in a sorowfulle case / ffor ye, that be my souerain Lorde and brother, say / if y accomplitsh not your pleasir / y shalt cause your grete iubarde / and perauenture 8 your destruccion / and on that othir side / yf y renounce my feithe / what shal than befall of my soule" / "Be my feith," seide the Turke, "I take the perel therof on me" / "Than," quoth she,

^{She asks for 2 days' grace.} "y pray you respite me for ij. daies" / The Turke in no wise durst 12 graunte hit, til he hadde spoken with the kynge of ffraunce / Than went the kynge of ffraunce and he, to the kynge of Englund for this respite / and he was therto agreeable, trustyng vpon a good answe.

On the morowe, the Turke toke ij. or iij. notable clerkis, & went to 16 his suster, and made them to shewe hir oure feith / and they exorted hir in suche wise that she was agreeable to be cristened / and the same night was she cristened by the Emperesse and the quene of ffraunce. Aftir that she was cristened, she came to se the Emperour, 20 & was there with the ladies til she was maried / and the thridde day after, was the kynge of Englund and she maried to gedir with grete solempnite and Ioie.

^{She is con-}
^{verted by}
^{Christian}
^{Clerks,}

^{and marries}
^{K. Hum-}
^{phrey of}
^{England.}

^{The Sultan's}
^{subjects}

^{require only}
^{that they}
^{may keep}
^{their old}
^{Faith.}

Now shal y telle you of the messangers that were sent in-to 24 the Turkes land: they did their deuoirs, so that thestates were assembled, and redde the letters of alle the Princes. and whan they knewe the tidynges, that their lord had taken the cristenn feith / they were right sory / how-be-it they durst not make 28 no besinesse ageinst him / for the drede they had of the promyses that alle thise princes had made vnto him / wherfore, of comon assent, they made a lettir to the Emperour and to the Turke, & to alle the princes that were there / puttyng them in knowlache / that, 'as for 32 the chaunge of his feith, they remitted that [to] his conscience ; they were content to obey him on suche condiccion, that noon shold be constreyned to leve his feith / for that wold they neuer do' / whan the messangers came agein, the Emperour and alle the kynges and 36 princis were wele content with their message. The suretees were taken bitwene them / Alle this done & performed, euery prince toke hede to his owne besinesse / The kynge of ffraunce desired moche to go in-to his Realme. The Turke desired to mary his wif / The 40

kynge of Scottes in like wise / wherfore euyer man wold departe
 from the Emperour / On a day, at good leiser, they came to the
 1 Emperour / and shewed him their desire; wherfore he was right [^{1 ff. 120, bk.}]
 4 sory / but he knewe wele it most nedes be so. Than asked he
 what they wold do. The kynge of Englund spake first, & seid <sup>The large
Sicilian
gathering is
to break up.</sup>
 he had promysed his ij. Sustres in mariage, as he knewe wele /
 whiche he wold fayne perfourme. Themperour desired the kyng
 8 of Englund & the kyng of Scottes, to pray the kynge of ffraunce to
 abide stille with him / “fforsothe,” saide the kynge, “sith my first
 departyng oute of ffraunce to come in-to the werres of Sizile, sawe
 y not my lady my moder” / “fforsothe,” saide themperour, “ye
 12 haue grete reason than to se hir” / The kyng of Englund than
 besought the kyng of ffraunce to be at the mariage of his ij.
 Sustirs / “fforsothe,” seide the kyng of ffraunce, “I shal, with right
 good wille.” Themperour, hering alle thise apointementes, saide :
 16 “trewly, y hold my lond by god & you iij.; and therfore, my sone,
 y wille first go with you in-to your Realme / & fro thens in-to the
 Realme of Englund, to the mariage of the kinges Susters; & so come
 home thorugh the Realme of Scotland, & conduyte the yong Quene;
 20 & fro thens come hider agein, where y shalt ende the remenaunt of
 my daies.” This conclusion was taken bitwene him, the Turke, &
 the kynges, & the Duc of Burgoigne. Than euyer man arded
 him to departe; and alle on a day departed they. The kynge of
 24 Englund, his wif, & the Turke, departid to Englund / The king of <sup>The King
and Queen
of England,
and the
Sultan, go
to England;</sup>
 Scottes in-to Scotland / Themperour, & the kyng of ffraunce & their
 wifes, went in-to ffraunce / Now behoueth it to reherce how euyer
 man sped his Iournay. [*Illumination: Emperor, French King, &c. riding off.*] <sup>K. David to
Scotland;
the rest to
France.</sup>

28 **F**irst shalle we speke of the kynge of ffraunce / At his depart-
 ing, he sent to assertayne the Realme of ffraunce, & specially
 vnto his moder, of his comyng, & the trouthe of alle his for-
 tune / And whan the messangers came there / it can not be writen,
 32 the ioie that was than in the Realme of ffraunce. But ouir alle othir
 this disconsolate moder, the Quene of ffraunce, was glad whan she <sup>The Queen
Dowager of
France</sup>
 herd tidynges of hir right dere sone / Hou-be-it, she toke displeasir
 that he had be in ffraunce, & not spoken with hir. And whan she
 36 first herd ²tidinges of his comyng, she said / “Allas, my childe! if [^{2 leaf 121}]
 thi good ffadir' had knownen the alyve, he had yit lyued / or ellis
 departid out of this world more at his ease / But now, do god by <sup>longs to see
her Son be-
fore she dies.</sup>
 me his pleasir; so that ones I might se the or y dye” / Such
 40 wordes saide the good olde Quene of ffraunce, moder to the kyng /

Ouir alle the realme they range belles & made processions, thankynge god of his grete grace ; for thei never trusted to haue hadde the ioie of presence of their yong king / fulle grete ioie had thei also of his

King Philip,
with his
Queen and
the Em-
peror, enters
France,

mariage, & of the good renoune of their yong Quene / This meane 4

tyme, came themperour & the kinge of ffrance into the Realme / & at their first entryng, ther mette them many estates & moche people.

& whan he came amonges the people, they cried " Nowelt " with an high voice, yelding thank to god on their knees, ioyning their 8 handes to hevinwarde / whan the Emperor & his wif sawe in his

Realme suche people in suche estate, their hertes were alle renewed with ioie. Aftir, came the nobles, in the moost & best biseyn com-

The clergy

pany that was seen there bifore. There was the clergie without 12

nombre, solempnely & honourably set in ordre, whiche, next the comon people, salewed the kyng, preysyng god of his agein-comyng,

whiche was not without wepyng / Than came the noble folkes, accompanied as is bifore reherced / and did vnto him their 16

reuerences / and by one of them were the wordes saide bifore them alle, a grete processe / preisyng god of his retourne / grete was the

preise there. And at the entryng of the Towne, the stretes were hanged / before theire houses were the ladies & gentilwommen / 20

burghes & maydens; grete was the ioie there. The processions were alwey bifore the kyng / And the Emperor and he alighted

at the chief chirche / and so did the ladies, to praise and thanke god. Aftirwarde the kyng conueyed themperour to his loggyng / 24

and than retourned to his owne. The towne made to the kyng & the Quene grete presentes ; & so they did to themperour & them-

presse. Thus was the kinge & themperour receyued in every place they came to in the Realme / and whan the Emperor came to 28

Paryce, he and his folkes alle meruailed of the gret Richesse they sawe there / the kynge brought him to the palice / where as the

Quene his moder, gretly accompanied with ladies & gentilwommen, mette with themperour & themperesse. But whan she sawe hir 32

sone, she had no power to susteyne hir-self / for the ioie she had / and forthwith fel in swoune, wherof themperour & themperesse

[l. 121, bk.]

were right so¹ rowfulle / but ouir alle othir, the king was moost sory / & brought þe Themperour to his chambre, & forthwith went to his 36

moder, whiche he fonde somwhat recouerd. & whan he saw hir, he kneeled downe, and fulle humbly axed hir mercy / and besought hir /

that it pleased hir to take som Payne to make chere to themperesse & to hir doughtir / The quene, that was right feble, saide vnto him / 40

to his folks' joy.

and nobles greet them;

so do the burgesses and maidens.

They give presents to the King.

His Mother swoons for joy on seeing him.

“ my sone, sith that y hane seen you a lyve bifore my dethe, I am now content that god do by me as it pleasith him / Neuirtheles, I shal make the best chere y can ; but trewly my lymmes may not
4 yit susteyne me ; wherfore y pray you sende for my faire doughtir,
your wif, that y may se hir ” / and whan she behelde hir, she thought
hir the fairest creature that euir she sawe / & made as moche of hir
as she coude / At night, the Emperour and themperesse supped in
8 their chambre. The king & the Quene supped with his modir / whiche King Philip
might not ete that soper tyme, for ioie she had of them bothe / and his
Queen sup
That night, were brought grete presentes by them of Parice / b.^othe
to the Thumperour & to Themperesse / & to the kynge & to the
12 Quene / &, whan tyme was, alle men went to rest / til on the morow /
they rose vp at good tyme, & herd diuine seruice / and than went
to dyner / And whan they had dyned / the Iustes began / It seemed Jousts begin.
that tyme that alle the world was in ioie / This feste endured the The Festival
16 space of an hole moneth. The olde Quene reioysed hir so now, that lasts a
she put oute of mynde alle passed sorowes / Now came the tyme month.
that they most depart, to go the mariage in Englund. The kinge
led with him his moder, to cause hir take som disport & ioie / for
20 longe tyme had she be without any / Thumperour, thorughout alle
the Realme, was fested in euery Cite, and in euery grete princes
house / that lay in his way / til he came to the departyng out of
ffraunce / where as he was as honourably conduyted, as he was
24 receyued at his first comyng. Now passeth he the see / & landid The King
at Dover / where as the kynge of Englund, and his wif, and the and Queen of
Turke, resceyued them with grete honour ; & with the Quene were France land
the kynges ij. Susters / that were right faire / The kyng of Scottes
28 was not yit come / but he taried not long aftir / ffor the day of his
mariage was set or he went out of Sizile. There resceyued the
kyng of Englund, Thumperour and Themperesse, the kyng of
ffraunce, & the ij. Quenes with grete honour / and, as long as they
32 were in the Realme, wold suffre them, nor noon of them, to pay for
no thing that they spent / Then rode ¹they til they came to [1 leaf 122]
London ; and in euery place Thumperour and his company wel- and ride to
comed, as belonged to their estates. And whan they came to
36 London, The kyng of ffraunce was inly glad to se the richeſſe and
estate that he sawe there / & how nobly & honourably Thumperour
was resceyued ther. Sone aftir their comyng, came the kyng of
Scottes, whiche was mette with / by the kynges & princes that were
40 in the Towne, and was right highly & honourably resceyued. The

K. Hum-
phrey's
Sisters marry
to the Sultan
and the King
of Scotland.
The Marriage
Festival lasts
15 days.

day came, that the Turke and the kynge of Scottes shold be maried
to the kynge of Englondes susters / A meruailous grete feste there
was, and a riche & a wele serued / The Iustes & festes were grete by
many daies. The feste endured xv. daies / Than departed them- 4
perour & the kyng of ffraunce. The princes & the lordes of
Englond, that had lefte their childre with the kynge whan he
departid fro his fadir / made a grete request vnto the Turke / that
there might be a serche thorugh his land, if any of their childre 8
were lyving / sayng that they wold with right good wille pay their
fynaunce / The kyng of Englond required him right hertly for the
same. The Turke promysed him to do asmoche as was possible
therin / The Emperour, that knewe wele that alle his conquest and 12
good fortune was comen him, next goddes helpe, by the thre kynges
present, and for the loue that he had to the kyng of Englond, he
saide to the Turke / “the aliaunce that ye haue with the kyng of
Englond, shalt make you nowe to recouere the places that y haue 16
within your land / ffor now ye be his brothir, y yelde and yeue
vnto you them freely agein / wherfore say gramersey to your brothir.”
The Turke right humbly thankid the Emperour, and so did the
kyng of Englond also / Nowe cometh the tyme of Themperours 20
departyng / The kyng of Scottes besought him to take his way
thorugh Scotland / and besought his ij. felawes that they wold
conduyte the Emperour thider / and desired the Turke in like wise,
Themperour and alle thise kynges agreed to the kynges of Scottes 24
request / Thus departed they fro londone / and til they were out of
the Realme / the kinge of Englond wold not lete them be chargid
with nothing that they toke / And whan they came in-to Scotland,
they were there right wele and honourably resceyued, & gretly 28
fested ouir alle the Realme / Thus were they thre wekis in passing
thorugh the Realme. And many grete festis & Tournais / And
whan the Emperour saw thise iij. seruautes, that so long had
serued ¹him / he was right ioifult of their estate & puissance / and 32
thought his doughter wele vred / so did he the Realme of Sizile, &
desired no thinge so moche / as to se some childre of his doughtir
bifore his dethe / god graunted his request / for he sawe y-nough
come of hir, as faire childre as euer were borne / whiche did aftir, 36
grete thinges, as men may finde in Stories of ffraunce. There
departed he & his ioifult company / at whiche departyng was
remembred more sorow than ioie / whan the Emperour shold say
fare wele, he coude not speke of a grete while; but at last, whan 40

The Emperor
promises to
give back to
the Sultan
the Turkish
towns lie
took (p. 155).

The Emperor
and the Kings
of France and
England visit
Scotland.

[¹ lf. 122, bk.]

The Emper-
ror's daugh-
ter, Queen
Isolante, bears
many fair
children.

he might speke, he saide that, daies of his lyve, had he never be so long to-gedir in ioie & wele / euery man toke leve of him / And whan his faire doughtir sholde take hir leve of him / he toke hir
4 in his armes, and stode so a long while, & nouther of them coude speke a worde / And whan the kynge of ffrance saw that / he made the departyng / and said to themperour / that at any tyme that it pleaseid him, she shold come se him / than brought he hir to
8 the Emperesse / and nouther of them coude wele loke on othir for wepyng. Than departed the kyng them, like as he had done themperour and hir. Than went she in-to hir chambre, accompanied
12 with many ladies & gentilwomen / Then the Emperour & them-
16 peresse departed / and the Turke and his wif in his company / The king of ffrance, Englond, and of Scottes, conveied Themperour, & than toke their leve / at whiche departyng was grete sorowe; and eche embraced othir ful louyngly. Whan they were departed,
20 Thumperour, the Turke, and feraunt, kepte their streight course in-
24 to Sizile / and passed forth the tyme with talkyng of suche aventures as they had seen in their daies / & sped so wele that they came in-
28 to Sizile / the Turke taried there but litil / but went home in-to
32 his owne Cuntry, and his wif with him / where he was right worship-
fully resceyued, for dred of the two kynges that he was alied with /
Than made he grete serche thorugh alle the Realme for the childre
of Englond, and founde the moost parts of them, so that ther
lakked not passyng two / Than made he them to be bayned, and
kepte aswele as they coude / til they were agein in their strengthe
and colour. than horsed he eche one of them, and apointed them in
the best wise, and sent them in-to Englond, without payng of any
raunsom / and sent letters vnto his brother of Englond, & ¹this
present withall / wherof the kyng was ioifult as he might be / and
gretely thanked the Turke / and sent him agein grete giftes. Now
were the fadirs & the modirs in grete ioie, that hadde agein their
children.

THe kyng of ffrance, aftir the departyng of Themperour,
abode there but a while / and the night before his departyng,
supped alle thise iij. kynges to-gedre, & there made assur-
36 aunce & promesse, eche to othir / that never noon of them shold
faile othir; but that eche shold loue othir as brethern, and eche take
othirs quarel as his owne. On the morowe, departed the kyng of ffrance / the kyng of Englond & the kyng of Scottes conneied
40 him / and at the departing there was many a sorowfull embrac-

The Emperor
and his
Empress

return to
Sicily.

The Sultan
and his
English wife
go back to
Turkey,

set free all
the English
children
there, and
send them
home.

[1 leaf 123]

The Kings of
France and
England quit
Scotland.

yng / for ful glad wold they haue ben to haue contynued the remenaunt of their lyves to-gedre, if it might so be / but eche of them was of suche estate / that their besinesse and charge was suche / that thei might not contynue to gedre, which sore for-
4
The King
and Queen
of France go
thro' Bruges
to France.
 thought them alle / whan the kynge of ffraunce, the Quene, & their company were shipped / the wynde serued them so wele / that within litil while they landed at Scluse. The Erle of fflaudres herd of his comyng, and met with him there / and made him grete 8
 chere & feest / and so forth brought him to Bruggys / and there made him alle the chere that was possible vnto him / The kynge, at his departyng, gaf him grete giftes / And whan the kynge came in to ffraunce / he forgate not his good Hoste at Tolet in Spayne / nor 12
 his Nevewe, nor his wif, that longe had logged him / for he thought it was reason, now he was of suche estate & power, to remembre them that had so moche done for him / Wherfore he sent vnto them, assertaynyng them who he was that they had logged, praing them 16
 alle to come vnto him / And whan they spake with the messanger / & had verrily vndirstande his message / they were alle suprised with ioie / and in alle haste possible arredied them to go vnto the kinge / whiche, at their comynge, made them passing grete chere / 20
 and thanked them of the grete goodnesse they had shewed him in his disease / and gaf vnto eche of them / of land / possessions and offices, y-nough for them, and those that shold come of them, to lyve
[¶ lf. 123, bk.] alway in honour / Aftir thise tidynges thus done,¹ the olde Quene 24
 of ffraunce contynued the remenaunt of her daies with grete ioie in goode & perfit lif. The Duc of Burgoigne coude not departe from his Nevewe / The kinge, & the Quene his wif, contynued to-gedre many yeres / & eche loued othir aswele as was possible / and serued, 28
 loued, & dred god, helde the Realme alle their lif in grete Iustice, peas, & tranquillite, and had children to their pleasir / The kynge of Scottes departed from the kynge of Englond, and brought his wif home in-to Scotland / and bothe the king of Englond, and he, & 32
 their wyues, contynued in many yeres to-geder / & had children, eche of them, suche as they were aftir right ioyfullle of / and helde their Reaume in grete Iustice & peas / and their children contynued in the same aftir their daies, hauyng moo Reaumes to governe than 36
 their fadirs had / wherof this storie makith noo mencion. But y suppose the Cronykells of the Reaume reherceth the noblesse of them / Thumperour lyved but a while aftir / Than felle the Reaume of Sizile to the kynge of ffraunce, by reason of his wif / wherof he 40

K. Philip
rewards his
old Host at
Toledo.

King David
and his
English
Queen go
home to
Scotland,
have chil-
dren, and
live happily.

The Emperor
dies, and
Sicily falls

toke the possession. The Turke helde fermely the lawes of Ihesu to King Philip of France.
criste / and many of his Reaume / But the moost part wold neuir
leve their feith / but he lyued not long aftir / nor neuer hadde childe
4 by his wif / & aftir his dethe, was neuer goddis [lawe] kepte nor
dred in that Cuntry / wherfore she went in-to Englond ageiu / and The Sultan's English widow comes home to England.
contynued the Remenaunt of hir lif with hir brothir.

Thus endith this Boke, whiche hath ben translated with peyne,
8 for the length of tyme sith alle thise thinges felle. And vndir the
Boke was written,

Si fortuna tonat, caueto mergi.
Si fortuna iuuat, caueto tolli.¹

¹ A much later hand has written above these 2 verses, 4 others as prose :—

“ by faith, we please the lord /
by faith, we are set free /
by faith we work the will of god,
faith will not idell bee.”

Note to page 136, line 5.

Poo or Peacock.—In the 14th century Chanson de geste of the *Vœux du Paon* (MS. Addit. Brit. Mus. 16,956, copied from a MS. No. 6985 (?) in the National Library at Paris: P. Paris *Manuscrits François* iii. 106, A.D. 1840), “Porrus shoots the peacock (73 b.); it is served up at table, and Cassamus calls on all the knights to make their vows upon it (f. 74 b). ‘Elyot,’ a damsel of high degree, in the service of Fezome (daughter of Godifer), carries it round; the vows are made, and the peacock is eaten (ff. 75-82 b).” Ward’s *Catalog of Romances in Brit. Mus.* i. 147.

GLOSSARY.

BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN.

- A, *interj.* ah! 8/18, 34.
 A, *pron.* he, 63/6, 109/7, 111/9.
 A, *rb.* have, 4/6, 69/28.
 Abielde, *rb. t.* habiled, dressed, 38/22;
 abiled, *pp.* 50/28; abile, *inf.* 38/22.
 Abused, *rb.* ill-used, 16/34.
 Accompany, *rb.* take associates to, 180/
 39.
 Anated, *pp.* dismayed, overcome, 66/
 34. See *Mate*.
 Amegred, *pp.* emaciated, 9/36. Fr.
 amaigrir.
 Amenysht, *pp.* diminished, 4/9.
 Amonest, *rb.* admonish, warn, 5/12.
 O.Fr. *admonester*.
 And, *conj.* if, 7/7, 64/14.
 Anoon, *adv.* anon, 75/30.
 Armee, *sb.* army, 40/5. Fr. *armée*.
 See *Naree*.
 Arnes, *sb.* do arms, fight, 61/11, 62/5.
 Fr. *faire armes*.
 Arowblast, *sb.* arblast, cross-bow, 42/
 30.
 Artrye, *sb.* artillery, 40/38; Arthery,
 76/30.
 Arynail, *sb.* arrival, landing-place, 41/
 10.
 As and, as if, 13/37.
 Ascried, *rb.* challenged, 97/21.
 Asserteyne, *vb.* inform, 4/11, 38/3.
 Assured, *pp.* trained, 34/24, 193/18, 199/
 1. Comp. Fr. *assurer un oiseau*, i. e.
 a hawk, and also see *Ensured*. As-
 surance is a *sine quā non* of breeding :
 —¹ Be bold, be bold, in everything be
 bold, Be not too bold.
 Auenture, *sb.* hazard, peril, 3/9, 66/12.
 Aught, *rb.* owed, 94/4.
 Ayenst, *prep.* a. hym, before him, on his
 entry, 19/14.
- Bargette, *sb.* small barge, 41/16. O.Fr.
 bargette.
 Be, *prep.* by, be than = by the time that,
 68/27.
 Beaumes, *sb.* trumpets, 75/8.
 Belil, *rb.* befell, 2/23.
 Behelde, *rb.* looked, desired, 33/38.
 Belefte, *pp.* left, 13/31; bifelte, 165/39.
 Bien venu, *sb.* welcome, 131/35. Fr.
 bien-revenue.
 Boorde, *sb.* table, 128/34, 132/13.
 Brake, *rb. b.* their embusshementes,
 comp. break cover, 30/37.
 Brayng, *sb.* groaning, 12/15.
 But, unless, 168/14; but yif, but if, un-
 less, 168/8.
 By & by, at once, 167/39.
- Castell, *sb.* somer Castells, 44/30. Per-
 haps read ‘fore C’.
 Ceason, *sb.* season, 14/26, 21/20.
 Chapelet, *sb.* chaplet of beads: comp.
 Le chapelet se défile (of people falling
 away), 25/1.
 Chase, *rb.* chose, 68/3.
 Chaunge, *rb. t.* he channged him,
 changed his clothes, 178/35.
 Chesse, *sb.* chess, 10/19.
 Chierte, *sb.* affection, 162/7. O.Fr. *chierté*.
 Cloos, *adj.* close, 30/6.
 Condite, *pp.* conducted, 94/23; condited,
 94/14; condnyte, *rb.* conduct, manage,
 9/5; *pp.* 72/9.
 Conduyt, *sb.* conduct, charge, 7/12.
 Costeyfe, *rb.*? directed themselves, as
 mariners did by the coast, 49/1.
 Costeyrg, steering, 48/39. Fr. *côteoyer*.
 O.Fr. *côteier*.
 Credence, *sb.* credentials, 22/18, 24/12,
 98/31.

- Cure, *sb.* yn e., careful, 16/7.
Cured, *pp.* cared for, 8/26.
Currour, *sb.* seout, 15/9, 21/26. Fr. *courour*.
- Daies of my lif, all the days of my life, 159/33.
- Damageous, *adj.* injurious, 77/19. O.Fr. *damajos*.
- Dannger, *sb.* hane him . . . in d. = have him at his mercy, 102/5, 128/31.
- Dedly, *adv.* in a deadly way, 169/38.
- Demaunde, *vb.* it is no d. = it is no question, 72/14.
- Departir, *sb.* departure, 27/37.
- Depnesse, *sb.* deepness, depth, 41/17.
- Despense, *sb.* expense, 26/21; dispence, 89/33.
- Despouren, ill off (translated disprveyed on p. 19), 9/24, 19/11. Fr. *dépourru*.
- Diffended, *vb.* prevented, 146/11.
- Differred, *pp.* parted from, 102/5.
- Diligence, *sb.* pains, duty, 43/9, 14.
- Discomfortable, *adj.* uncomfortable, 31/38.
- Discomfortid, *pp.* afflicted, 11/38. Fr. *déconforté*.
- Disherite, *pp.* deprived of his inheritance, 1/17.
- Dispene, *vb.* spend, 101/23.
- Dispurementee, *sb.* disprveyance, destitution, lack (of children), 25/34.
- Dispurnaide, *adj.* disprveyed, unprovided, 4/19, 19/9.
- Doket, *sb.* dueat, six shillings and eight pence, 108/6.
- Doule, *sb.* dole, grief, 77/37. Fr. *deuil*.
- Draught, *sb.* shot, range of a weapon, 42/30, 44/33.
- Dredefulle, *adj.* dreadful, full of fear, 152/24.
- Dressid, *pp.* prepared, 164/1.
- Dressith, *vb.* applieith, turneith, 81/3.
- Dyamant, *sb.* diamond, 163/19. Fr. *diamant*.
- Elegged, *pp.* alleged, 100/22.
- Embandon, *vb.* abandon, 88/13.
- Emplioede, *vb.* applied to, continued, 13/40.
- Enclosed, *pp.* shut up, straitened, 151/11.
- Enewred, *pp.* injured, hardened, 2/30.
- Eulargissing, *sb.* enlargement, release, 102/1.
- Enquerre, *sb.* enquiry, 63/22. O.Fr. *enquerre*.
- Ensured, *pp.* trained, 10/18. See *Assured*.
- Entend, *vb.* listen to, attend to, 12/12. Fr. *entendre*.
- Entremete, *vb.* meddle, 7/3. Fr. *s'entre-mettre*.
- Entreprise, *vb.* undertake, 9/10; entre-prynse, 4/22, 6/38.
- Erste, *adv.* noon erste, not sooner, 19/18.
- Escape, *vb.* escaped, 46/9, 58/27.
- Eurons, *adj.* fortunate, happy, 35/4, 38/26: ewrous, 101/2. Fr. *heureux*.
- Ewred, *adj.* destined, fortuned, 62/23.
- Feliship, *sb.* escort, company of troops, band, 28/23, 31/33, 45/6.
- Feuyrer, *sb.* February, 9/20, 27/37. Fr. *février*.
- Fille, *vb.* fell, 143/40.
- Fleer, *sb.* fugitive, 149/7.
- Florence, *sb.* florin (Sicilian florin is 2s. 6d.), 155/19.
- Forerider, *sb.* advanced rider, 14/33; for-rider, 31/34.
- Fors, no fors = no matter, 171/27. Fr. *force*.
- Fortrauailed, *adj.* tired out, 31/19.
- Fote, *sb.* foot (Proverb), 29/5.
- Fronters, *sb.* frontiers, 28/32.
- Fruss, *sb.* burst, 15/27. O.Fr. *froisser*.
- Fynannee, *sb.* ransom (used also in Romance of *Partenay*, l. 1853), 20/39, 93/13, 94/6, 95/11.
- Fyne, *sb.* end, 8/17. Fr. *fin*.
- Gabbid, *pp.* talked idly, lied, 32/12. Comp. Fr. *gaber*.
- Golde, *sb.* gold, 18/24; goold, 13/21.
- Gonne shott, gunshot, 42/33; gownes, guns, 75/34.
- Grehounde, *sb.* greyhound, 30/30.
- Gressith, *vb.* grazeth, 112/13.
- Half, *sb.* at the lest h. = at least, 92/26. Before 'half' (92/8), words were probably left out by the MS. copyist.
- Hardies, *sb.* boldness, 23/30. Fr. *hardi-esse*.
- Herbegeour, *sb.* harbinger, marshal, 178/3; herbeior, 53/31.
- Hoolde, *vb.* hold, 51/10.
- Hon . . . someuer, howsoever, 8/15.
- Humbles, *sb.* humblesse, humility, 35/39.

- Induce, *vb.* introduce, induct, 2/16.
 Infortune, *sb.* misfortune, 1/23, 45/37.
 Fr. *infortune*.
 Iomrney, *sb.* battle, fight, 15/31, 32/29.
 Fr. *journée*.
 Iubarde, *sb.* jeopardy, 78/13; imbardy, 169/25.
 Iubarde, *vb.* jeopard, 171/26.
- Libores, *sb.* labourers, ? ‘laboreres,’ 97/
 33, 102/15.
- Large, *adj.* bountiful, free-handed, 164/
 15; a large half houre = a full h. h., 33/27.
- Large, at their = at large, 163/2.
- Lawe, *sb.* faith, 132/9.
- Leest, *adv.* least, 17/29.
- Lette, *vb.* hinder, prevent, 70/18.
- Lene, *sb.* leave, haue l. = have taken l., 162/11; liberty to go, 162/31.
- Lene, *vb.* leave, 29/27; leneth, *imp.*
 leave off, 119/16; leue of, leave off, 119/32.
- Lene, *vb.* live, 29/28; lenyth, liveth, 11/39.
- Leve, *vb.* believe, 151/22.
- Loos, *sb.* praise, 17/23, 117/36. Fr. *los*.
- Lyuerey, *sb.* delivery, 53/6.
- Make, *sb.* mate, 63/8.
- Male-enrus, *adj.* unhappy, unlucky, 60/
 17. Fr. *malheureux*, O.Fr. *maleurens*.
- Malyneolions, *adj.* melancholy, 79/16.
 O.Fr. *melancolieus*.
- Maner, *sb.* manner (manners), politeness, 33/8; manere, 29/1; the manere, 36/
 18. Fr. *manière*.
- Marchers, *sb.* lords of the marches, 6/9.
- Marches, *sb.* borders, 6/37, 9/26.
- Mate, *adv.* mortified, downcast, 79/22.
 Fr. *mate*.
- Mangre, *sb.* ill-will, 81/12, 180/29. Fr.
 mangré, mal gré.
- Mette, *vb.* meet, 173/33; met, 179/34.
- Meyne, *sb.* attendants, household, 88/7.
 O.Fr. *maisnée, meyné*.
- Mischief, *sb.* mishap, at a m., in evil
 plight, 52/28. O.Fr. *meschief*.
- Moorning, *vb.* mourning, 7/26.
- Moost, *adv.* most, 13/28, 30.
- Most, *vb.* must, 21/19.
- Muster, *sb.* make his musters (of knights),
 watch his arms, 156/24.
- Mysbleue, *sb.* disbelief, heresy, 13/7.
- Navee, *sb.* navy, 40/13. O.Fr. *narie*.
- Neuirles, nevertheless, 65/40.
- Noblè, nobley, *sb.* magnificence, dignity,
 68/5, 179/21.
- Non, *sb.* noon, 92/5.
- Noonpareil, nonpareil, matchless, 55/28.
- Nowell, cry (Nowell is also used by
 Chaucer), 192/23. Fr. *crier noël*, cry
 Christmas (used for a wished-for
 thing), and much like ‘Hurrah.’
- Obeisancee, *sh.* obedience, 4/22.
- Of, *adv.* off, 2/36, 53/2.
- Of, *prep.* for, like Fr. *de*, 35/33.
- On, *prep.* used like Fr. *sur*, conquer
 on . . ., 72/11.
- Ordeyned, *pp.* cared, prescribed for,
 looked to, 19/12.
- Other, *vb.* swear, 163/2.
- Ouirthrewe, *vb.* was overthrown, 16/18.
 See also *Conquest of Ireland*, 62/21.
- Ont, *vb.* get out, 6/22.
- Pame, *sb.* tennis, 37/25. Fr. *pamme*.
- Party, *sb.* game, match, 67/7. Fr. *partie*,
 tenir la partie.
- Pavis, *sb.* pl. large shields for covering
 body, 52/12. Fr. *pavoirs*.
- Peas, *sb.* peace, 4/3; pees, 1/7. O.Fr.
 pais.
- Pesaut, *adj.* weighty, 25/8. Fr. *pesant*.
- Perdition, *sb.* destruction, 68/32.
- Perdurable, *adj.* everlasting, eternal, 7/
 32. Fr. *perdurable*.
- Peyne, *sb.* pain, trouble, work, 69/7.
- Pleasir, *sb.* pleasure, 6/6, 17/33. Fr.
 plaisir.
- Point, *sb.* break, 59/28, 67/13. Fr. *point
 du jour*.
- Poo, *sb.* peacock, 136/5, etc.
- Premener, *sb.* promoter, 6/38.
- Purcenantes, *sb.* pursnivants, 32/28.
- Recomfort, *sb.* comfort, 11/28.
- Recomfort, *vb.* comfort, 12/8.
- Reconerir, *sb.* recovery, 84/39, 86/13.
- Recoured, *pp.* recovered, 22/22.
- Recured, *pp.* recovered, made their way
 back, 124/29.
- Redeles, *adj.* senseless, 70/30.
- Reise, *vb.* raise, levy, 91/14.
- Renay, *vb.* deny, 102/14; rennaye, 158/
 22. Fr. *renier*, Lat. *renegare*.
- Renome, renone, *sb.* renown, 4/1, 159/22.
 Fr. *renom*.
- Renomee, *sb.* renown, 98/25. Fr. *ren-
 nommée*.

- Rescous, *sb.* rescue, 125/23; rescouse, 125/5; rescuse, 46/1, 69/7. O.Fr. *rescouze*.
- Resort, *vb.* retire, 157/15; resorted, returned, 76/28.
- Ressplendisshied, *vb. int.* glittered, 123/8. Fr. *resplendir*.
- Retourned, *vb. t.* turned, 16/16. Fr. *retourner*.
- Roode, *vb.* rode, 75/33.
- Rought, *vb.* recked, 155/12.
- Russet, *vb.* ? rushed, 60/10.
- Ryuage, *sb.* beach, shore, 40/16. Fr. *rivage*.
- Sad, *adj.* sober, 24/18.
- Sacred, *pp.* consecrated, 86/36. Fr. *sacré*.
- Salowed, *vb.* saluted, 104/36. Fr. *saluer*.
- Sauffconde, *sb.* safe conduct, 93/40. Fr. *saufconduit*.
- Saute, *sb.* assault, 52/12.
- Sawe, *prep.* save, except, 87/25.
- Scentes, *sb.* florins (see p. 72), 71/14. Fr. *écu*, so called from the shield of arms on it. Here it is the small *écu*, or half-crown.
- Serpentyne, *sb.* serpentine, gun with bore of 1½ inches, 40/38.
- Showre, *sb.* storm, tempest, shower, 131/11.
- Somer, *sb.* sumpter, 53/39. Fr. *sommier*.
- Sowde, *vb.* pay, 4/27. Fr. *sonder*.
- Sowne, *sb.* swoon, 11/24.
- Spense, *sb.* expense, 122/14.
- Spore, *vb.* spur, 49/15.
- Spradde, *pp.* spread, 38/8.
- Sprynge, *sb.* spring of day, like *point*, 140/36.
- Stale, *vb.* stole, 152/25.
- Steerne, *sb.* helm, 60/10.
- Suffised, *pp.* contented, 8/38.
- Surely, *adv.* in safety, 177/6.
- Surmountour, *sb.* surpasser, exceller, 177/9.
- Surnome, *pp.* surnamed, 36/39. Fr. *sur-nommé*.
- Surtee, *sb.* affidavit, treaty, 107/40. Fr. *sureté*.
- Swone, *sb.* swoon, 39/25.
- Sy, *vb.* saw, 15/34.
- Taberyne, *sb.* tabor, 40/24. O.Fr. *taborin*.
- Tain, *num. adj.* one, 14/31.
- Taklee, *pp.* tackled, rigged, 81/32.
- Taried, *vb.* detained, 10/27.
- Than, *conj.* by than = by when, by the time that, 68/27, 152/15.
- There as = where, 13/19. See *Where as*.
- Titinges, *sb.* ? thinges, things, 109/39.
- To, *prep.* on board; to shippe = aship, 39/37.
- Toppis, *sb.* tops (of the masts), 44/30.
- To-scrag, *pp.* scratched, 130/9.
- Touchid, *vb. t.* to, touched, 25/22.
- Tough, *conj.* though (note pronunciation), 11/14.
- Trapoures, *sb.* trappings, 185/10. Fr. *trappure*.
- Treter, *sb.* traitor, 18/13.
- Trist, *adj.* sad, 26/36. Fr. *triste*.
- Trussid, *pp.* packed, 168/28. O.Fr. *trosser, torser*.
- Vacche, *sb.* watch, 74/39.
- Valet, *sb.* servant, 30/26.
- Vesselt, *sb. pl.* vessels, 63/35.
- Vigours, *adj.* vigorous, 20/15.
- Vndrowned, *pp.* unsunk, 42/34.
- Vnsayne, *pp.* unseen, 166/21.
- Vntolde, *vb.* did not tell, left untold, 174/30.
- Vp, *adv.* they founde vp, 53/24. Comp. hunt up.
- Vred, *pp.* well ured = fortunate, happy, 145/15.
- Vrous, *adj.* happy, 181/14.
- Wacche, *sb.* the belle of the wacche, 123/3. Comp. τοῦ κώδωνος παρενέχεντος, Thuc. iv. 135. London Watchmen also carried bells.
- Warte, *sb.* ward, warder, 14/32.
- Weeles, *sb.* weals, goodnesses, 133/32; weelis, 33/3; wele, 36/24; weles, prosperities, 24/21.
- Wery, *vb.* were, 153/3.
- What-som-euer, whatsoever, 27/24.
- Where as = where, 14/29.
- Where-someuir, wheresoever, 64/40.
- Wided, *pp.* voided, departed, 88/11.
- Wilke, *vb.* walked, 47/19.
- Wite, *vb.* know, 12/24, 168/34.
- Withhelde, *vb.* retained, 22/31.
- Yelde, *vb.* repay, requite, 37/7.
- Yen, *sb.* eyen, eyes, 79/40.
- Yngoodly, *adj.* excellent, 174/23.
- Yolden, *pp.* yielded, 176/38.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, &c.

BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN.

ALBORS, King of Spain, weds his daughter to the King of Sicily, 3.
 Alfour, King of Sicily, marries Princess Sybil of Spain, daughter of King Albors, 3; has a daughter, Iolante, 3; seeks help against the Turks, 4; gets no help, 5; is joined by Ferant and Prince Philip, 14; hears of capture of Ferabras, 21; Ferabras is handed over to him, 33; Prince Philip presented to him, 34; the French, English, and Scotch expedition reach Gaeta, 40; he is complained of by his allies, 54, who suffer loss by a storm, 59; holds a Council about the loss of the allies at sea, 66; goes to Naples, 68; proposals for ransom of Ferabras laid before him, 94; resolves to consult Ferant about it, 95; welcomes Prince Philip and Prince David at Court, 108; plans defence of Naples against the Turks, 120, 121; gives his officers a banquet, 132; recaptures his towns, 145, 152; is made Emperor, 146; refuses to let Orcays be ransomed, 148; consults his Council on marriage of Iolante, 153; holds a preliminary Tourney on her account, 156, and proclaims final one, 158; goes to Milan to be crowned, and to Rome, 163; welcomes King Humphrey, 181; holds the Tourney, 188; agrees to help the Sultan, 197; visits England, 204; visits Scotland, 204; his death, 206.

Baltasar, a mercenary, a knight of the Sultan's, 42.

Brunswick, Frederick, Duke of, 146.

Burgundy, Duke of, is made regent of

France, 86; talks with Philip, 166; intends personating Philip at the Tourney, 168; goes to Naples, 182; is met by the Emperor, 185; refuses Orcays' sister, 197, 206.
 Bussaunt, Earl of (? Buchan), saved from shipwreck, 63.

Capletrent, 122. Cape (or Point) Trionto, on the coast of Italy, extending into the Gulf of Taranto. Lat. 39° 35' N.; long. 16° 50' E.

Charles, King of France, marries a daughter of the King of Navarre (? Navarre), 1; they have a son, 1; is urged by his son to help the King of Sicily, 5; he declines, 5-7; finds his son is departed, 11; his ships at Gaeta, 43; reproaches himself, 65.

Constable of France, 43; his fate unknown, 63.

David, Prince of Scotland, heads the Scotch troops, 27; holds a Council, 46; is shipwrecked, 60, and taken, 61; saved by his captor, and released, 62; goes to Size, 72; joins in the sally, 75; captures his captor, Prince Orcays, 76, and sets him free, 77; his rashness, 99; goes to the Neapolitan Court, 108; relates his adventures, 133; goes to see Iolante, 151; does well at the Tourney, 157; goes home, 163; his arrival, 175; succeeds his father, 177; returns to Sicily, 178; returns home, 201; his marriage, 204.

Douglas, Earl of Scotland, 39; shipwrecked, 60; slain, 61, 133.

Dover, 203.

England, King of, promises help to the Sicilians, 24; prepares his forces, 38; laments his loss, 65; sorrows for his son's departure for Sicily, 84; mourns his son as dead, 86; dies, 175. See *Humphrey*.

Ferabrus, King of Persia, brother to the Sultan, with him subdues half Sicily, 13; is at Fondi, 14; is captured by Prince Philip in a skirmish, 16; desires to see his captor, 18, 20; is handed over to King of Sicily, 33; proposals for his ransom laid before the King, 94; a Council held thereon, 101; Turkish knights visit him in prison, 104; is enlarged for a time, 106; reaches the Sultan, 107; sends Prince Humphrey to Prince Philip, 113; Sultan apologizes to him, 115; goes to Persia about his ransom, 116; terms of his ransom, 155.

Ferant, a Sicilian knight, King Alfour's Seneschal, is sent to Spain to ask help, 13; leaves Toledo with Prince Philip, 13; reaches Sicily, 14; is rescued by Philip, 16; visits him, 19; reports Ferabrus's capture to the king, 21; his troops attacked by troops of King Ferabrus of Persia, 30; commands garrison of Size with Philip, 68; Prince David of Scotland joins him, 72; sallies out of Size, 75; resolves on a sortie, 96; blames Philip and David for rashness, 99; holds a Council to advise King of Sicily, 100; is welcomed at Court, 108; takes the three Princes to the Emperor, 151; is sorry at their departure, 161.

Fosses, a town four miles from Gaeta, 51; is captured from the Turks, 53.

Foundey (Fondi), a town near Gaeta, in kingdom of Two Sicilies, is held by the Turks, 14; Scotch spies come near it, 47.

France, King of, Charles, weds a Princess of Nauerne (? Navarre), 1; objects to help Sicily, 5; is against his son's departure, 7; mourns at his departure, 11; agrees to help Sicily, 24; prepares his forces, 38; recalls them after the shipwreck, 63; his death, 86. See *Philip*.

Gayette, Gaeta, occupied by the Sultan,

and the Christian fleet anchor there, 40; Turks repel the Christians, 45; the fleet leaves it, 56; is recaptured from the Turks, 147.

Humphrey, Prince, of England, 78; wishes to help Sicily, 81; starts, 83; is captured, 85; is let out of prison, 110; the Sultan wants to drown him, 111; King Ferabrus sends him to Prince Philip, 113; joins the other Princes, 117; tells of his release, 134; is taken to the Neapolitan Court, 151; at the Tourney, 157; goes home, 163; is told of his father's illness, 170; goes to his father's death-bed, 173; is crowned king, 175; makes ready for the Tourney, 175; is welcomed back at Naples, 181; second at the final Tournament, 195; marries Orcays' sister, 200; returns home, 201; his sisters marry the Sultan and the King of Scotland, 204; returns from Scotland, 205.

Iolante, daughter of the King of Sicily, 3; desires to see Prince Philip, 23; Philip falls in love with her, 37; she loves him secretly, 109; the three Princes go to visit her, 151; her marriage pondered, 153; a three days' Tourney is to decide it, 154; the preliminary Tourney, 156; the grand Tourney proclaimed, 158; is told that Philip will win her in the Tourney, 190; meets Philip, 193; dances with him, 194; her marriage, 196; welcomed in France as queen, 202; goes to England, 203.

Le tour de Gretus, a port near Gaeta, 56.

London, 171, 203.

Luby (? Lybia), King of, 145.

Millayne (Milan), 163.

Naples, the King of the Two Sicilies goes there, 67, 68; Turkish messengers arrive there, 94; Neapolitan Court, 108; the Sultan resolves to besiege it, 120; the king arranges the defence, 121; the siege, 123; Ferant sets a gallows up on the walls, to hang Orcays, 127; a grand banquet there, 132; the Turks do not succeed,

137 ; the siege raised, 140 ; the Sultan killed before it, 142 ; Council held there, 153 ; preliminary Tournament to decide about Iolante's marriage, 156 ; adorned for final Tourney, 185.

Nauerne (? Navarre), 1.

Oliver, Ferant's brother, is captain at Taprey, 14, 29, 49, 51.

Orcays, son of the Great Turk, takes Prince David of Scotland, and sets him free again, 61, 62 ; sends him to his friends, 71 ; is captured by Prince David, 76 ; released by him, 77 ; is captured again, 125 ; gallows prepared for him, 127 ; at the banquet, 132 ; tells his history, 135 ; vows to give back his father's conquests, 136 ; in love with Iolante, 137 ; the Turks wish to ransom him, 149 ; his ransom advised, 153 ; terms of it, 155 ; is at the Tourney, 157 ; his departure, 159 ; wants Iolante, 164 ; his return to Sicily, as Sultan, 179 ; offers to turn Christian, 180 ; turns Christian, and takes name of Charles, 187 ; goes to England, 201 ; marries a sister of David of Scotland, 204 ; returns to Turkey, 205 ; his widow returns to England, 207.

Paris, 9, 12.

Peacock, used to swear by, 136.

Persia. See *Ferabras*.

Philip, son of Charles, King of France, is born, 1 ; is christened, 2 ; urges his father to help the King of Sicily, 5 ; is grieved at refusal, 7 ; resolves to go to Sicily, 9 ; leaves Paris, and changes his name, 9 ; goes to Toledo and falls sick, 10 ; starts from Toledo with Ferant, 13 ; reaches Sicily, 14 ; fights his first skirmish, 15 ; captures King Ferabras, 16 ; the Sicilian ladies are anxious to see him, 23 ; is ordered to Sicily, 28 ; retakes King Ferabras, 31 ; pledges his faith to Ferant, 35 ; falls in love with Iolante, 37 ; commands garrison of Size with Ferant, 68 ; is at the Council on ransoming of Ferabras, 101 ; advises Christian captives to be freed, 102 ; is welcomed at Neapolitan Court with Ferant and David of Scotland, 108 ; is

joined by Prince Humphrey of England, 117 ; is captured by the Turks, 124 ; the Sultan resolves to hang him, 126 ; is rescued, 129 ; helps to take Gaeta, 146 ; Iolante sorrows for his supposed death, 150 ; is taken by Ferant to her, 151 ; does best of all at the preliminary Tourney, 157 ; resolves to return home, 159 ; returns, 163 ; talks with his uncle, 166 ; returns to Naples, 182 ; acts as his uncle's squire, 184 ; his supposed absence lamented, 187 ; does best at the Tournament, 189, etc. ; the Emperor embraces him, 192 ; is taken to see Iolante, 193 ; accepts her, and is married, 196 ; his welcome in France, 202 ; goes to England, 203 ; returns home, 205 ; succeeds to throne of Sicily, 206.

Port Dean, in Scotland, 39.

Rome, 163.

Seluse, Shuys, 206.

Scotland : the king refuses to help Sicily, 6 ; the Estates advise him to do so, 25 ; Prince David heads expedition, 27 ; the king makes joint preparations with France and England, 38 ; the joint fleet reaches Gaeta, 40 ; is repulsed, 45 ; Scotch spies sent out, 47 ; losses in the Scotch fleet, 63 ; grief of the king, 65 ; his death, 177. See *Darid*.

Shipwreck of vessels of the allied fleet, 59, 63.

Sicily, i.e. the Two Sicilies, *passim*.

Size, Sessa, a town near Gaeta, a garrison left there, 67 ; the Turks resolve to lay siege to it, 69 ; Prince David goes there, 73 ; Prince Orcays captured in a sally, 75, 76 ; daily sallies, 87 ; the Turks think of raising the siege, 89 ; a sortie resolved on, 96 ; success of it, 98.

Spain, King of, asked to help Sicily, 13 ; will give no help, 66. See *Albors*.

Sultan (the Grand Turk), subdues half Sicily, 13 ; opposes the landing at Gaeta, 40 ; calls a Council, 42 ; detains Prince David, 62 ; resolves to besiege Size, 69 ; goes to see the encampment, 75 ; calls a Council about the siege, 88 ; wishes a truce, 103, and settles it, 107 ; leaves garrisons

in Sicily, 109 ; wants to kill Prince Humphrey, 112 ; apologizes to King Ferabras, 115 ; appeals to his subjects for help, 119 ; resolves to besiege Naples, 120 ; wishes to hang Prince Philip, 127 ; sees the siege is useless, 137 ; holds another Council, 138 ; is killed before Naples, 142.

Sybil, the King of Spain's daughter, marries King Alfour of Sicily, 3.

Talpoir, same as Taprey, 21, 22.

Taprey, a town in the kingdom of the Two Sicilies, near Gaeta, 14, 16 ; called Tapyr, 47 ; still held by Oliver, 48, 51.

Toledo. See *Towlette*.

Tournament, preliminary, to decide about marriage of Iolante, 154, 156 ; the field for the final one is settled,

187, 188 ; King Philip's side wins, 189, 191, 195 ; the party disperses, 201.

Towlette, Toledo in Spain, is reached by Prince Philip, 10 ; he lies sick there, 12, 22, 206.

Turks make war against Sicily, 4 ; repulse the Christian fleet at Gaeta, 45 ; besiege Sizie, 69 ; make a year's truce, 107 ; besiege Naples, 123 ; blame their Sultan, 139 ; defeated before Naples, 142 ; are downcast, 149 ; make a three years' truce, 155. See *Sultan*.

Warwick, Earl of, welcomes Prince Humphrey on part of King of England, 171, 172.

Warwick, son of the Earl of, reproaches Prince Humphrey, 79, 82.

**RETURN
TO → CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT**
202 Main Library

LOAN PERIOD 1	2	3
HOME USE		
4	5	6

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

1-month loans may be renewed by calling 642-3405

6-month loans may be recharged by bringing books to Circulation Desk
Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior to due date

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

FORM NO. DD 6, 40m 10'77 UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY
BERKELEY, CA 94720

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C042640134

